BEFORE THE
NOVA SCOTIA UTILITY AND REVIEW BOARD
OF THE PROVINCE OF NOVA SCOTIA

North American Electric	**)**
Reliability Corporation	**)**

SECOND QUARTER 2015 APPLICATION FOR APPROVAL OF RELIABILITY STANDARDS OF THE NORTH AMERICAN ELECTRIC RELIABILITY CORPORATION

Gerald W. Cauley
President and Chief Executive Officer
North American Electric Reliability Corporation
3353 Peachtree Road, N.E.
Suite 600, North Tower
Atlanta, GA 30326
(404) 446-2560
(404) 446-2595– facsimile

Charles A. Berardesco
Senior Vice President and General Counsel
Holly A. Hawkins
Associate General Counsel
Andrew C. Wills
Associate Counsel
North American Electric Reliability Corporation
1325 G Street, N.W., Suite 600
Washington, D.C. 20005
(202) 400-3000
(202) 644-8099– facsimile
charles.berardesco@nerc.net
holly.hawkins@nerc.net
andrew.wills@nerc.net

Counsel for the North American Electric Reliability Corporation

August 27, 2015

TABLE OF CONTENTS

EXHIBITS

Exhibit A –

1.) Reliability Standards Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015;

2.) Reliability Standards Filed for Approval[1]; and

3.) Updated *Glossary of Terms Used in NERC Reliability Standards*

Exhibit B – Informational Summary of Each Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

Exhibit C – List of Currently Effective NERC Reliability Standards

[1] NERC notes that it recently filed an errata petition with the Commission seeking to revise COM-001-2, approved by the Commission during the second quarter and included in Exhibit A(2). Namely, the errata petition sought to revise a minor formatting error in that standard to improve clarity and consistency. Because the Commission has not acted on this petition as of the date of this order, NERC provides the citation for informational purposes only. *Errata to Petitions of the North American Electric Reliability Corporation for Approval of Reliability Standards BAL-003-1, COM-001-2, VAR-001-4, and Implementation Plan for Reliability Standard PRC-004-4,* Docket Nos. RM13-11-000, RM14-13-000, RD14-11-000 and RD15-3-000 (filed Aug. 25, 2015).

BEFORE THE
NOVA SCOTIA UTILITY AND REVIEW BOARD
OF THE PROVINCE OF NOVA SCOTIA

North American Electric	**)**
Reliability Corporation	**)**

SECOND QUARTER 2015 APPLICATION
FOR APPROVAL OF RELIABILITY STANDARDS OF THE
NORTH AMERICAN ELECTRIC RELIABILITY CORPORATION

The North American Electric Reliability Corporation ("NERC") hereby submits to the Nova Scotia Utility and Review Board ("NSUARB") an application for approval of the NERC Reliability Standards and an updated *Glossary of Terms Used in NERC Reliability Standards* ("NERC Glossary" or "Glossary") approved by the United States Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC" or the "Commission") during the second quarter of 2015. This filing covers the time period from April 1, 2015 through June 30, 2015. NERC requests that, as specified herein, these Reliability Standards and the associated NERC Glossary be made mandatory and enforceable for users, owners, and operators of the Bulk-Power System within the Province of Nova Scotia.

In support of this request, NERC submits the following information: (1) Reliability Standards approved by FERC in the second quarter of 2015 and the associated updated NERC Glossary (*see* **Exhibit A**); (2) an informational summary of each Reliability Standard applicable to Nova Scotia that was approved by FERC in the second quarter of 2015, including each standard's purpose, applicability, and filing and approval dates (*see* **Exhibit B**); and (3) an updated list of the currently effective NERC Reliability Standards as approved by FERC (*see* **Exhibit C**).

I. NOTICES AND COMMUNICATIONS

Notices and communications regarding this application may be addressed to:

Gerald W. Cauley
President and Chief Executive Officer
North American Electric Reliability Corporation
3353 Peachtree Road, N.E.
Suite 600, North Tower
Atlanta, GA 30326
(404) 446-2560
(404) 446-2595– facsimile

Charles A. Berardesco
Senior Vice President and General Counsel
Holly A. Hawkins
Associate General Counsel
Andrew C. Wills
Associate Counsel
North American Electric Reliability Corporation
1325 G Street, N.W., Suite 600
Washington, D.C. 20005
(202) 400-3000
(202) 644-8099– facsimile
charles.berardesco@nerc.net
holly.hawkins@nerc.net
andrew.wills@nerc.net

II. REQUEST FOR APPROVAL OF RELIABILITY STANDARDS

A. Background: NERC Quarterly Filing of Proposed Reliability Standards

Pursuant to Section 215 of the Federal Power Act[2], NERC has been certified by the Commission as the Electric Reliability Organization in the United States.[3] The Reliability Standards contained in **Exhibit A** have been approved by the Commission as mandatory and enforceable for users, owners, and operators of the Bulk-Power System within the United States. Some or all of NERC's Reliability Standards are also mandatory in the Canadian provinces of Alberta, British Columbia, Manitoba, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Ontario, Québec, and Saskatchewan.

[2] 16 U.S.C. § 824o(f) (2012) (entrusting FERC with the duties of approving and enforcing rules in the U.S. to ensure the reliability of the Nation's bulk power system, and with the duties of certifying an Electric Reliability Organization to develop mandatory and enforceable Reliability Standards, subject to FERC review and approval).

[3] *N. Am. Elec. Reliability Corp.*, 116 FERC ¶ 61,062 ("ERO Certification Order"), *order on reh'g & compliance*, 117 FERC ¶ 61,126 (2006), *aff'd sub nom. Alcoa, Inc. v. FERC*, 564 F.3d 1342 (D.C. Cir. 2009).

NERC entered into a Memorandum of Understanding ("MOU") with the NSUARB[4], and a separate MOU with Nova Scotia Power Incorporated ("NSPI") and the Northeast Power Coordinating Council, Inc. ("NPCC")[5], to provide reliability services to Nova Scotia. These MOUs became effective on December 22, 2006 and May 11, 2010, respectively. The December 22, 2006 MOU memorializes the relationship between NERC and the NSUARB formed to improve the reliability of the North American Bulk-Power System. The May 11, 2010 MOU sets forth the mutual understandings of NERC, NSPI, and NPCC regarding the approval and implementation of NERC Reliability Standards and NPCC Regional Reliability Criteria in Nova Scotia and other related matters.

On June 30, 2010, NERC submitted its first set of Reliability Standards and the NERC Glossary to the NSUARB, and on July 20, 2011, NSUARB issued a decision approving these documents.[6] In that decision, the NSUARB approved a "quarterly review" process for considering new and amended NERC Reliability Standards and criteria[7] and ordered that "applications will not be processed by the Board until [FERC] has approved or remanded the standards in the United States."[8] The NSUARB Decision also stated that NSUARB approval is not required for VRFs and VSLs associated with proposed Reliability Standards, but the NSUARB noted that it will accept VRFs and VSLs as guidance.[9]

---

4 *See* Memorandum of Understanding between Nova Scotia Utility and Review Board and North American Electric Reliability Corporation (signed Dec. 22, 2006).

5 *See* Memorandum of Understanding between Nova Scotia Power Incorporated and the Northeast Power Coordinating Council, Inc. and the North American Electric Reliability Corporation (signed May 11, 2010).

6 *In the Matter of an Application by North American Electric Reliability Corporation for Approval of its Reliability Standards, and an application by Northeast Power Coordinating Council, Inc. for Approval of its Regional Reliability Criteria*, NSUARB-NERC-R-10 (July 20, 2011) ("NSUARB Decision").

7 *Id.* at P 30.

8 *Id*.

9 *Id*. at P 33.

Based on the NSUARB Decision, NERC applications to the NSUARB only request approval for those Reliability Standards and Glossary definitions approved by FERC during the previous quarter. NERC does not seek formal approval of VRFs and VSLs associated with the Reliability Standards submitted in its quarterly applications. Rather, for informational purposes and for guidance, NERC provides a link below to the FERC-approved VRFs and VSLs associated with NERC Reliability Standards.[10] NERC does not include in its applications the full developmental record for the standards, which consists of the draft standards, comments received, responses to the comments by the drafting teams, and the full voting record, because the record for each standard may consist of several thousand pages. NERC will make the full developmental records available to the NSUARB or other interested parties upon request.

B. Overview of NERC Reliability Standards Development Process

NERC Reliability Standards define the requirements for reliably planning and operating the North American Bulk-Power System. These standards are developed by industry stakeholders using a balanced, open, fair, and inclusive process managed by the NERC Standards Committee. The Standards Committee is facilitated by NERC staff and comprised of representatives from ten electricity stakeholder segments. Stakeholders, through the balloting process, have approved the standards provided in **Exhibit A**, and the standards have been adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees.

NERC develops Reliability Standards and associated definitions in accordance with Section 300 (Reliability Standards Development) and Appendix 3A (Standards Processes

---

[10] NERC's VRF Matrix and VSL Matrix are available at: http://www.nerc.com/pa/Stand/Pages/AllReliabilityStandards.aspx?jurisdiction=United States. *See* left-hand side of webpage for downloadable documents.

Manual) of its Rules of Procedure.[11] NERC's Reliability Standards development process has been approved by the American National Standards Institute as being open, inclusive, balanced, and fair. The NERC Glossary, most recently updated May 19, 2015, contains each term that is defined for use in one or more of NERC's continent-wide or regional Reliability Standards approved by the NERC Board of Trustees, and it is submitted with this application for informational purposes.

C. Description of Proposed Definitions and Reliability Standards, Second Quarter 2015

As explained below, the following four FERC orders were issued in the second quarter of 2015 approving NERC Reliability Standards and related NERC Glossary terms: (1) an order approving Reliability Standard BAL-001-2 and four associated definitions, issued on April 16, 2015;[12] (2) an order approving Reliability Standards COM-001-2 and COM-002-4 and three new definitions, issued on April 16, 2015;[13] (3) an order approving Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 and two new definitions, issued on May 13, 2015;[14] (4) a letter order approving eight Dispersed Generation Resources Reliability Standards, issued on May 29, 2015.[15]

The chart below shows the U.S. effective dates of the Reliability Standards that were approved by FERC during the previous quarter. Please note that Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 is not included in this chart because a revised version of this standard, PRC-004-4, was subsequently developed and submitted to the Commission to account for Dispersed Generation Resources. Thus, PRC-004-3 was superseded by PRC-004-4 and will not go into effect.

---

[11] The NERC *Rules of Procedure* are available at: http://www.nerc.com/AboutNERC/Pages/Rules-of-Procedure.aspx.

[12] *N. Am. Elec. Reliability Corp.*, 151 FERC ¶ 61, 048 (2015).

[13] *N. Am. Elec. Reliability Corp.*, 151 FERC ¶ 61, 039 (2015).

[14] *N. Am. Elec. Reliability Corp.*, 151 FERC ¶ 61, 129 (2015).

[15] *N. Am. Elec. Reliability Corp.*, 151 FERC ¶ 61, 186 (2015).

Reliability Standard	Effective Date
Resource and Demand Balancing (BAL) Standard	
BAL-001-2*	7/1/2016
Communications (COM) Standards	
COM-001-2*	10/1/2015
COM-002-4*	7/1/2016
Protection and Control (PRC) Standards	
PRC-001-1.1(ii)	5/29/2015
PRC-004-2.1(i)a	5/29/2015
PRC-004-3*	Never becomes effective**
PRC-004-4*	7/1/2016
PRC-005-2(i)	5/29/2015
PRC-005-3(i)*	4/1/2016
PRC-019-2*	7/1/2016
PRC-024-2*	7/1/2016
Voltage and Reactive (VAR) Standard	
VAR-002-4	5/29/2015

* At the time of this filing, all standards marked with an asterisk are not yet effective, but have been approved by FERC and have a future mandatory effective date.
** As mentioned in the Second Quarter 2015 Application for Approval of Reliability Standards, PRC-004-3 will never become effective, as PRC-004-4 becomes effective on the effective date for PRC-004-3 and retires PRC-004-3 in the process.

1. <u>BAL-001-2</u>

On April 16, 2015, FERC approved Reliability Standard BAL-001-2 (Real Power Balancing Control Performance), four new definitions to be added to the NERC Glossary, and the retirement of currently effective Reliability Standard BAL-001-1. Reliability Standard BAL-001-2 is designed to ensure that applicable entities maintain system frequency within narrow bounds around a scheduled value, and improves reliability by adding a frequency component to the measurement of a Balancing Authority's Area Control Error. The approved definitions of the terms "Regulation Reserve Sharing Group," "Reserve Sharing Group ACE," "Reporting ACE" and "Interconnection" are now included in the updated Glossary in **Exhibit A**.

2. COM-001-2 and COM-002-4

On April 16, 2015, FERC approved Reliability Standards COM-001-2 (Communications)[16] and COM-002-4 (Operating Personnel Communications Protocols), three new definitions to be added to the NERC Glossary, and the retirement of the currently effective Reliability Standards COM-001-1.1, EOP-008-1 (Requirement R1), and COM-002-2. The approved definitons of the terms "Operation Instruction," "Interpersonal Communication," and "Alternative Interpersonal Communication" are now included in the updated Glossary in **Exhibit A**. Reliability Standards COM-001-2 and COM-002-4 replace and improve upon the currently effective COM-001-1.1 and COM-002-2 to establish requirements for communication capabilities and communications protocols necessary to maintain reliability.

Reliability Standard COM-001-2 establishes a clear set of requirements for what communications capabilities various functional entities must maintain for reliable communications, thereby improving the existing standard. Reliability Standard COM-002-4 requires use of the same protocols regardless of the current operating condition and requires entities to have or create a set of documented communications protocols that include certain minimum mandatory protocols. The revisions in COM-002-4 improve communications surrounding the issuance of Operating Instructions by employing predefined communications protocols by reducing the possibility of miscommunication that could lead to action or inaction harmful to the reliability of the Bulk Electric System.

[16] As explained in Footnote 1 above, NERC notes that it filed an errata petition with the Commission on August 25, 2015, seeking to revise a minor formatting inconsistency. Because the Commission has not approved the errata petition as of the date of this application, NERC highlights this filing for informational purposes only. The full text of the errata petition, which explains the revisions in detail, can be found online at: http://www.nerc.com/FilingsOrders/us/NERC%20Filings%20to%20FERC%20DL/Errata%20to%20Proposed%20Reliability%20Standards.pdf.

3. PRC-004-3

On May 13, 2015, FERC approved Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 (Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction), one new definition and one revised definition to be included in the NERC Glossary, and the retirement of Reliability Standards PRC-004-2.1a and PRC-003-1. The approved new definition of "Composite Protection System" and the approved revised definition of the term "Misoperation" are now included in the updated Glossary in **Exhibit A**. Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 requires Transmission Owners, Generator Owners, and Distribution Providers to identify and correct causes of misoperations of certain protection systems. Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 addresses an existing reliability gap by applying the standard to underfrequency load shedding that is intended to trip one or more Bulk Electric System Elements.

Less than a month after the Commission approved Reliability Standard PRC-004-3, it issued an order on a suite of Dispersed Generation Resources Reliability Standards which included a later version of this standard, PRC-004-4. Because the implementation plan for PRC-004-4 anticipates that PRC-004-4 will become effective on the effective date for PRC-004-3 and will immediately retire PRC-004-3, Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 will never become enforceable in the United States. Rather, PRC-004-4, described below, will become effective immediately upon the effective date for PRC-004-3.

4. Dispersed Generations Resources Reliability Standards

On May 29, 2015, FERC approved the following Reliability Standards:

- PRC-001-1.1(ii) – System Protection Coordination;

- PRC-004-2.1(i)a – Anaylsis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection System Misoperations;
- PRC-004-4 – Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction;
- PRC-005-2(i) – Protection System Maintenance;
- PRC-005-3(i) – Protection System and Aunomatic Reclosing Maintenance;
- PRC-019-2 – Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Protective Regulating Controls, and Protection;
- PRC-024-2 – Generator Frequency and Voltage Protection Relay Settings; and
- VAR-002-4 – Generator Operation for Maintaing Network Voltage Schedules.

The Dispersed Generations Resources standards revisions highlight how the unique operating characteristics of dispersed power producing resources impact the applicability of NERC Reliability Standards and implement changes to account for these differences.

III. <u>CONCLUSION</u>

NERC respectfully requests that the NSUARB approve the Reliability Standards and NERC Glossary definitions as specified herein.

Respectfully submitted,

/s/ *Andrew C. Wills*

Charles A. Berardesco
Senior Vice President and General Counsel
Holly A. Hawkins
Associate General Counsel
Andrew C. Wills
Associate Counsel
North American Electric Reliability Corporation
1325 G Street, N.W., Suite 600
Washington, D.C. 20005
(202) 400-3000
(202) 644-8099– facsimile
charles.berardesco@nerc.net
holly.hawkins@nerc.net
andrew.wills@nerc.net

Counsel for the North American Electric Reliability Corporation

Exhibit A (1): Reliability Standards Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

Reliability Standard	Effective Date
Resource and Demand Balancing (BAL) Standard	
BAL-001-2*	7/1/2016
Communications (COM) Standards	
COM-001-2*	10/1/2015
COM-002-4*	7/1/2016
Protection and Control (PRC) Standards	
PRC-001-1.1(ii)	5/29/2015
PRC-004-2.1(i)a	5/29/2015
PRC-004-3*	Never becomes effective**
PRC-004-4	7/1/2016
PRC-005-2(i)	5/29/2016
PRC-005-3(i)*	4/1/2016
PRC-019-2*	7/1/2016
PRC-024-2*	7/1/2016
Voltage and Reactive (VAR) Standard	
VAR-002-4	5/29/2015

* At the time of this filing, all standards marked with an asterisk are not yet effective, but have been approved by FERC and have a future mandatory effective date.
** As mentioned in the Second Quarter 2015 Application for Approval of Reliability Standards, PRC-004-3 will never become effective, as PRC-004-4 becomes effective on the effective date for PRC-004-3 and retires PRC-004-3 in the process.

Exhibit A (2): PDF Copies of Reliability Standards Filed for Approval

Reliability Standard BAL-001-2

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Real Power Balancing Control Performance**

2. **Number:** **BAL-001-2**

3. **Purpose:** To control Interconnection frequency within defined limits.

4. **Applicability:**

   4.1. Balancing Authority

   4.1.1 A Balancing Authority receiving Overlap Regulation Service is not subject to Control Performance Standard 1 (CPS1) or Balancing Authority ACE Limit (BAAL) compliance evaluation.

   4.1.2 A Balancing Authority that is a member of a Regulation Reserve Sharing Group is the Responsible Entity only in periods during which the Balancing Authority is not in active status under the applicable agreement or the governing rules for the Regulation Reserve Sharing Group.

   4.2. Regulation Reserve Sharing Group

5. **(Proposed) Effective Date:**

   5.1. First day of the first calendar quarter that is twelve months beyond the date that this standard is approved by applicable regulatory authorities, or in those jurisdictions where regulatory approval is not required, the standard becomes effective the first day of the first calendar quarter that is twelve months beyond the date this standard is approved by the NERC Board of Trustees, or as otherwise made effective pursuant to the laws applicable to such ERO governmental authorities.

B. Requirements

R1. The Responsible Entity shall operate such that the Control Performance Standard 1 (CPS1), calculated in accordance with Attachment 1, is greater than or equal to 100 percent for the applicable Interconnection in which it operates for each preceding 12 consecutive calendar month period, evaluated monthly. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

R2. Each Balancing Authority shall operate such that its clock-minute average of Reporting ACE does not exceed its clock-minute Balancing Authority ACE Limit (BAAL) for more than 30 consecutive clock-minutes, calculated in accordance with Attachment 2, for the applicable Interconnection in which the Balancing Authority operates.*[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

C. Measures

M1. The Responsible Entity shall provide evidence, upon request, such as dated calculation output from spreadsheets, system logs, software programs, or other evidence (either in hard copy or electronic format) to demonstrate compliance with Requirement R1.

M2. Each Balancing Authority shall provide evidence, upon request, such as dated calculation output from spreadsheets, system logs, software programs, or other evidence (either in hard copy or electronic format) to demonstrate compliance with Requirement R2.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Data Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full-time period since the last audit.

The Responsible Entity shall retain data or evidence to show compliance for the current year, plus three previous calendar years unless, directed by its Compliance Enforcement Authority, to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation. Data required for the calculation of Regulation Reserve Sharing Group Reporting Ace, or Reporting ACE, CPS1, and BAAL shall be retained in digital format at the same scan rate at which the Reporting ACE is calculated for the current year, plus three previous calendar years.

If a Responsible Entity is found noncompliant, it shall keep information related to the noncompliance until found compliant, or for the time period specified above, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit records and all subsequent requested and submitted records.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

Compliance Audits

Self-Certifications

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaints

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None.

2. Violation Severity Levels

R #	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	The CPS 1 value of the Responsible Entity, for the preceding 12 consecutive calendar month period, is less than 100 percent but greater than or equal to 95 percent for the applicable Interconnection.	The CPS 1 value of the Responsible Entity, for the preceding 12 consecutive calendar month period, is less than 95 percent, but greater than or equal to 90 percent for the applicable Interconnection.	The CPS 1 value of the Responsible Entity, for the preceding 12 consecutive calendar month period, is less than 90 percent, but greater than or equal to 85 percent for the applicable Interconnection.	The CPS 1 value of the Responsible Entity, for the preceding 12 consecutive calendar month period, is less than 85 percent for the applicable Interconnection.
R2	The Balancing Authority exceeded its clock-minute BAAL for more than 30 consecutive clock minutes but for 45 consecutive clock-minutes or less for the applicable Interconnection.	The Balancing Authority exceeded its clock-minute BAAL for greater than 45 consecutive clock minutes but for 60 consecutive clock-minutes or less for the applicable Interconnection.	The Balancing Authority exceeded its clock-minute BAAL for greater than 60 consecutive clock minutes but for 75 consecutive clock-minutes or less for the applicable Interconnection.	The Balancing Authority exceeded its clock-minute BAAL for greater than 75 consecutive clock-minutes for the applicable Interconnection.

E. Regional Variances

None.

F. Associated Documents

BAL-001-2, Real Power Balancing Control Performance Standard Background Document

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	February 8, 2005	BOT Approval	New
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Implementation Date	New
0	August 8, 2005	Removed “Proposed” from Effective Date	Errata
0	July 24, 2007	Corrected R3 to reference M1 and M2 instead of R1 and R2	Errata
0a	December 19, 2007	Added Appendix 2 – Interpretation of R1 approved by BOT on October 23, 2007	Revised
0a	January 16, 2008	In Section A.2., Added “a” to end of standard number In Section F, corrected automatic numbering from “2” to “1” and removed “approved” and added parenthesis to “(October 23, 2007)”	Errata
0	January 23, 2008	Reversed errata change from July 24, 2007	Errata
0.1a	October 29, 2008	Board approved errata changes; updated version number to “0.1a”	Errata
0.1a	May 13, 2009	Approved by FERC	
1		Inclusion of BAAL and WECC Variance and exclusion of CPS2	Revision
1	December 19, 2012	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
2	August 15, 2013	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	
2	April 16, 2015	FERC Order issued approving BAL-001-2	

Attachment 1
Equations Supporting Requirement R1 and Measure M1

CPS1 is calculated as follows:

$$CPS1 = (2 - CF) * 100\%$$

The frequency-related compliance factor (CF), is a ratio of the accumulating clock-minute compliance parameters for the most recent preceding 12 consecutive calendar months, divided by the square of the target frequency bound:

$$CF = \frac{CF_{12\text{-month}}}{(\varepsilon 1_I)^2}$$

Where $\varepsilon 1_I$ is the constant derived from a targeted frequency bound for each Interconnection as follows:

- Eastern Interconnection $\varepsilon 1_I$ = 0.018 Hz
- Western Interconnection $\varepsilon 1_I$ = 0.0228 Hz
- ERCOT Interconnection $\varepsilon 1_I$ = 0.030 Hz
- Quebec Interconnection $\varepsilon 1_I$ = 0.021 Hz

The rating index $CF_{12\text{-month}}$ is derived from the most recent preceding 12 consecutive calendar months of data. The accumulating clock-minute compliance parameters are derived from the one-minute averages of Reporting ACE, Frequency Error, and Frequency Bias Settings.

A clock-minute average is the average of the reporting Balancing Authority's valid measured variable (i.e., for Reporting ACE (RACE) and for Frequency Error) for each sampling cycle during a given clock-minute.

$$\left(\frac{RACE}{-10B}\right)_{\text{clock-minute}} = \frac{\left(\frac{\sum RACE_{\text{sampling cycles in clock-minute}}}{n_{\text{sampling cycles in clock-minute}}}\right)}{-10\text{B}}$$

And,

$$\Delta F_{\text{clock-minute}} = \frac{\sum \Delta F_{\text{samplingcyclesin clock-minute}}}{n_{\text{samplingcyclesin clock-minute}}}$$

The Balancing Authority's clock-minute compliance factor ($CF_{\text{clock-minute}}$) calculation is:

$$CF_{\text{clock-minute}} = \left[\left(\frac{RACE}{-10B} \right)_{\text{clock-minute}} * \Delta F_{\text{clock-minute}} \right]$$

Normally, 60 clock-minute averages of the reporting Balancing Authority's Reporting ACE and Frequency Error will be used to compute the hourly average compliance factor (CF $_{\text{clock-hour}}$).

$$CF_{\text{clock-hour}} = \frac{\sum CF_{\text{clock-minute}}}{n_{\text{clock-minute samples in hour}}}$$

The reporting Balancing Authority shall be able to recalculate and store each of the respective clock-hour averages (CF $_{\text{clock-hour average-month}}$) and the data samples for each 24-hour period (one for each clock-hour; i.e., hour ending (HE) 0100, HE 0200, ..., HE 2400). To calculate the monthly compliance factor (CF $_{\text{month}}$):

$$\mathrm{CF}_{\text{clock-hour average-month}} = \frac{\sum\limits_{\text{days-in-month}} [(\mathrm{CF}_{\text{clock-hour}})(n_{\text{one-minute samples in clock-hour}})]}{\sum\limits_{\text{days-in month}} [n_{\text{one-minute samples in clock-hour}}]}$$

$$\mathrm{CF}_{\text{month}} = \frac{\sum\limits_{\text{hours-in-day}} [(\mathrm{CF}_{\text{clock-hour average-month}})(n_{\text{one-minute samples in clock-hour averages}})]}{\sum\limits_{\text{hours-in day}} [n_{\text{one-minute samples in clock-hour averages}}]}$$

To calculate the 12-month compliance factor (CF $_{\text{12 month}}$):

$$\mathrm{CF}_{\text{12-month}} = \frac{\sum\limits_{i=1}^{12} (CF_{\text{month-i}})(n_{(\text{one-minute samples in month})-i})]}{\sum\limits_{i=1}^{12} [n_{(\text{one-minute samples in month})-i}]}$$

To ensure that the average Reporting ACE and Frequency Error calculated for any one-minute interval is representative of that time interval, it is necessary that at least 50 percent of both the Reporting ACE and Frequency Error sample data during the one-minute interval is valid. If the recording of Reporting ACE or Frequency Error is interrupted such that less than 50 percent of the one-minute sample period data is available or valid, then that one-minute interval is excluded from the CPS1 calculation.

A Balancing Authority providing Overlap Regulation Service to another Balancing Authority calculates its CPS1 performance after combining its Reporting ACE and Frequency Bias

Settings with the Reporting ACE and Frequency Bias Settings of the Balancing Authority receiving the Regulation Service.

Attachment 2

Equations Supporting Requirement R2 and Measure M2

When actual frequency is equal to Scheduled Frequency, $BAAL_{High}$ and $BAAL_{Low}$ do not apply.

When actual frequency is less than Scheduled Frequency, $BAAL_{High}$ does not apply, and $BAAL_{Low}$ is calculated as:

$$BAAL_{Low} = \left(-10B_i \times \left(FTL_{Low} - F_S\right)\right) \times \frac{\left(FTL_{Low} - F_S\right)}{\left(F_A - F_S\right)}$$

When actual frequency is greater than Scheduled Frequency, $BAAL_{Low}$ does not apply and the $BAAL_{High}$ is calculated as:

$$BAAL_{High} = \left(-10B_i \times \left(FTL_{High} - F_S\right)\right) \times \frac{\left(FTL_{High} - F_S\right)}{\left(F_A - F_S\right)}$$

Where**:**

$BAAL_{Low}$ is the Low Balancing Authority ACE Limit (MW)

$BAAL_{High}$ is the High Balancing Authority ACE Limit (MW)

10 is a constant to convert the Frequency Bias Setting from MW/0.1 Hz to MW/Hz

B_i is the Frequency Bias Setting for a Balancing Authority (expressed as MW/0.1 Hz)

F_A is the measured frequency in Hz.

F_S is the scheduled frequency in Hz.

FTL_{Low} is the Low Frequency Trigger Limit (calculated as F_S - $3\varepsilon1_I$ Hz)

FTL_{High} is the High Frequency Trigger Limit (calculated as F_S + $3\varepsilon1_I$ Hz)

Where $\varepsilon1_I$ is the constant derived from a targeted frequency bound for each Interconnection as follows:

- Eastern Interconnection $\varepsilon1_I$ = 0.018 Hz
- Western Interconnection $\varepsilon1_I$ = 0.0228 Hz
- ERCOT Interconnection $\varepsilon1_I$ = 0.030 Hz
- Quebec Interconnection $\varepsilon1_I$ = 0.021 Hz

To ensure that the average actual frequency calculated for any one-minute interval is representative of that time interval, it is necessary that at least 50% of the actual frequency sample data during that one-minute interval is valid. If the recording of actual frequency is interrupted such that less than 50 percent of the one-minute sample period data is available or valid, then that one-minute interval is excluded from the BAAL calculation and the 30-minute clock would be reset to zero.

A Balancing Authority providing Overlap Regulation Service to another Balancing Authority calculates its BAAL performance after combining its Frequency Bias Setting with the Frequency Bias Setting of the Balancing Authority receiving Overlap Regulation Service.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard BAL-001-2 — Real Power Balancing Control Performance

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
BAL-001-2	All	07/01/2016	

Reliability Standard COM-001-2

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Communications**
2. **Number:** COM-001-2
3. **Purpose:** To establish Interpersonal Communication capabilities necessary to maintain reliability.
4. **Applicability:**
   - **4.1.** Transmission Operator
   - **4.2.** Balancing Authority
   - **4.3.** Reliability Coordinator
   - **4.4.** Distribution Provider
   - **4.5.** Generator Operator
5. **Effective Date:** The first day of the second calendar quarter beyond the date that this standard is approved by applicable regulatory authorities, or in those jurisdictions where regulatory approval is not required, the standard becomes effective on the first day of the first calendar quarter beyond the date this standard is approved by the NERC Board of Trustees, or as otherwise made effective pursuant to the laws applicable to such ERO governmental authorities.

B. Requirements

R1. Each Reliability Coordinator shall have Interpersonal Communication capability with the following entities (unless the Reliability Coordinator detects a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in which case Requirement R10 shall apply): *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

1.1. All Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities within its Reliability Coordinator Area.

1.2. Each adjacent Reliability Coordinator within the same Interconnection.

R2. Each Reliability Coordinator shall designate an Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with the following entities: *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

2.1. All Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities within its Reliability Coordinator Area.

2.2. Each adjacent Reliability Coordinator within the same Interconnection.

R3. Each Transmission Operator shall have Interpersonal Communication capability with the following entities (unless the Transmission Operator detects a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in which case Requirement R10 shall apply): *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

3.1. Its Reliability Coordinator.

3.2. Each Balancing Authority within its Transmission Operator Area.

3.3. Each Distribution Provider within its Transmission Operator Area.

3.4. Each Generator Operator within its Transmission Operator Area.

3.5. Each adjacent Transmission Operator synchronously connected.

3.6. Each adjacent Transmission Operator asynchronously connected.

R4. Each Transmission Operator shall designate an Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with the following entities: *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

4.1. Its Reliability Coordinator.

4.2. Each Balancing Authority within its Transmission Operator Area.

4.3. Each adjacent Transmission Operator synchronously connected.

4.4. Each adjacent Transmission Operator asynchronously connected.

R5. Each Balancing Authority shall have Interpersonal Communication capability with the following entities (unless the Balancing Authority detects a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in which case Requirement R10 shall apply): *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

5.1. Its Reliability Coordinator.

5.2. Each Transmission Operator that operates Facilities within its Balancing Authority Area.

5.3. Each Distribution Provider within its Balancing Authority Area.

5.4. Each Generator Operator that operates Facilities within its Balancing Authority Area.

5.5. Each Adjacent Balancing Authority.

R6. Each Balancing Authority shall designate an Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with the following entities: *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

1.1. Its Reliability Coordinator.

1.2. Each Transmission Operator that operates Facilities within its Balancing Authority Area.

1.3. Each Adjacent Balancing Authority.

R7. Each Distribution Provider shall have Interpersonal Communication capability with the following entities (unless the Distribution Provider detects a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in which case Requirement R11 shall apply): *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

7.1. Its Balancing Authority.

7.2. Its Transmission Operator.

R8. Each Generator Operator shall have Interpersonal Communication capability with the following entities (unless the Generator Operator detects a failure of its Interpersonal

Communication capability in which case Requirement R11 shall apply): *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

8.1. Its Balancing Authority.

8.2. Its Transmission Operator.

R9. Each Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, and Balancing Authority shall test its Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability at least once each calendar month. If the test is unsuccessful, the responsible entity shall initiate action to repair or designate a replacement Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability within 2 hours. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Real-time Operations, Same-day Operations]*

R10. Each Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, and Balancing Authority shall notify entities as identified in Requirements R1, R3, and R5, respectively within 60 minutes of the detection of a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability that lasts 30 minutes or longer. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

R11. Each Distribution Provider and Generator Operator that detects a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability shall consult each entity affected by the failure, as identified in Requirement R7 for a Distribution Provider or Requirement R8 for a Generator Operator, to determine a mutually agreeable action for the restoration of its Interpersonal Communication capability. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

C. Measures

M1. Each Reliability Coordinator shall have and provide upon request evidence that it has Interpersonal Communication capability with all Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities within its Reliability Coordinator Area and with each adjacent Reliability Coordinator within the same Interconnection, which could include, but is not limited to:

- physical assets, or
- dated evidence, such as, equipment specifications and installation documentation, test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R1.)

M2. Each Reliability Coordinator shall have and provide upon request evidence that it designated an Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with all Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities within its Reliability Coordinator Area and with each adjacent Reliability Coordinator within the same Interconnection, which could include, but is not limited to:

- physical assets, or
- dated evidence, such as, equipment specifications and installation documentation, test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R2.)

M3. Each Transmission Operator shall have and provide upon request evidence that it has Interpersonal Communication capability with its Reliability Coordinator, each Balancing Authority, Distribution Provider, and Generator Operator within its Transmission Operator Area, and each adjacent Transmission Operator asynchronously or synchronously connected, which could include, but is not limited to:

- physical assets, or
- dated evidence, such as, equipment specifications and installation documentation, test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communication. (R3.)

M4. Each Transmission Operator shall have and provide upon request evidence that it designated an Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with its Reliability Coordinator, each Balancing Authority within its Transmission Operator Area, and each adjacent Transmission Operator asynchronously and synchronously connected, which could include, but is not limited to:

- physical assets, or
- dated evidence, such as, equipment specifications and installation documentation, test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R4.)

M5. Each Balancing Authority shall have and provide upon request evidence that it has Interpersonal Communication capability with its Reliability Coordinator, each Transmission Operator and Generator Operator that operates Facilities within its Balancing Authority Area, each Distribution Provider within its Balancing Authority Area, and each adjacent Balancing Authority, which could include, but is not limited to:

- physical assets, or
- dated evidence, such as, equipment specifications and installation documentation, test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R5.)

M6. Each Balancing Authority shall have and provide upon request evidence that it designated an Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with its Reliability Coordinator, each Transmission Operator that operates Facilities within its Balancing Authority Area, and each adjacent Balancing Authority, which could include, but is not limited to:

- physical assets, or
- dated evidence, such as, equipment specifications and installation documentation, test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R6.)

M7. Each Distribution Provider shall have and provide upon request evidence that it has Interpersonal Communication capability with its Transmission Operator and its Balancing Authority, which could include, but is not limited to:

- physical assets, or
- dated evidence, such as, equipment specifications and installation documentation, test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R7.)

M8. Each Generator Operator shall have and provide upon request evidence that it has Interpersonal Communication capability with its Balancing Authority and its Transmission Operator, which could include, but is not limited to:

- physical assets, or
- dated evidence, such as, equipment specifications and installation documentation, test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R8.)

M9. Each Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, and Balancing Authority shall have and provide upon request evidence that it tested, at least once each calendar month, its Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability designated in Requirements R2, R4, or R6. If the test was unsuccessful, the entity shall have and provide upon request evidence that it initiated action to repair or designated a replacement Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability within 2 hours. Evidence could include, but is not limited to: dated and time-stamped test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R9.)

M10. Each Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, and Balancing Authority shall have and provide upon request evidence that it notified entities as identified in Requirements R1, R3, and R5, respectively within 60 minutes of the detection of a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability that lasted 30 minutes or longer. Evidence could include, but is not limited to: dated and time-stamped test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R10.)

M11. Each Distribution Provider and Generator Operator that detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability shall have and provide upon request evidence that it consulted with each entity affected by the failure, as identified in Requirement R7 for a Distribution Provider or Requirement R8 for a Generator Operator, to determine mutually agreeable action to restore the Interpersonal Communication capability. Evidence could include, but is not limited to: dated operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R11.)

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

The Regional Entity shall serve as the Compliance Enforcement Authority (CEA) unless the applicable entity is owned, operated, or controlled by the Regional Entity. In such cases, the ERO or a Regional Entity approved by FERC or other applicable governmental authority shall serve as the CEA.

1.2. Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Processes

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.3. Data Retention

The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, Balancing Authority, Distribution Provider, and Generator Operator shall keep data or evidence to show compliance as identified below unless directed by its Compliance Enforcement Authority to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation:

- The Reliability Coordinator for Requirements R1, R2, R9, and R10, Measures M1, M2, M9, and M10 shall retain written documentation for the most recent twelve calendar months and voice recordings for the most recent 90 calendar days.
- The Transmission Operator for Requirements R3, R4, R9, and R10, Measures M3, M4, M9, and M10 shall retain written documentation for the most recent twelve calendar months and voice recordings for the most recent 90 calendar days.
- The Balancing Authority forRequirements R5, R6, R9, and R10, Measures M5, M6, M9, and M10 shall retain written documentation for the most recent twelve calendar months and voice recordings for the most recent 90 calendar days.
- The Distribution Provider for Requirements R7 and R11, Measures M7 and M11 shall retain written documentation for the most recent twelve calendar months and voice recordings for the most recent 90 calendar days.
- The Generator Operator for Requirements R8 and R11, Measures M8 and M11 shall retain written documentation for the most recent twelve calendar months and voice recordings for the most recent 90 calendar days.

If a Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, Balancing Authority, Distribution Provider, or Generator Operator is found non-compliant, it shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is complete and approved or for the time specified above, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None.

2. Violation Severity Levels

R#	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	N/A	N/A	The Reliability Coordinator failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with one of the entities listed in Requirement R1, Parts 1.1 or 1.2, except when the Reliability Coordinator detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R10.	The Reliability Coordinator failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with two or more of the entities listed in Requirement R1, Parts 1.1 or 1.2, except when the Reliability Coordinator detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R10.
R2	N/A	N/A	The Reliability Coordinator failed to designate Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with one of the entities listed in Requirement R2, Parts 2.1 or 2.2.	The Reliability Coordinator failed to designate Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with two or more of the entities listed in Requirement R2, Parts 2.1 or 2.2.
R3	N/A	N/A	The Transmission Operator failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with one of the entities listed in Requirement R3, Parts 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, or 3.6, except when the Transmission Operator detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R10.	The Transmission Operator failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with two or more of the entities listed in Requirement R3, Parts 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, or 3.6, except when the Transmission Operator detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R10.
R4	N/A	N/A	The Transmission Operator failed to designate Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with one of the entities listed in Requirement R4, Parts 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, or 4.4.	The Transmission Operator failed to designate Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with two or more of the entities listed in Requirement R4, Parts 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, or 4.4.

R#	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R5	N/A	N/A	The Balancing Authority failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with one of the entities listed in Requirement R5, Parts 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, or 5.5, except when the Balancing Authority detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R10.	The Balancing Authority failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with two or more of the entities listed in Requirement R5, Parts 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, or 5.5, except when the Balancing Authority detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R10.
R6	N/A	N/A	The Balancing Authority failed to designate Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with one of the entities listed in Requirement R6, Parts 6.1, 6.2, or 6.3.	The Balancing Authority failed to designate Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with two or more of the entities listed in Requirement R6, Parts 6.1, 6.2, or 6.3.
R7	N/A	N/A	The Distribution Provider failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with one of the entities listed in Requirement R7, Parts 7.1 or 7.2, except when the Distribution Provider detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R11.	The Distribution Provider failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with two or more of the entities listed in Requirement R7, Parts 7.1 or 7.2, except when the Distribution Provider detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R11.

R#	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R8	N/A	N/A	The Generator Operator failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with one of the entities listed in Requirement R8, Parts 8.1 or 8.2, except when a Generator Operator detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R11.	The Generator Operator failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with two or more of the entities listed in Requirement R8, Parts 8.1 or 8.2, except when a Generator Operator detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R11.
R9	The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority tested the Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability but failed to initiate action to repair or designate a replacement Alternative Interpersonal Communication in more than 2 hours and less than or equal to 4 hours upon an unsuccessful test.	The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority tested the Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability but failed to initiate action to repair or designate a replacement Alternative Interpersonal Communication in more than 4 hours and less than or equal to 6 hours upon an unsuccessful test.	The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority tested the Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability but failed to initiate action to repair or designate a replacement Alternative Interpersonal Communication in more than 6 hours and less than or equal to 8 hours upon an unsuccessful test.	The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority failed to test the Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability once each calendar month. OR The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority tested the Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability but failed to initiate action to repair or designate a replacement Alternative Interpersonal Communication in more than 8 hours upon an unsuccessful test.
R10	The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority failed to notify the entities identified in Requirements R1, R3, and R5, respectively upon the detection of a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in more than 60 minutes but less than or equal to 70 minutes.	The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority failed to notify the entities identified in Requirements R1, R3, and R5, respectively upon the detection of a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in more than 70 minutes but less than or equal to 80 minutes.	The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority failed to notify the entities identified in Requirements R1, R3, and R5, respectively upon the detection of a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in more than 80 minutes but less than or equal to 90 minutes.	The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority failed to notify the entities identified in Requirements R1, R3, and R5, respectively upon the detection of a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in more than 90 minutes.

R#	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R11	N/A	N/A	N/A	The Distribution Provider or Generator Operator that detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability failed to consult with each entity affected by the failure, as identified in Requirement R7 for a Distribution Provider or Requirement R8 for a Generator Operator, to determine a mutually agreeable action for the restoration of the Interpersonal Communication capability.

E. Regional Differences

None identified.

F. Associated Documents

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Date	New
0	August 8, 2005	Removed “Proposed” from Effective Date	Errata
1	November 1, 2006	Adopted by Board of Trustees	Revised
1	April 4, 2007	Regulatory Approval — Effective Date	New
1	April 6, 2007	Requirement 1, added the word “for” between “facilities” and “the exchange.”	Errata
1.1	October 29, 2008	BOT adopted errata changes; updated version number to “1.1”	Errata
2	November 7, 2012	Adopted by Board of Trustees	Revised in accordance with SAR for Project 2006-06, Reliability Coordination (RC SDT). Replaced R1 with R1-R8; R2 replaced by R9; R3 included within new R1; R4 remains enforce pending Project 2007-02; R5 redundant with EOP-008-0, retiring R5 as redundant with EOP-008-0, R1; retiring R6, relates to ERO procedures; R10 & R11, new.
2	April 16, 2015	FERC Order issued approving COM-001-2	

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard COM-001-2 — Communications

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
COM-001-2	All	10/01/2015	

Reliability Standard COM-002-4

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** Operating Personnel Communications Protocols

2. **Number:** COM-002-4

3. **Purpose:** To improve communications for the issuance of Operating Instructions with predefined communications protocols to reduce the possibility of miscommunication that could lead to action or inaction harmful to the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES).

4. **Applicability:**

   4.1. Functional Entities

   4.1.1 Balancing Authority

   4.1.2 Distribution Provider

   4.1.3 Reliability Coordinator

   4.1.4 Transmission Operator

   4.1.5 Generator Operator

5. **Effective Date:** The standard shall become effective on the first day of the first calendar quarter that is twelve (12) months after the date that the standard is approved by an applicable governmental authority or as otherwise provided for in a jurisdiction where approval by an applicable governmental authority is required for a standard to go into effect. Where approval by an applicable governmental authority is not required, the standard shall become effective on the first day of the first calendar quarter that is twelve (12) months after the date the standard is adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees or as otherwise provided for in that jurisdiction.

B. Requirements

R1. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator shall develop documented communications protocols for its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions. The protocols shall, at a minimum: *[Violation Risk Factor: Low][Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*

1.1. Require its operating personnel that issue and receive an oral or written Operating Instruction to use the English language, unless agreed to otherwise. An alternate language may be used for internal operations.

1.2. Require its operating personnel that issue an oral two-party, person-to-person Operating Instruction to take one of the following actions:

- Confirm the receiver’s response if the repeated information is correct.
- Reissue the Operating Instruction if the repeated information is incorrect or if requested by the receiver.

- Take an alternative action if a response is not received or if the Operating Instruction was not understood by the receiver.

1.3. Require its operating personnel that receive an oral two-party, person-to-person Operating Instruction to take one of the following actions:

- Repeat, not necessarily verbatim, the Operating Instruction and receive confirmation from the issuer that the response was correct.
- Request that the issuer reissue the Operating Instruction.

1.4. Require its operating personnel that issue a written or oral single-party to multiple-party burst Operating Instruction to confirm or verify that the Operating Instruction was received by at least one receiver of the Operating Instruction.

1.5. Specify the instances that require time identification when issuing an oral or written Operating Instruction and the format for that time identification.

1.6. Specify the nomenclature for Transmission interface Elements and Transmission interface Facilities when issuing an oral or written Operating Instruction.

R2. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator shall conduct initial training for each of its operating personnel responsible for the Real-time operation of the interconnected Bulk Electric System on the documented communications protocols developed in Requirement R1 prior to that individual operator issuing an Operating Instruction. *[Violation Risk Factor: Low][Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*

R3. Each Distribution Provider and Generator Operator shall conduct initial training for each of its operating personnel who can receive an oral two-party, person-to-person Operating Instruction prior to that individual operator receiving an oral two-party, person-to-person Operating Instruction to either: *[Violation Risk Factor: Low][Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*

- Repeat, not necessarily verbatim, the Operating Instruction and receive confirmation from the issuer that the response was correct, or
- Request that the issuer reissue the Operating Instruction.

R4. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator shall at least once every twelve (12) calendar months: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

4.1. Assess adherence to the documented communications protocols in Requirement R1 by its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions, provide feedback to those operating personnel and take corrective action, as deemed appropriate by the entity, to address deviations from the documented protocols.

4.2. Assess the effectiveness of its documented communications protocols in Requirement R1 for its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions and modify its documented communication protocols, as necessary.

R5. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator that issues an oral two-party, person-to-person Operating Instruction during an Emergency, excluding written or oral single-party to multiple-party burst Operating Instructions, shall either: *[Violation Risk Factor: High][Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

- Confirm the receiver's response if the repeated information is correct (in accordance with Requirement R6).
- Reissue the Operating Instruction if the repeated information is incorrect or if requested by the receiver, or
- Take an alternative action if a response is not received or if the Operating Instruction was not understood by the receiver.

R6. Each Balancing Authority, Distribution Provider, Generator Operator, and Transmission Operator that receives an oral two-party, person-to-person Operating Instruction during an Emergency, excluding written or oral single-party to multiple-party burst Operating Instructions, shall either: *[Violation Risk Factor: High][Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

- Repeat, not necessarily verbatim, the Operating Instruction and receive confirmation from the issuer that the response was correct, or
- Request that the issuer reissue the Operating Instruction.

R7. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator that issues a written or oral single-party to multiple-party burst Operating Instruction during an Emergency shall confirm or verify that the Operating Instruction was received by at least one receiver of the Operating Instruction. *[Violation Risk Factor: High][Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

C. Measures

M1. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator shall provide its documented communications protocols developed for Requirement R1.

M2. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator shall provide its initial training records related to its documented communications protocols developed for Requirement R1 such as attendance logs, agendas, learning objectives, or course materials in fulfillment of Requirement R2.

M3. Each Distribution Provider and Generator Operator shall provide its initial training records for its operating personnel such as attendance logs, agendas, learning objectives, or course materials in fulfillment of Requirement R3.

M4. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator shall provide evidence of its assessments, including spreadsheets, logs or other evidence of feedback, findings of effectiveness and any changes made to its documented communications protocols developed for Requirement R1 in fulfillment of

Requirement R4. The entity shall provide, as part of its assessment, evidence of any corrective actions taken where an operating personnel's non-adherence to the protocols developed in Requirement R1 is the sole or partial cause of an Emergency and for all other instances where the entity determined that it was appropriate to take a corrective action to address deviations from the documented protocols developed in Requirement R1.

M5. Each Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, and Balancing Authority that issued an oral two-party, person-to-person Operating Instruction during an Emergency, excluding oral single-party to multiple-party burst Operating Instructions, shall have evidence that the issuer either: 1) confirmed that the response from the recipient of the Operating Instruction was correct; 2) reissued the Operating Instruction if the repeated information was incorrect or if requested by the receiver; or 3) took an alternative action if a response was not received or if the Operating Instruction was not understood by the receiver. Such evidence could include, but is not limited to, dated and time-stamped voice recordings, or dated and time-stamped transcripts of voice recordings, or dated operator logs in fulfillment of Requirement R5.

M6. Each Balancing Authority, Distribution Provider, Generator Operator, and Transmission Operator that was the recipient of an oral two-party, person-to-person Operating Instruction during an Emergency, excluding oral single-party to multiple-party burst Operating Instructions, shall have evidence to show that the recipient either repeated, not necessarily verbatim, the Operating Instruction and received confirmation from the issuer that the response was correct, or requested that the issuer reissue the Operating Instruction in fulfillment of Requirement R6. Such evidence may include, but is not limited to, dated and time-stamped voice recordings (if the entity has such recordings), dated operator logs, an attestation from the issuer of the Operating Instruction, memos or transcripts.

M7. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator and Transmission Operator that issued a written or oral single or multiple-party burst Operating Instruction during an Emergency shall provide evidence that the Operating Instruction was received by at least one receiver. Such evidence may include, but is not limited to, dated and time-stamped voice recordings (if the entity has such recordings), dated operator logs, electronic records, memos or transcripts.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Data Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

Each Balancing Authority, Distribution Provider, Generator Operator, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator shall each keep data or evidence for each applicable Requirement for the current calendar year and one previous calendar year, with the exception of voice recordings which shall be retained for a minimum of 90 calendar days, unless directed by its Compliance Enforcement Authority to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation.

If a Balancing Authority, Distribution Provider, Generator Operator, Reliability Coordinator, or Transmission Operator is found non-compliant, it shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is complete and approved or for the time period specified above, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.3. Additional Compliance Information

None

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	Long-term Planning	Low	The responsible entity did not specify the instances that require time identification when issuing an oral or written Operating Instruction and the format for that time identification, as required in Requirement R1, Part 1.5 OR The responsible entity did not specify the nomenclature for Transmission interface Elements and Transmission interface Facilities when issuing an oral or written Operating Instruction, as required in Requirement R1, Part 1.6.	The responsible entity did not require the issuer and receiver of an oral or written Operating Instruction to use the English language, unless agreed to otherwise, as required in Requirement R1, Part 1.1. An alternate language may be used for internal operations.	The responsible entity did not include Requirement R1, Part 1.4 in its documented communication protocols.	The responsible entity did not include Requirement R1, Part 1.2 in its documented communications protocols OR The responsible entity did not include Requirement R1, Part 1.3 in its documented communications protocols OR The responsible entity did not develop any documented communications protocols as required in Requirement R1.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R2	Long-term Planning	Low	N/A	N/A	An individual operator responsible for the Real-time operation of the interconnected Bulk Electric System at the responsible entity issued an Operating Instruction, prior to being trained on the documented communications protocols developed in Requirement R1.	An individual operator responsible for the Real-time operation of the interconnected Bulk Electric System at the responsible entity issued an Operating Instruction during an Emergency prior to being trained on the documented communications protocols developed in Requirement R1.
R3	Long-term Planning	Low	N/A	N/A	An individual operator at the responsible entity received an Operating Instruction prior to being trained.	An individual operator at the responsible entity received an Operating Instruction during an Emergency prior to being trained.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R4	Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity assessed adherence to the documented communications protocols in Requirements R1 by its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions and provided feedback to those operating personnel and took corrective action, as appropriate AND The responsible entity assessed the effectiveness of its documented communications protocols in Requirement R1 for its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions and modified its documented communication	The responsible entity assessed adherence to the documented communications protocols in Requirement R1 by its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions, but did not provide feedback to those operating personnel OR The responsible entity assessed adherence to the documented communications protocols in Requirements R1 by its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions and provided feedback to those operating personnel but did not take corrective action, as appropriate OR The responsible entity assessed the effectiveness of its documented communications protocols	The responsible entity did not assess adherence to the documented communications protocols in Requirements R1 by its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions OR The responsible entity did not assess the effectiveness of its documented communications protocols in Requirement R1 for its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions.	The responsible entity did not assess adherence to the documented communications protocols in Requirements R1 by its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions AND The responsible entity did not assess the effectiveness of its documented communications protocols in Requirement R1 for its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
			protocols, as necessary AND The responsible entity exceeded twelve (12) calendar months between assessments.	in Requirement R1 for its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions, but did not modify its documented communication protocols, as necessary.		

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R5	Real-time Operations	High	N/A	The responsible entity that issued an Operating Instruction during an Emergency did not take one of the following actions: • Confirmed the receiver's response if the repeated information was correct (in accordance with Requirement R6). • Reissued the Operating Instruction if the repeated information was incorrect or if requested by the receiver. • Took an alternative action if a response was not received or if the Operating Instruction was not understood by the receiver.	N/A	The responsible entity that issued an Operating Instruction during an Emergency did not take one of the following actions: • Confirmed the receiver's response if the repeated information was correct (in accordance with Requirement R6). • Reissued the Operating Instruction if the repeated information was incorrect or if requested by the receiver. • Took an alternative action if a response was not received or if the Operating Instruction was not understood by the receiver. AND Instability, uncontrolled separation, or cascading failures occurred as a result.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R6	Real-time Operations	High	N/A	The responsible entity did not repeat, not necessarily verbatim, the Operating Instruction during an Emergency and receive confirmation from the issuer that the response was correct, or request that the issuer reissue the Operating Instruction when receiving an Operating Instruction.	N/A	The responsible entity did not repeat, not necessarily verbatim, the Operating Instruction during an Emergency and receive confirmation from the issuer that the response was correct, or request that the issuer reissue the Operating Instruction when receiving an Operating Instruction AND Instability, uncontrolled separation, or cascading failures occurred as a result.
R7	Real-time Operations	High	N/A	The responsible entity that that issued a written or oral single-party to multiple-party burst Operating Instruction during an Emergency did not confirm or verify that the Operating Instruction was received by at least one receiver of the Operating Instruction.	N/A	The responsible entity that that issued a written or oral single-party to multiple-party burst Operating Instruction during an Emergency did not confirm or verify that the Operating Instruction was received by at least one receiver of the Operating Instruction AND Instability, uncontrolled separation, or cascading failures occurred as a result.

E. Regional Variances

None

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Date	New
0	August 8, 2005	Removed "Proposed" from Effective Date	Errata
1	February 7, 2006	Adopted by Board of Trustees	Added measures and compliance elements
2	November 1, 2006	Adopted by Board of Trustees	Revised in accordance with SAR for Project 2006-06, Reliability Coordination (RC SDT). Retired R1, R1.1, M1, M2 and updated the compliance monitoring information. Replaced R2 with new R1, R2 and R3.
2a	February 9, 2012	Interpretation of R2 adopted by Board of Trustees	Project 2009-22
3	November 7, 2012	Adopted by Board of Trustees	
4	May 6, 2014	Adopted by Board of Trustees	
4	April 16, 2015	FERC Order issued approving COM-002-4	

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard COM-002-4 — Operating Personnel Communications Protocols

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
COM-002-4	All	07/01/2016	

Reliability Standard PRC-001-1.1(ii)

A. Introduction

1. Title: System Protection Coordination

2. Number: PRC-001-1.1(ii)

3. Purpose:

To ensure system protection is coordinated among operating entities.

4. Applicability

4.1. Balancing Authorities

4.2. Transmission Operators

4.3. Generator Operators

5. Effective Date:

See the Implementation Plan for PRC-001-1.1(ii).

B. Requirements

R1. Each Transmission Operator, Balancing Authority, and Generator Operator shall be familiar with the purpose and limitations of Protection System schemes applied in its area.

R2. Each Generator Operator and Transmission Operator shall notify reliability entities of relay or equipment failures as follows:

R2.1. If a protective relay or equipment failure reduces system reliability, the Generator Operator shall notify its Transmission Operator and Host Balancing Authority. The Generator Operator shall take corrective action as soon as possible.

R2.2. If a protective relay or equipment failure reduces system reliability, the Transmission Operator shall notify its Reliability Coordinator and affected Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities. The Transmission Operator shall take corrective action as soon as possible.

R3. A Generator Operator or Transmission Operator shall coordinate new protective systems and changes as follows.

R3.1. Each Generator Operator shall coordinate all new protective systems and all protective system changes with its Transmission Operator and Host Balancing Authority.

- Requirement R3.1 is not applicable to the individual generating units of dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition.

R3.2. Each Transmission Operator shall coordinate all new protective systems and all protective system changes with neighboring Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities.

R4. Each Transmission Operator shall coordinate Protection Systems on major transmission lines and interconnections with neighboring Generator Operators, Transmission Operators, and Balancing Authorities.

R5. A Generator Operator or Transmission Operator shall coordinate changes in generation, transmission, load or operating conditions that could require changes in the Protection Systems of others:

R5.1. Each Generator Operator shall notify its Transmission Operator in advance of changes in generation or operating conditions that could require changes in the Transmission Operator's Protection Systems.

R5.2. Each Transmission Operator shall notify neighboring Transmission Operators in advance of changes in generation, transmission, load, or operating conditions that could require changes in the other Transmission Operators' Protection Systems.

R6. Each Transmission Operator and Balancing Authority shall monitor the status of each Special Protection System in their area, and shall notify affected Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities of each change in status.

C. Measures

M1. Each Generator Operator and Transmission Operator shall have and provide upon request evidence that could include but is not limited to, revised fault analysis study, letters of agreement on settings, notifications of changes, or other equivalent evidence that will be used to confirm that there was coordination of new protective systems or changes as noted in Requirements 3, 3.1, and 3.2.

M2. Each Transmission Operator and Balancing Authority shall have and provide upon request evidence that could include but is not limited to, documentation, electronic logs, computer printouts, or computer demonstration or other equivalent evidence that will be used to confirm that it monitors the Special Protection Systems in its area. (Requirement 6 Part 1)

M3. Each Transmission Operator and Balancing Authority shall have and provide upon request evidence that could include but is not limited to, operator logs, phone records, electronic-notifications or other equivalent evidence that will be used to confirm that it notified affected Transmission Operator and Balancing Authorities of changes in status of one of its Special Protection Systems. (Requirement 6 Part 2)

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Monitoring Responsibility

Regional Reliability Organizations shall be responsible for compliance monitoring.

1.2. Compliance Monitoring and Reset Time Frame

One or more of the following methods will be used to assess compliance:

- Self-certification (Conducted annually with submission according to schedule.)
- Spot Check Audits (Conducted anytime with up to 30 days notice given to prepare.)
- Periodic Audit (Conducted once every three years according to schedule.)
- Triggered Investigations (Notification of an investigation must be made within 60 days of an event or complaint of noncompliance. The entity will have up to 30 days to prepare for the investigation. An entity may request an extension of the preparation period and the extension will be considered by the Compliance Monitor on a case-by-case basis.)

The Performance-Reset Period shall be 12 months from the last finding of non-compliance.

1.3. Data Retention

Each Generator Operator and Transmission Operator shall have current, in-force documents available as evidence of compliance for Measure 1.

Each Transmission Operator and Balancing Authority shall keep 90 days of historical data (evidence) for Measures 2 and 3.

If an entity is found non-compliant the entity shall keep information related to the noncompliance until found compliant or for two years plus the current year, whichever is longer.

Evidence used as part of a triggered investigation shall be retained by the entity being investigated for one year from the date that the investigation is closed, as determined by the Compliance Monitor,

The Compliance Monitor shall keep the last periodic audit report and all requested and submitted subsequent compliance records.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None.

2. Levels of Non-Compliance for Generator Operators:

2.1. Level 1: Not applicable.

2.2. Level 2: Not applicable.

2.3. Level 3: Not applicable.

2.4. Level 4: Failed to provide evidence of coordination when installing new protective systems and all protective system changes with its Transmission Operator and Host Balancing Authority as specified in R3.1.

3. Levels of Non-Compliance for Transmission Operators:

3.1. Level 1: Not applicable.

3.2. Level 2: Not applicable.

3.3. Level 3: Not applicable.

3.4. Level 4: There shall be a separate Level 4 non-compliance, for every one of the following requirements that is in violation:

3.4.1 Failed to provide evidence of coordination when installing new protective systems and all protective system changes with neighboring Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities as specified in R3.2.

3.4.2 Did not monitor the status of each Special Protection System, or did not notify affected Transmission Operators, Balancing Authorities of changes in special protection status as specified in R6.

4. Levels of Non-Compliance for Balancing Authorities:

4.1. Level 1: Not applicable.

4.2. Level 2: Not applicable.

4.3. Level 3: Not applicable.

4.4. Level 4: Did not monitor the status of each Special Protection System, or did not notify affected Transmission Operators, Balancing Authorities of changes in special protection status as specified in R6.

E. Regional Differences

None identified.

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Date	New
0	August 8, 2005	Removed “Proposed” from Effective Date	Errata
0	August 25, 2005	Fixed Standard number in Introduction from PRC-001-1 to PRC-001-0	Errata
1	November 1, 2006	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Revised
1.1	April 11, 2012	Errata adopted by the Standards Committee; (Capitalized “Protection System” in accordance with Implementation Plan for Project 2007-17 approval of revised definition of “Protection System”)	Errata associated with Project 2007-17
1.1	September 9, 2013	Informational filing submitted to reflect the revised definition of Protection System in accordance with the Implementation Plan for the revised term.	

1.1(i)	November 13, 2014	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Replaced references to Special Protection System and SPS with Remedial Action Scheme and RAS
1.1(ii)	February 12, 2015	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Standard revised in Project 2014-01: Applicability revised to clarify application of requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
2	May 9, 2012	Adopted by Board of Trustees	Deleted Requirements R2, R5, and R6.
1.1(ii)	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving PRC-001-1.1(ii)	Modifications to adjust the applicability to owners of dispersed generation resources.

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for the Applicability Exclusion in Requirement R3.1

Coordination of new or changes to protective systems associated with dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition are typically performed on the interconnecting facilities. New or changes to protective systems associated with these facilities should be coordinated with the TOP as these protective systems typically must be closely coordinated with the transmission protective systems to ensure the overall protection systems operates as designed. While the protective systems implemented on the individual generating units of dispersed power producing resources at these dispersed power producing facilities (i.e. individual wind turbines or solar panels/inverters) may in some cases need to be coordinated with other protective systems within the same dispersed power producing facility, new or changes to these protective systems do not need to be coordinated with the transmission protective systems, as this coordination would not provide reliability benefits to the BES.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-001-1.1(ii) — System Protection Coordination

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-001-1.1(ii)	All	05/29/2015	

Reliability Standard PRC-004-2.1(i)a

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** Analysis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection System Misoperations

2. **Number:** PRC-004-2.1(i)a

3. **Purpose:** Ensure all transmission and generation Protection System Misoperations affecting the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES) are analyzed and mitigated.

4. **Applicability**

   4.1. Transmission Owner.

   4.2. Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System.

   4.3. Generator Owner.

5. **Effective Date:** See the Implementation Plan for this Standard.

B. Requirements

R1. The Transmission Owner and any Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System shall each analyze its transmission Protection System Misoperations and shall develop and implement a Corrective Action Plan to avoid future Misoperations of a similar nature according to the Regional Entity's procedures.

R2. The Generator Owner shall analyze its generator and generator interconnection Facility Protection System Misoperations, and shall develop and implement a Corrective Action Plan to avoid future Misoperations of a similar nature according to the Regional Entity's procedures.

- For Misoperations occurring on the Protection Systems of individual dispersed power producing resources identified under Inclusion I4 of the BES definition where the Misoperations affected an aggregate nameplate rating of less than or equal to 75 MVA of BES facilities, this requirement does not apply.

R3. The Transmission Owner, any Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System, and the Generator Owner shall each provide to its Regional Entity, documentation of its Misoperations analyses and Corrective Action Plans according to the Regional Entity's procedures.

- For Misoperations occurring on the Protection Systems of individual dispersed power producing resources identified under Inclusion I4 of the BES definition where the Misoperations affected an aggregate nameplate rating of less than or equal to 75 MVA of BES facilities, this requirement does not apply.

C. Measures

M1. The Transmission Owner, and any Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System shall each have evidence it analyzed its Protection System Misoperations and developed and implemented Corrective Action Plans to avoid future Misoperations of a similar nature according to the Regional Entity's procedures.

M2. The Generator Owner shall have evidence it analyzed its Protection System Misoperations and developed and implemented Corrective Action Plans to avoid future Misoperations of a similar nature according to the Regional Entity's procedures.

M3. Each Transmission Owner, and any Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System, and each Generator Owner shall have evidence it provided documentation of its Protection System Misoperations, analyses and Corrective Action Plans according to the Regional Entity's procedures.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Compliance Monitoring Period and Reset Time Frame

Not applicable.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Processes:

Compliance Audits

Self-Certifications

Spot Checking

Compliance Violation Investigations

Self-Reporting

Complaints

1.4. Data Retention

The Transmission Owner, and Distribution Provider that own a transmission Protection System and the Generator Owner that owns a generation or generator interconnection Facility Protection System shall each retain data on its Protection System Misoperations and each accompanying Corrective Action Plan until the Corrective Action Plan has been executed or for 12 months, whichever is later.

The Compliance Monitor shall retain any audit data for three years.

1.5. Additional Compliance Information

The Transmission Owner, and any Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System and the Generator Owner shall demonstrate compliance through self-certification or audit (periodic, as part of targeted monitoring or initiated by complaint or event), as determined by the Compliance Monitor.

2. Violation Severity Levels (no changes)

E. Regional Differences

None identified.

F. Associated Documents

None.

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Date	New
1	December 1, 2005	1. Changed incorrect use of certain hyphens (-) to "en dash" (–) and "em dash (—)." 2. Added "periods" to items where appropriate. Changed "Timeframe" to "Time Frame" in item D, 1.2.	01/20/06
2		Modified to address Order No. 693 Directives contained in paragraph 1469.	Revised
2	August 5, 2010	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
1a	February 17, 2011	Added Appendix 1 - Interpretation regarding applicability of standard to protection of radially connected transformers	Project 2009-17 interpretation
1a	February 17, 2011	Adopted by the Board of Trustees	
1a	September 26, 2011	FERC Order issued approving the interpretation of R1 and R3 (FERC's Order is effective as of September 26, 2011)	
2a	September 26, 2011	Appended FERC-approved interpretation of R1 and R3 to version 2	
2.1a		Errata change: Edited R2 to add "…and generator interconnection Facility…"	Revision under Project 2010-07
2.1a	February 9, 2012	Errata change adopted by the Board of Trustees	
2.1a	September 19, 2013	FERC Order issued approving PRC-004-2.1a (approval becomes effective November 25, 2013).	
2.1(i)a	November 13, 2014	Adopted by the Board of Trustees	Applicability revised in Project 2014-01 to clarify application of Requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
2.1(i)a	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving PRC-004-2.1(i)a	

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for Introduction:

The only revisions made to this version of PRC-004-2.1(i)a are revisions to Requirements R2 and R3 to clarify applicability of the Requirements of the standard at generator Facilities. These applicability revisions are intended to clarify and provide for consistent application of the Requirements to BES generator Facilities included in the BES through Inclusion I4 – Dispersed Power Producing Resources.

Rationale for Applicability:

Misoperations occurring on the Protection Systems of individual generation resources identified under Inclusion I4 of the BES definition do not have a material impact on BES reliability when considered individually; however, the aggregate capability of these resources may impact BES reliability if a number of Protection Systems on the individual power producing resources incorrectly operated or failed to operate as designed during a system event. To recognize the potential for the Protection Systems of individual power producing resources to affect the reliability of the BES, Requirement R2 and Requirement R3 reflect the threshold consistent with the revised BES definition. See paragraph 20 of FERC Order Approving Revised Definition in Docket No. RD14-2-000. The intent of Requirement R2 and Requirement R3 is to exclude from the standard requirements these Protection Systems for “common-mode failure” type scenarios affecting less than or equal to 75 MVA aggregated nameplate generating capability at these dispersed generating facilities.

Appendix 1[1]

Requirement Number and Text of Requirement
R1. The Transmission Owner and any Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System shall each analyze its transmission Protection System Misoperations and shall develop and implement a Corrective Action Plan to avoid future Misoperations of a similar nature according to the Regional Reliability Organization's procedures developed for Reliability Standard PRC-003 Requirement 1. **R3**. The Transmission Owner, any Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System, and the Generator Owner shall each provide to its Regional Reliability Organization, documentation of its Misoperations analyses and Corrective Action Plans according to the Regional Reliability Organization's procedures developed for PRC-003 R1.
Question:
Is protection for a radially-connected transformer protection system energized from the BES considered a transmission Protection System subject to this standard?
Response:
The request for interpretation of PRC-004-1 Requirements R1 and R3 focuses on the applicability of the term "transmission Protection System." The NERC Glossary of Terms Used in Reliability Standards contains a definition of "Protection System" but does not contain a definition of transmission Protection System. In these two standards, use of the phrase transmission Protection System indicates that the requirements using this phrase are applicable to any Protection System that is installed for the purpose of detecting faults on transmission elements (lines, buses, transformers, etc.) identified as being included in the Bulk Electric System (BES) and trips an interrupting device that interrupts current supplied directly from the BES. A Protection System for a radially connected transformer energized from the BES would be considered a transmission Protection System and subject to these standards only if the protection trips an interrupting device that interrupts current supplied directly from the BES and the transformer is a BES element.

[1] When the request for interpretation was made, it was for a previous version of the standard. Although the interpretation references a previous version of the standard, because it is still applicable in this case, it is appended to this version of the standard.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-004-2.1(i)a — Analysis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection System Misoperations

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-004-2.1(i)a	All	05/29/2015	

Reliability Standard PRC-004-3

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction**

2. **Number:** PRC-004-3

3. **Purpose:** Identify and correct the causes of Misoperations of Protection Systems for Bulk Electric System (BES) Elements.

4. **Applicability:**

   4.1. Functional Entities:

   4.1.1 Transmission Owner

   4.1.2 Generator Owner

   4.1.3 Distribution Provider

   4.2. Facilities:

   4.2.1 Protection Systems for BES Elements, with the following exclusions:

   4.2.1.1 Non-protective functions that are embedded within a Protection System.

   4.2.1.2 Protective functions intended to operate as a control function during switching.[1]

   4.2.1.3 Special Protection Systems (SPS).

   4.2.1.4 Remedial Action Schemes (RAS).

   4.2.2 Underfrequency load shedding (UFLS) that is intended to trip one or more BES Elements.

5. **Background**:

   A key factor for BES reliability is the correct performance of Protection Systems. The monitoring of Protection System events for BES Elements, as well as identifying and correcting the causes of Misoperations, will improve Protection System performance. This Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 – Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction is a revision of PRC-004-2.1a – Analysis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection System Misoperations. The Reliability Standard PRC-003-1 – Regional Procedure for Analysis of Misoperations of Transmission and Generation Protection Systems requires Regional Entities to establish procedures for analysis of Misoperations. In the FERC Order No. 693, the Commission identified PRC-003-0 as a “fill-in-the-blank” standard. The Order stated that because the regional procedures had not been submitted, the Commission proposed not to approve or remand PRC-003-0. Because PRC-003-0 (now PRC-003-1) is not enforceable, there is not a mandatory requirement for Regional Entity procedures to support the Requirements of PRC-004-2.1a. This is a potential reliability gap;

[1] For additional information and examples, see the “Non-Protective Functions” and “Control Functions” sections in the Application Guidelines.

consequently, PRC-004-3 combines the reliability intent of the two legacy standards PRC-003-1 and PRC-004-2.1a.

This project includes revising the existing definition of Misoperation, which reads:

Misoperation

- Any failure of a Protection System element to operate within the specified time when a fault or abnormal condition occurs within a zone of protection.
- Any operation for a fault not within a zone of protection (other than operation as backup protection for a fault in an adjacent zone that is not cleared within a specified time for the protection for that zone).
- Any unintentional Protection System operation when no fault or other abnormal condition has occurred unrelated to on-site maintenance and testing activity.

In general, this definition needed more specificity and clarity. The terms “specified time” and “abnormal condition” are ambiguous. In the third bullet, more clarification is needed as to whether an unintentional Protection System operation for an atypical, yet explainable, condition is a Misoperation.

The SAR for this project also included clarifying reporting requirements. Misoperation data, as currently collected and reported, is not optimal to establish consistent metrics for measuring Protection System performance. As such, the data reporting obligation for this standard is being removed and is being developed under the NERC Rules of Procedure, Section 1600 – Request for Data or Information (“data request”). As a result of the data request, NERC will analyze the data to: develop meaningful metrics; identify trends in Protection System performance that negatively impact reliability; identify remediation techniques; and publicize lessons learned for the industry. The removal of the data collection obligation from the standard does not result in a reduction of reliability. The standard and data request have been developed in a manner such that evidence used for compliance with the standard and data request are intended to be independent of each other.

The proposed Requirements of the revised Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 meet the following objectives:

- Review all Protection System operations on the BES to identify those that are Misoperations of Protection Systems for Facilities that are part of the BES.
- Analyze Misoperations of Protection Systems for Facilities that are part of the BES to identify the cause(s).
- Develop and implement Corrective Action Plans to address the cause(s) of Misoperations of Protection Systems for Facilities that are part of the BES.

Misoperations associated with Special Protection Schemes (SPS) and Remedial Action Schemes (RAS) are not addressed in this standard due to their inherent complexities. NERC plans to handle SPS and RAS in the second phase of this project.

The Western Electric Coordinating Council (WECC) Regional Reliability Standard PRC-004-WECC-1 – Protection System and Remedial Action Scheme Misoperation relates to the reporting of Misoperations of Protection Systems and RAS for a limited set of WECC Paths. The WECC region plans to conduct work to harmonize the regional standard with this continent-wide proposed standard and the second phase of this project concerning SPS and RAS.

Undervoltage load shedding (UVLS) has not been included in this standard's applicability because Misoperations of UVLS relays are currently addressed by Reliability Standard PRC-022-1 – Under-Voltage Load Shedding Program Performance, Requirement R1.5. Underfrequency load shedding (UFLS) was added to PRC-004-3 to close a gap in reliability as Misoperations of UFLS relays are not covered by a Reliability Standard currently.

6. Effective Dates:

The standard shall become effective on the first day of the first calendar quarter that is twelve (12) months after the date that the standard is approved by an applicable governmental authority or as otherwise provided for in a jurisdiction where approval by an applicable governmental authority is required for a standard to go into effect. Where approval by an applicable governmental authority is not required, the standard shall become effective on the first day of the first calendar quarter that is twelve (12) months after the date the standard is adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees or as otherwise provided for in that jurisdiction.

B. Requirements and Measures

R1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that owns a BES interrupting device that operated under the circumstances in Parts 1.1 through 1.3 shall, within 120 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation, identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*

1.1 The BES interrupting device operation was caused by a Protection System or by manual intervention in response to a Protection System failure to operate; and

1.2 The BES interrupting device owner owns all or part of the Composite Protection System; and

1.3 The BES interrupting device owner identified that its Protection System component(s) caused the BES interrupting device(s) operation or was caused by manual intervention in response to its Protection System failure to operate.

M1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it identified the Misoperation of its Protection System component(s), if any, that meet the circumstances in Requirement R1, Parts 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3 within the allotted time period. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R1, including Parts 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): reports, databases, spreadsheets, emails, facsimiles, lists, logs, records, declarations, analyses of sequence of events, relay targets, Disturbance Monitoring Equipment (DME) records, test results, or transmittals.

R2. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that owns a BES interrupting device that operated shall, within 120 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation, provide notification as described in Parts 2.1 and 2.2. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*

2.1 For a BES interrupting device operation by a Composite Protection System or by manual intervention in response to a Protection System failure to operate, notification of the operation shall be provided to the other owner(s) that share Misoperation identification responsibility for the Composite Protection System under the following circumstances:

2.1.1 The BES interrupting device owner shares the Composite Protection System ownership with any other owner; and

2.1.2 The BES interrupting device owner has determined that a Misoperation occurred or cannot rule out a Misoperation; and

2.1.3 The BES interrupting device owner has determined that its Protection System component(s) did not cause the BES interrupting device(s) operation or cannot determine whether its Protection System components caused the BES interrupting device(s) operation.

2.2 For a BES interrupting device operation by a Protection System component intended to operate as backup protection for a condition on another entity's BES Element, notification of the operation shall be provided to the other Protection System owner(s) for which that backup protection was provided.

M2. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates notification to the other owner(s), within the allotted time period for either Requirement R2, Part 2.1, including subparts 2.1.1, 2.1.2, and 2.1.3 and Requirement R2, Part 2.2. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R2, including Parts 2.1 and 2.2 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): emails, facsimiles, or transmittals.

R3. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that receives notification, pursuant to Requirement R2 shall, within the later of 60 calendar days of notification or 120 calendar days of the BES interrupting device(s) operation, identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*

M3. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation within the allotted time period. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R3 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): reports, databases, spreadsheets, emails, facsimiles, lists, logs, records, declarations, analyses of sequence of events, relay targets, Disturbance Monitoring Equipment (DME) records, test results, or transmittals.

R4. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that has not determined the cause(s) of a Misoperation, for a Misoperation identified in accordance with Requirement R1 or R3, shall perform investigative action(s) to determine the cause(s) of the Misoperation at least once every two full calendar quarters after the Misoperation was first identified, until one of the following completes the investigation: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*

- The identification of the cause(s) of the Misoperation; or
- A declaration that no cause was identified.

M4. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it performed at least one investigative action according to Requirement R4 every two full calendar quarters until a cause is identified or a declaration is made. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R4 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): reports, databases, spreadsheets, emails, facsimiles, lists, logs, records, declarations, analyses of sequence of events, relay targets, Disturbance Monitoring Equipment (DME) records, test results, or transmittals.

R5. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that owns the Protection System component(s) that caused the Misoperation shall, within 60 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation: [*Violation Risk Factor: Medium*] [*Time Horizon: Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning*]

- Develop a Corrective Action Plan (CAP) for the identified Protection System component(s), and an evaluation of the CAP's applicability to the entity's other Protection Systems including other locations; or
- Explain in a declaration why corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability, and that no further corrective actions will be taken.

M5. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it developed a CAP and an evaluation of the CAP's applicability to other Protection Systems and locations, or a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R5 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): CAP and evaluation, or declaration.

R6. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall implement each CAP developed in Requirement R5, and update each CAP if actions or timetables change, until completed. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning]*

M6. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it implemented each CAP, including updating actions or timetables. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R6 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): records that document the implementation of each CAP and the completion of actions for each CAP including revision history of each CAP. Evidence may also include work management program records, work orders, and maintenance records.

C. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" (CEA) means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Evidence Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the CEA may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall keep data or evidence to show compliance as identified below unless directed by its CEA to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation.

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall retain evidence of Requirements R1, R2, R3, and R4, Measures M1, M2, M3, and M4 for a minimum of 12 calendar months following the completion of each Requirement.

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall retain evidence of Requirement R5, Measure M5, including any supporting analysis per Requirements R1, R2, R3, and R4, for a minimum of 12 calendar months following completion of each CAP, completion of each evaluation, and completion of each declaration.

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall retain evidence of Requirement R6, Measure M6 for a minimum of 12 calendar months following completion of each CAP.

If a Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, or Distribution Provider is found non-compliant, it shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is complete and approved, or for the time specified above, whichever is longer.

The CEA shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None**.**

D. Table of Compliance Elements

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 120 calendar days and less than or equal to 150 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 150 calendar days and less than or equal to 165 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 165 calendar days and less than or equal to 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation. OR The responsible entity failed to identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R2	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 120 calendar days and less than or equal to 150 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 150 calendar days and less than or equal to 165 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 165 calendar days and less than or equal to 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation. OR The responsible entity failed to notify one or more of the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R3	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was less than or equal to 30 calendar days late.	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was greater than 30 calendar days and less than or equal to 45 calendar days late.	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was greater than 45 calendar days and less than or equal to 60 calendar days late.	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was greater than 60 calendar days late. OR The responsible entity failed to identify whether or not a Misoperation of its Protection System component(s) occurred in accordance with Requirement R3.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R4	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was less than or equal to one calendar quarter late.	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was greater than one calendar quarter and less than or equal to two calendar quarters late.	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was greater than two calendar quarters and less than or equal to three calendar quarters late.	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was more than three calendar quarters late. OR The responsible entity failed to perform investigative action(s) in accordance with Requirement R4.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R5	Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning	Medium	The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 60 calendar days and less than or equal to 70 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR (See next page)	The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 70 calendar days and less than or equal to 80 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR (See next page)	The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 80 calendar days and less than or equal to 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR (See next page)	The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR The responsible entity failed to develop a CAP or explain in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5. OR (See next page)

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R5	(Continued)		The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 60 calendar days and less than or equal to 70 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.	The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 70 calendar days and less than or equal to 80 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.	The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 80 calendar days and less than or equal to 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.	The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR The responsible entity failed to develop an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5.
R6	Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning	Medium	The responsible entity implemented, but failed to update a CAP, when actions or timetables changed, in accordance with Requirement R6.	N/A	N/A	The responsible entity failed to implement a CAP in accordance with Requirement R6.

E. Regional Variances

None.

F. Interpretations

None.

G. Associated Documents

NERC System Protection and Controls Subcommittee of the NERC Planning Committee, Assessment of Standards: PRC-003-1 – Regional Procedure for Analysis of Misoperations of Transmission and Generation Protection Systems, PRC-004-1 – Analysis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection Misoperations, PRC-016-1 – Special Protection System Misoperations, May 22, 2009.[2]

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Date	New
1	December 1, 2005	1. Changed incorrect use of certain hyphens (-) to "en dash" (–) and "em dash (—)." 2. Added "periods" to items where appropriate. Changed "Timeframe" to "Time Frame" in item D, 1.2.	01/20/06
2		Modified to address Order No. 693 Directives contained in paragraph 1469.	Revised
2	August 5, 2010	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
1a	February 17, 2011	Added Appendix 1 - Interpretation regarding applicability of standard to protection of radially connected transformers	Project 2009-17 interpretation

2 http://www.nerc.com/comm/PC/System%20Protection%20and%20Control%20Subcommittee%20SPCS%20DL/PRC-003-004-016%20Report.pdf

1a	February 17, 2011	Adopted by the Board of Trustees	
1a	September 26, 2011	FERC Order issued approving the interpretation of R1 and R3 (FERC's Order is effective as of September 26, 2011)	
2a	September 26, 2011	Appended FERC-approved interpretation of R1 and R3 to version 2	
2.1a		Errata change: Edited R2 to add "…and generator interconnection Facility…"	Revision under Project 2010-07
2.1a	February 9, 2012	Errata change adopted by the Board of Trustees	
2.1a	September 19, 2013	FERC Order issued approving PRC-004-2.1a (approval becomes effective November 25, 2013).	
3	August 14, 2014	Adopted by Board of Trustees	Revision under Project 2010-05.1
3	May 13, 2015	FERC letter order issued approving PRC-004-3	

Guidelines and Technical Basis

Introduction

This standard addresses the reliability issues identified in the letter[3] from Gerry Cauley, NERC President and CEO, dated January 7, 2011.

> "Nearly all major system failures, excluding perhaps those caused by severe weather, have misoperations of relays or automatic controls as a factor contributing to the propagation of the failure. …Relays can misoperate, either operate when not needed or fail to operate when needed, for a number of reasons. First, the device could experience an internal failure – but this is rare. Most commonly, relays fail to operate correctly due to incorrect settings, improper coordination (of timing and set points) with other devices, ineffective maintenance and testing, or failure of communications channels or power supplies. Preventable errors can be introduced by field personnel and their supervisors or more programmatically by the organization."

The standard also addresses the findings in the *2011 Risk Assessment of Reliability Performance*[4]; July 2011.

> "…a number of multiple outage events were initiated by protection system Misoperations. These events, which go beyond their design expectations and operating procedures, represent a tangible threat to reliability. A deeper review of the root causes of dependent and common mode events, which include three or more automatic outages, is a high priority for NERC and the industry."

The *State of Reliability 2014*[5] report continued to identify Protection System Misoperations as a significant contributor to automatic transmission outage severity. The report recommended completion of the development of PRC-004-3 as part of the solution to address Protection System Misoperations.

Definitions

The Misoperation definition is based on the IEEE/PSRC Working Group I3 "Transmission Protective Relay System Performance Measuring Methodology[6]." Misoperations of a Protection System include failure to operate, slowness in operating, or operating when not required either during a Fault or non-Fault condition.

---

3 http://www.nerc.com/pa/Stand/Project%20201005%20Protection%20System%20Misoperations%20DL/20110209130708-Cauley%20letter.pdf

4 "2011 Risk Assessment of Reliability Performance." NERC. http://www.nerc.com/files/2011_RARPR_FINAL.pdf. July 2011. Pg. 3.

5 "State of Reliability 2014." NERC. May 2014. Pg. 18 of 106. http://www.nerc.com/pa/RAPA/PA/Performance%20Analysis%20DL/2014_SOR_Final.pdf.

6 "Transmission Protective Relay System Performance Measuring Methodology." Working Group I3 of Power System Relaying Committee of IEEE Power Engineering Society. 1999.

For reference, a "Protection System" is defined in the *Glossary of Terms Used in NERC Reliability Standards* ("NERC Glossary") as:

- Protective relays which respond to electrical quantities,
- Communications systems necessary for correct operation of protective functions,
- Voltage and current sensing devices providing inputs to protective relays,
- Station dc supply associated with protective functions (including station batteries, battery chargers, and non-battery-based dc supply), and
- Control circuitry associated with protective functions through the trip coil(s) of the circuit breakers or other interrupting devices.

A BES interrupting device is a BES Element, typically a circuit breaker or circuit switcher that has the capability to interrupt fault current. Although BES interrupting device mechanisms are not part of a Protection System, the standard uses the operation of a BES interrupting device by a Protection System to initiate the review for Misoperation.

The following two definitions are being proposed for inclusion in the NERC Glossary:

> **Composite Protection System –** *The total complement of Protection System(s) that function collectively to protect an Element. Backup protection provided by a different Element's Protection System(s) is excluded.*

The Composite Protection System definition is based on the principle that an Element's multiple layers of protection are intended to function collectively. This definition has been introduced in this standard and incorporated into the proposed definition of Misoperation to clarify that the overall performance of an Element's total complement of protection should be considered while evaluating an operation.

Composite Protection System – Line Example

The Composite Protection System of the Alpha-Beta line (Circuit #123) is comprised of current differential, permissive overreaching transfer trip (POTT), step distance (classic zone 1, zone 2, and zone 3), instantaneous-overcurrent, time-overcurrent, out-of-step, and overvoltage protection. The protection is housed at the Alpha and Beta substations, and includes the associated relays, communications systems, voltage and current sensing devices, DC supplies, and control circuitry.

Composite Protection System – Transformer Example

The Composite Protection System of the Alpha transformer (#2) is comprised of internal differential, overall differential, instantaneous-overcurrent, and time-overcurrent protection. The protection is housed at the Alpha substation, and includes the associated relays, voltage and current sensing devices, DC supplies, and control circuitry.

Composite Protection System – Generator Example

The Composite Protection System of the Beta generator (#3) is comprised of generator differential, overall differential, overcurrent, stator ground, reverse power, volts per hertz, loss-of-field, and undervoltage protection. The protection is housed at the Beta generating plant and at the Beta substation, and includes the associated relays, voltage and current sensing devices, DC supplies, and control circuitry.

Composite Protection System – Breaker Failure Example

Breaker failure protection provides backup protection for the breaker, and therefore is part of the breaker's Composite Protection System. Considering breaker failure protection to be part of another Element's Composite Protection System could lead to an incorrect conclusion that a breaker failure operation automatically satisfies the "Slow Trip" criteria of the Misoperation definition.

- An example of a correct operation of the breaker's Composite Protection System is when the breaker failure relaying tripped because the line relaying operated, but the breaker failed to clear the Fault. The breaker failure relaying operated because of a failed trip coil. The failed trip coil caused a Misoperation of the line's Composite Protection System.
- An example of a correct operation of the breaker's Composite Protection System is when the breaker failure relaying tripped because the line relaying operated, but the breaker failed to clear the Fault. Only the breaker failure relaying operated because of a failed breaker mechanism. This was not a Misoperation because the breaker mechanism is not part of the breaker's Composite Protection System.
- An example of an "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" is when the breaker failure relaying tripped at the same time as the line relaying during a Fault. The Misoperation was due to the breaker failure timer being set to zero.

Misoperation – *The failure a Composite Protection System to operate as intended for protection purposes. Any of the following is a Misoperation:*

1. **Failure to Trip – During Fault –** *A failure of a Composite Protection System to operate for a Fault condition for which it is designed. The failure of a Protection System component is not a Misoperation as long as the performance of the Composite Protection System is correct.*
2. ***Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault*** *– A failure of a Composite Protection System to operate for a non-Fault condition for which it is designed, such as a power swing, undervoltage, overexcitation, or loss of excitation. The failure of a Protection System component is not a Misoperation as long as the performance of the Composite Protection System is correct.*

3. ***Slow Trip – During Fault*** *– A Composite Protection System operation that is slower than required for a Fault condition if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System.*
4. ***Slow Trip – Other Than Fault*** *– A Composite Protection System operation that is slower than required for a non-Fault condition, such as a power swing, undervoltage, overexcitation, or loss of excitation, if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System.*
5. ***Unnecessary Trip – During Fault*** *– An unnecessary Composite Protection System operation for a Fault condition on another Element.*
6. ***Unnecessary Trip – Other Than Fault*** *– An unnecessary Composite Protection System operation for a non-Fault condition. A Composite Protection System operation that is caused by personnel during on-site maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning activities is not a Misoperation.*

The Misoperation definition is based on the principle that an Element's total complement of protection is intended to operate dependably and securely.

- Failure to automatically reclose after a Fault condition is not included as a Misoperation because reclosing equipment is not included within the definition of Protection System.
- A breaker failure operation does not, in itself, constitute a Misoperation.
- A remote backup operation resulting from a "Failure to Trip" or a "Slow Trip" does not, in itself, constitute a Misoperation.

This proposed definition of Misoperation provides additional clarity over the current version. A Misoperation is the failure of a Composite Protection System to operate as intended for protection purposes. The definition includes six categories which provide further differentiation of what constitutes a Misoperation. These categories are discussed in greater detail in the following sections.

Failure to Trip – During Fault

This category of Misoperation typically results in the Fault condition being cleared by remote backup Protection System operation.

Example 1a: A failure of a transformer's Composite Protection System to operate for a transformer Fault is a Misoperation.

Example 1b: A failure of a "primary" transformer relay (or any other component) to operate for a transformer Fault is not a "Failure to Trip – During Fault" Misoperation as long as another component of the transformer's Composite Protection System operated.

Example 1c: A lack of target information does not by itself constitute a Misoperation. When a high-speed pilot system does not target because a high-speed zone element trips first, it would not in and of itself be a Misoperation.

Example 1d: A failure of an overall differential relay to operate is not a "Failure to Trip – During Fault" Misoperation as long as another component such as a generator differential relay operated.

Example 1e: The Composite Protection System for a bus does not operate during a bus Fault which results in the operation of all local transformer Protection Systems connected to that bus and all remote line Protection Systems connected to that bus isolating the faulted bus from the grid. The operation of the local transformer Protection Systems and the operation of all remote line Protection Systems correctly provided backup protection. There is one "Failure to Trip – During Fault" Misoperation of the bus Composite Protection System.

In analyzing the Protection System for Misoperation, the entity must also consider whether the "Slow Trip – During Fault" category applies to the operation.

Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault

This category of Misoperation may have resulted in operator intervention. The "Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault" conditions cited in the definition are examples only, and do not constitute an all-inclusive list.

Example 2a: A failure of a generator's Composite Protection System to operate for an unintentional loss of field condition is a Misoperation.

Example 2b: A failure of an overexcitation relay (or any other component) is not a "Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault" Misoperation as long as the generator's Composite Protection System operated as intended isolating the generator from the BES.

In analyzing the Protection System for Misoperation, the entity must also consider whether the "Slow Trip – Other Than Fault" category applies to the operation.

Slow Trip – During Fault

This category of Misoperation typically results in remote backup Protection System operation before the Fault is cleared.

Example 3a: A Composite Protection System that is slower than required for a Fault condition is a Misoperation if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. The current differential element of a multiple function relay failed to operate for a line Fault. The same relay's time-overcurrent element operated after a time delay. However, an adjacent line also operated from a time-overcurrent element. The faulted line's time-overcurrent element was found to be set to trip too slowly.

Example 3b: A failure of a breaker's Composite Protection System to operate as quickly as intended to meet the expected critical Fault clearing time for a line Fault in conjunction with a breaker failure (i.e., stuck breaker) is a Misoperation if it resulted in an unintended operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. If a generating unit's Composite Protection System operates due to instability caused by the slow trip of the breaker's Composite Protection System, it is not an "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" Misoperation of the generating unit's Composite Protection System. This event would be a "Slow Trip – During Fault" Misoperation of the breaker's Composite Protection System.

> **Example 3c:** A line connected to a generation interconnection station is protected with two independent high-speed pilot systems. The Composite Protection System for this line also includes step distance and time-overcurrent schemes in addition to the two pilot systems. During a Fault on this line, the two pilot systems fail to operate and the time-overcurrent scheme operates clearing the Fault with no generating units or other Elements tripping (i.e., no over-trips). This event is not a Misoperation.

The phrase "slower than required" means the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. It would be impractical to provide a precise tolerance in the definition that would be applicable to every type of Protection System. Rather, the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation should understand whether the speed and outcome of its Protection System operation met their objective. The intent is not to require documentation of exact Protection System operation times, but to assure consideration of relay coordination and system stability by the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation.

The phrase "resulted in the operation of any other Composite Protection System" refers to the need to ensure that relaying operates in the proper or planned sequence (i.e., the primary relaying for a faulted Element operates before the remote backup relaying for the faulted Element).

In analyzing the Protection System for Misoperation, the entity must also consider the "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" category to determine if an "unnecessary trip" applies to the Protection System operation of an Element other than the faulted Element.

If a coordination error was at the local terminal (i.e., set too slow), then it was a "Slow Trip," category of Misoperation at the local terminal.

Slow Trip – Other Than Fault

The phrase "slower than required" means the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. It would be impractical to provide a precise tolerance in the definition that would be applicable to every type of Protection System. Rather, the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation should understand whether the speed and outcome of its Protection System operation met their objective. The intent is not to require documentation of exact Protection System operation times, but to assure consideration of relay coordination and system stability by the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation.

> **Example 4:** A phase to phase fault occurred on the terminals of a generator. The generator's Composite Protection System and a transmission line's Composite Protection System both operated in response to the fault. It was found during subsequent investigation that the generator protection contained an inappropriate time delay. This caused the transmission line's correctly set overreaching zone of protection to operate. This was a Misoperation of the generator's Composite Protection System, but not of the transmission line's Composite Protection System.

The "Slow Trip – Other Than Fault" conditions cited in the definition are examples only, and do not constitute an all-inclusive list.

Unnecessary Trip – During Fault

An operation of a properly coordinated remote Protection System is not in and of itself a Misoperation if the Fault has persisted for a sufficient time to allow the correct operation of the Composite Protection System of the faulted Element to clear the Fault. A BES interrupting device failure, a "failure to trip" Misoperation, or a "slow trip" Misoperation may result in a proper remote Protection System operation.

> **Example 5:** An operation of a transformer's Composite Protection System which trips (i.e., over-trips) for a properly cleared line Fault is a Misoperation. The Fault is cleared properly by the faulted equipment's Composite Protection System (i.e., line relaying) without the need for an external Protection System operation resulting in an unnecessary trip of the transformer protection; therefore, the transformer Protection System operation is a Misoperation.
>
> **Example 5b:** An operation of a line's Composite Protection System which trips (i.e., over-trips) for a properly cleared Fault on a different line is a Misoperation. The Fault is cleared properly by the faulted line's Composite Protection System (i.e., line relaying); however, elsewhere in the system, a carrier blocking signal is not transmitted (e.g., carrier ON/OFF switch found in OFF position) resulting in the operation of a remote Protection System, single-end trip of a non-faulted line. The operation of the Protection System for the non-faulted line is an unnecessary trip during a Fault. Therefore, the non-faulted line Protection System operation is an "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" Misoperation.
>
> **Example 5c:** If a coordination error was at the remote terminal (i.e., set too fast), then it was an "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" category of Misoperation at the remote terminal.

Unnecessary Trip – Other Than Fault

Unnecessary trips for non-Fault conditions include but are not limited to: power swings, overexcitation, loss of excitation, frequency excursions, and normal operations.

> **Example 6a:** An operation of a line's Composite Protection System due to a relay failure during normal operation is a Misoperation.
>
> **Example 6b:** Tripping a generator by the operation of the loss of field protection during an off-nominal frequency condition while the field is intact is a Misoperation assuming the Composite Protection System was not intended to operate under this condition.
>
> **Example 6c:** An impedance line relay trip for a power swing that entered the relay's characteristic is a Misoperation if the power swing was stable and the relay operated because power swing blocking was enabled and should have prevented the trip, but did not.
>
> **Example 6d:** Tripping a generator operating at normal load by the operation of a reverse power protection relay due to a relay failure is a Misoperation.

Additionally, an operation that occurs during a non-Fault condition but was initiated directly by on-site (i.e., real-time) maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning is not a Misoperation.

> **Example 6e:** A BES interrupting device operation that occurs at the remote end of a line during a non-Fault condition because a direct transfer trip was initiated by system maintenance and testing activities at the local end of the line is not a Misoperation because of the maintenance exclusion in category 6 of the definition of "Misoperation."

The "on-site" activities at one location that initiates a trip to another location are included in this exemption. This includes operation of a Protection System when energizing equipment to facilitate measurements, such as verification of current circuits as a part of performing commissioning; however, once the maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning activity associated with the Protection System is complete, the "on-site" Misoperation exclusion no longer applies, regardless of the presence of on-site personnel.

Special Cases

Protection System operations for these cases would not be a Misoperation.

> **Example 7a:** A generator Protection System operation prior to closing the unit breaker(s) is not a Misoperation provided no in-service Elements are tripped.

This type of operation is not a Misoperation because the generating unit is not synchronized and is isolated from the BES. Protection System operations that occur when the protected Element is out of service and that do not trip any in-service Elements are not Misoperations.

In some cases where zones of protection overlap, the owner(s) of Elements may decide to allow a Protection System to operate faster in order to gain better overall Protection System performance for an Element.

> **Example 7b:** The high-side of a transformer connected to a line may be within the zone of protection of the supplying line's relaying. In this case, the line relaying is planned to protect the area of the high-side of the transformer and into its primary winding. In order to provide faster protection for the line, the line relaying may be designed and set to operate without direct coordination (or coordination is waived) with local protection for Faults on the high-side of the connected transformer. Therefore, the operation of the line relaying for a high-side transformer Fault operated as intended and would not be a Misoperation.

Below are examples of conditions that would be a Misoperation.

> **Example7c:** A 230 kV shunt capacitor bank was released for operational service. The capacitor bank trips due to a settings error in the capacitor bank differential relay upon energization.

> **Example 7d:** A 230/115 kV BES transformer bank trips out when being re-energized due to an incorrect operation of the transformer differential relay for inrush after being released for operational service. Only the high-side breaker opens since the low-side breaker had not yet been closed.

Non-Protective Functions

BES interrupting device operations which are initiated by non-protective functions, such as those associated with generator controls, excitation controls, or turbine/boiler controls, static voltampere-reactive compensators (SVC), flexible ac transmission systems (FACTS), high-voltage dc (HVdc) transmission systems, circuit breaker mechanisms, or other facility control systems are not operations of a Protection System. The standard is not applicable to non-protective functions such as automation (e.g., data collection) or control functions that are embedded within a Protection System.

Control Functions

The entity must make a determination as to whether the standard is applicable to each operation of its Protection System in accordance with the provided exclusions in the standard's Applicability, see Section 4.2.1. The subject matter experts (SME) developing this standard recognize that entities use Protection Systems as part of a routine practice to control BES Elements. This standard is not applicable to operation of protective functions within a Protection System when intended for controlling a BES Element as a part of an entity's process or planned switching sequence. The following are examples of conditions to which this standard is not applicable:

> **Example 8a:** The reverse power protective function that operates to remove a generating unit from service using the entity's normal or routine process.
>
> **Example 8b:** The reverse power relay enables a permissive trip and the generator operator trips the unit.

The standard is not applicable to operation of the protective relay because its operation is intended as a control function as part of a controlled shutdown sequence for the generator. However, the standard remains applicable to operation of the reverse power relay when it operates for conditions not associated with the controlled shutdown sequence, such as a motoring condition caused by a trip of the prime mover.

The following is another example of a condition to which this standard is not applicable:

> **Example 8c:** Operation of a capacitor bank interrupting device for voltage control using functions embedded within a microprocessor based relay that is part of a Protection System.

The above are examples only, and do not constitute an all-inclusive list to which the standard is not applicable.

Extenuating Circumstances

In the event of a natural disaster or other extenuating circumstances, the December 20, 2012 Sanction Guidelines of the North American Electric Reliability Corporation, Section 2.8, Extenuating Circumstances, reads: "In unique extenuating circumstances causing or contributing to the violation, such as significant natural disasters, NERC or the Regional Entity may significantly reduce or eliminate Penalties." The Regional Entities to whom NERC has delegated

authority will consider extenuating circumstances when considering any sanctions in relation to the timelines outlined in this standard.

The volume of Protection System operations tend to be sporadic. If a high rate of Protection System operations is not sustained, utilities will have an opportunity to catch up within the 120 day period.

Requirement Time Periods

The time periods within all the Requirements are distinct and separate. The applicable entity in Requirement R1 has 120 calendar days to identify whether a BES interrupting device operation is a Misoperation. Once the applicable entity has identified a Misoperation, it has completed its performance under Requirement R1. Identified Misoperations without an identified cause become subject to Requirement R4 and any subsequent Requirements as necessary. Identified Misoperations with an identified cause become subject to Requirement R5 and any subsequent Requirements as necessary.

In Requirement R2, the applicable entity has 120 calendar days, based on the date of the BES interrupting device operation, to provide notification to the other Protection System owners that meet the circumstances in Parts 2.1 and 2.2. For the case of an applicable entity that was notified (R3), it has the later of 120 calendar days from the date of the BES interrupting device operation or 60 calendar days of notification to identify whether its Protection System components caused a Misoperation.

Once a Misoperation is identified in either Requirement R1 or R3, and the applicable entity did not identify the cause(s) of the Misoperation, the time period for performing at least one investigative action every two full calendar quarters begins. The time period(s) in Requirement R4 resets upon each period. When the applicable entity's investigative actions identify the cause of the identified Misoperation or the applicable entity declares that no cause was found, the applicable entity has completed its performance in Requirement R4.

The time period in Requirement R5 begins when the Misoperation cause is first identified. The applicable entity is allotted 60 calendar days to perform one of the two activities listed in Requirement R5 (e.g., CAP or declaration) to complete its performance under Requirement R5.

Requirement R6 time period is determined by the actions and the associated timetable to complete those actions identified in the CAP. The time periods contained in the CAP may change from time to time and the applicable entity is required to update the timetable when it changes.

Time periods provided in the Requirements are intended to provide a reasonable amount of time to perform each Requirement. Performing activities in the least amount of time facilitates prompt identification of Misoperations, notification to other Protection System owners, identification of the cause(s), correction of the cause(s), and that important information is retained that may be lost due to time.

Requirement R1

This Requirement initiates a review of each BES interrupting device operation to identify whether or not a Misoperation may have occurred. Since the BES interrupting device owner typically monitors and tracks device operations, the owner is the logical starting point for identifying Misoperations of Protection Systems for BES Elements. A review is required when (1) a BES interrupting device operates that is caused by a Protection System or by manual intervention in response to a Protection System failure to operate, (2) regardless of whether the owner owns all or part of the Protection System component(s), and (3) the owner identified its Protection System component(s) as causing the BES interrupting device operation or was caused by manual intervention in response to its Protection System failure to operate.

Since most Misoperations result in the operation of one or more BES interrupting devices, these operations initiate a review to identify any Misoperation. If an Element is manually isolated in response to a failure to operate, the manual isolation of the Element triggers a review for Misoperation.

> **Example R1a:** The failure of a loss of field relay on a generating unit where an operator takes action to isolate the unit.

Manual intervention may indicate a Misoperation has occurred, thus requiring the initiation of an investigation by the BES interrupting device owner.

For the case where a BES interrupting device did not operate and remote clearing occurs due to the failure of a Composite Protection System to operate, the BES interrupting device owner would still review the operation under Requirement R1. However, if the BES interrupting device owner determines that its Protection System component operated as backup protection for a condition on another entity's BES Element, the owner would provide notification of the operation to the other Protection System owner(s) under Requirement R2, Part 2.2.

Protection Systems are made of many components. These components may be owned by different entities. For example, a Generator Owner may own a current transformer that sends information to a Transmission Owner's differential relay. All of these components and many more are part of a Protection System. It is expected that all of the owners will communicate with each other, sharing information freely, so that Protection System operations can be analyzed, Misoperations identified, and corrective actions taken.

Each entity is expected to use judgment to identify those Protection System operations that meet the definition of Misoperation regardless of the level of ownership. A combination of available information from resources such as counters, relay targets, Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) systems, or Disturbance Monitoring Equipment (DME) would typically be used to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The intent of the standard is to classify an operation as a Misoperation if the available information leads to that conclusion. In many cases, it will not be necessary to leverage all available data to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The standard also allows an entity to classify an operation as a Misoperation if entity is not sure. The entity may decide to identify the operation as a Misoperation to satisfy Requirement R1 and continue its investigation for a cause of the Misoperation under Requirement R4. If the continued investigative actions are inconclusive, the entity may declare no cause found and end its investigation. The entity is allotted 120 calendar days from the date of its BES interrupting device operation to identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation.

The Protection System operation may be documented in a variety of ways such as in a report, database, spreadsheet, or list. The documentation may be organized in a variety of ways such as by BES interrupting device, protected Element, or Composite Protection System.

Repeated operations which occur during the same automatic reclosing sequence do not need a separate identification under Requirement R1. Repeated Misoperations which occur during the same 24-hour period do not need a separate identification under Requirement R1. This is consistent with the NERC *Misoperations Report*[7] which states:

> "In order to avoid skewing the data with these repeated events, the NERC SPCS should clarify, in the next annual update of the misoperation template, that all misoperations due to the same equipment and cause within a 24 hour period be recorded as one misoperation."

The following is an example of a condition that is not a Misoperation.

> **Example R1b:** A high impedance Fault occurs within a transformer. The sudden pressure relaying detects and operates for the Fault, but the differential relaying did not operate due to the low Fault current levels. This is not a Misoperation because the Composite Protection System was not required to operate because the Fault was cleared by the sudden pressure relay.

Requirement R2

Requirement R2 ensures notification of those who have a role in identifying Misoperations, but were not accounted for within Requirement R1. In the case of multi-entity ownership, the entity that owns the BES interrupting device that operated is expected to use judgment to identify those Protection System operations that meet the definition of Misoperation under Requirement R1; however, if the entity that owns a BES interrupting device determines that its Protection System component(s) did not cause the BES interrupting device(s) operation or cannot determine whether its Protection System components caused the BES interrupting device(s) operation, it must notify the other Protection System owner(s) that share Misoperation identification responsibility when the criteria in Requirement R2 is met.

This Requirement does not preclude the Protection System owners from initially communicating and working together to determine whether a Misoperation occurred and, if so, the cause. The BES interrupting device owner is only required to officially notify the other owners when it: (1) shares the Composite Protection System ownership with other entity(ies), (2) determines that a Misoperation occurred or cannot rule out a Misoperation, and (3) determines its Protection System component(s) did not cause a Misoperation or is unsure. Officially notifying the other owners without performing a preliminary review may unnecessarily burden the other owners with compliance obligations under Requirement R3, redirect valuable resources, and add little

[7] "Misoperations Report." Reporting Multiple Occurrences. NERC Protection System Misoperations Task Force. http://www.nerc.com/docs/pc/psmtf/PSMTF_Report.pdf. April 1, 2013. pg. 37 of 40.

benefit to reliability. The BES interrupting device owner should officially notify other owners when appropriate within the established time period.

The following is an example of a notification to another Protection System owner:

> **Example R2a:** Circuit breakers A and B at the Charlie station tripped from directional comparison blocking (DCB) relaying on 03/03/2014 at 15:43 UTC during an external Fault. As discussed last week, the fault records indicate that a problem with your equipment (failure to transmit) caused the operation.

> **Example R2b:** A generator unit tripped out immediately upon synchronizing to the grid due to a Misoperation of its overcurrent protection. The Transmission Owner owns the 230 kV generator breaker that operated. The Transmission Owner, as the owner of the BES interrupting device after determining that its Protection System components did not cause the Misoperation, notified the Generator Owner of the operation. The Generator Owner investigated and determined that its Protection System components caused the Misoperation. In this example, the Generator Owner's Protection System components did cause the Misoperation. As the owner of the Protection System components that caused the Misoperation, the Generator Owner is responsible for creating and implementing the CAP.

A Composite Protection System owned by different functional entities within the same registered entity does not necessarily satisfy the notification criteria in Part 2.1.1 of Requirement R2. For example, if the same personnel within a registered entity perform the Misoperation identification for both the Generator Owner and Transmission Owner functions, then the Misoperation identification would be completely covered in Requirement R1, and therefore notification would not be required. However, if the Misoperation identification is handled by different groups, then notification would be required because the Misoperation identification would not necessarily be covered in Requirement R1.

> **Example R2c:** Line A Composite Protection System (owned by entity 1) failed to operate for an internal Fault. As a result, the zone 3 portion of Line B's Composite Protection System (owned by entity 2) and zone 3 portion of Line C's Composite Protection System (owned by entity 3) operated to clear the Fault. Entity 2 and 3 notified entity 1 of the remote zone 3 operation.

For the case where a BES interrupting device operates to provide backup protection for a non-BES Element, the entity reviewing the operation is not required to notify the other owners of Protection Systems for non-BES Elements. No notification is required because this Reliability Standard is not applicable to Protection Systems for non-BES Elements.

Requirement R3

For Requirement R3 (i.e., notification received), the entity that also owns a portion of the Composite Protection System is expected to use judgment to identify whether the Protection System operation is a Misoperation. A combination of available information from resources such as counters, relay targets, SCADA, DME, and information from the other owner(s) would typically be used to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The intent of the standard is to classify an operation as a Misoperation if the available information leads to that conclusion.

In many cases, it will not be necessary to leverage all available data to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The standard also allows an entity to classify an operation as a Misoperation if an entity is not sure. The entity may decide to identify the operation as a Misoperation to satisfy Requirement R1 and continue its investigation for a cause of the Misoperation under Requirement R4. If the continued investigative actions are inconclusive, the entity may declare no cause found and end its investigation.

The entity that is notified by the BES interrupting device owner is allotted the later of 60 calendar days from receipt of notification or 120 calendar days from the BES interrupting device operation date to determine if its portion of the Composite Protection System caused the Protection System operation. It is expected that in most cases of a jointly owned Protection System, the entity making notification would have been in communication with the other owner(s) early in the process. This means that the shorter 60 calendar days only comes into play if the notification occurs in the second half of the 120 calendar days allotted to the BES interrupting device owner in Requirement R1.

The Protection System review may be organized in a variety of ways such as in a report, database, spreadsheet, or list. The documentation may be organized in a variety of ways such as by BES interrupting device, protected Element, or Composite Protection System. The BES interrupting device owner's notification received may be documented in a variety of ways such as an email or a facsimile.

Requirement R4

The entity in Requirement R4 (i.e., cause identification), whether it is the entity that owns the BES interrupting device or an entity that was notified, is expected to use due diligence in taking investigative action(s) to determine the cause(s) of an identified Misoperation for its portion of the Composite Protection System. The SMEs developing this standard recognize there will be cases where the cause(s) of a Misoperation will not be revealed during the allotted time periods in Requirements R1 or R3; therefore, Requirement R4 provides the entity a mechanism to continue its investigative work to determine the cause(s) of the Misoperation when the cause is not known.

A combination of available information from resources such as counters, relay targets, SCADA, DME, test results, and studies would typically be used to determine the cause of the Misoperation. At least one investigative action must be performed every two full calendar quarters until the investigation is completed.

The following is an example of investigative actions taken to determine the cause of an identified Misoperation:

> **Example R4a**: A Misoperation was identified on 03/18/2014. A line outage to test the Protection System was scheduled on 03/24/2014 for 12/15/2014 as the first investigative action (i.e., beyond the next two full calendar quarters) due to summer peak conditions. The protection engineer contacted the manufacturer on 04/10/2014 (i.e., within two full calendar quarters) to obtain any known issues. The engineer reviewed manufacturer's documents on 05/27/2014. The outage schedule was confirmed on 08/29/2014 and was taken on 12/15/2014. Testing was completed on 12/16/2014 (i.e., in the second two full quarters) revealing the microprocessor relay as the cause of the Misoperation. A CAP is being developed to replace the relay.

Periodic action minimizes compliance burdens and focuses the entity's effort on determining the cause(s) of the Misoperation while providing measurable evidence. The SMEs recognize that certain planned investigative actions may require months or years to schedule and complete; therefore, the entity is only required to perform at least one investigative action every two full calendar quarters. If an investigative action is performed in the first quarter of a calendar year, the next investigative action would need to be performed by the end of the third calendar quarter. If an investigative action is performed in the last quarter of a calendar year, the next investigative action would need to be performed by the end of the second calendar quarter of the following calendar year. Investigative actions may include a variety of actions, such as reviewing DME records, performing or reviewing studies, completing relay calibration or testing, requesting manufacturer review, requesting an outage, or confirming a schedule.

The entity's investigation is complete when it identifies the cause of the Misoperation or makes a declaration that no cause was determined. The declaration is intended to be used if the entity determines that investigative actions have been exhausted or have not provided direction for identifying the Misoperation cause. Historically, approximately 12% of Misoperations are unknown or unexplainable.[8]

Although the entity only has to document its specific investigative actions taken to determine the cause(s) of an identified Misoperation, the entity should consider the benefits of formally organizing (e.g., in a report or database) its actions and findings. Well documented investigative actions and findings may be helpful in future investigations of a similar event or circumstances. A thorough report or database may contain a detailed description of the event, information gathered, investigative actions, findings, possible causes, identified causes, and conclusions. Multiple owners of a Composite Protection System might consider working together to produce a common report for their mutual benefit.

[8] NERC System Protection and Control Subcommittee. Misoperations Report. April 1, 2013: http://www.nerc.com/docs/pc/psmtf/PSMTF_Report.pdf. Figure 15: NERC Wide Misoperations by Cause Code. pg. 22 of 40.

The following are examples of a declaration where no cause was determined:

> **Example R4b**: A Misoperation was identified on 04/11/2014. All relays at station A and B functioned properly during testing on 08/26/2014 as the first investigative action. The carrier system functioned properly during testing on 08/27/2014. The carrier coupling equipment functioned properly during testing on 08/28/2014. A settings review completed on 09/03/2014 indicated the relay settings were proper. Since the equipment involved in the operation functioned properly during testing, the settings were reviewed and found to be correct, and the equipment at station A and station B is already monitored. The investigation is being closed because no cause was found.
>
> **Example R4c:** A Misoperation was identified on 03/22/2014. The protection scheme was replaced before the cause was identified. The power line carrier or PLC based protection was replaced with fiber-optic based protection with an in-service date of 04/16/2014. The new system will be monitored for recurrence of the Misoperation.

Requirement R5

Resolving the causes of Protection System Misoperations benefits BES reliability by preventing recurrence. The Corrective Action Plan (CAP) is an established tool for resolving operational problems. The NERC Glossary defines a Corrective Action Plan as, *"A list of actions and an associated timetable for implementation to remedy a specific problem."* Since a CAP addresses specific problems, the determination of what went wrong needs to be completed before developing a CAP. When the Misoperation cause is identified in Requirement R1, R3 or R4, Requirement R5 requires Protection System owner(s) to develop a CAP, or explain why corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability. The entity must develop the CAP or make a declaration why additional actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability and that no further corrective actions will be taken within 60 calendar days of first determining a cause.

The SMEs developing this standard recognize there may be multiple causes for a Misoperation. In these circumstances, the CAP would include a remedy for the identified causes. The CAP may be revised if additional causes are found; therefore, the entity has the option to create a single or multiple CAP(s) to correct multiple causes of a Misoperation. The 60 calendar day period for developing a CAP (or declaration) is established on the basis of industry experience which includes operational coordination timeframes, time to consider alternative solutions, coordination of resources, and development of a schedule.

The development of a CAP is intended to document the specific corrective actions needed to be taken to prevent Misoperation recurrence, the timetable for executing such actions, and an evaluation of the CAP's applicability to the entity's other Protection Systems including other locations. The evaluation of these other Protection Systems aims to reduce the risk and likelihood of similar Misoperations in other Protection Systems. The Protection System owner is responsible for determining the extent of its evaluation concerning other Protection Systems and locations. The evaluation may result in the owner including actions to address Protection Systems at other locations or the reasoning for not taking any action. The CAP and an evaluation of other Protection Systems including other locations must be developed to complete Requirement R5.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip due to a failed capacitor within the relay and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined capacitor replacement was not necessary.

For completion of each CAP in Examples R5a through R5d, please see Examples R6a through R6d.

> **Example R5a:** Actions: Remove the relay from service. Replace capacitor in the relay. Test the relay. Return to service or replace by 07/01/2014.
>
> Applicability to other Protection Systems: This type of impedance relay has not been experiencing problems and is systematically being replaced with microprocessor relays as Protection Systems are modernized. Therefore, it was assessed that a program for wholesale preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay does not need to be established for the system.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip due to a failed capacitor within the relay and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined the capacitors need preemptive correction action.

> **Example R5b:** Actions: Remove the relay from service. Replace capacitor in the relay. Test the relay. Return to service or replace by 07/01/2014.
>
> Applicability to other Protection Systems: This type of impedance relay is suspected to have previously tripped at other locations because of the same type of capacitor issue. Based on the evaluation, a program should be established by 12/01/2014 for wholesale preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip due to a failed capacitor within the relay and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined the capacitors need preemptive correction action.

> **Example R5c:** Actions: Remove the relay from service. Replace capacitor in the relay. Test the relay. Return to service or replace by 07/01/2014.
>
> Applicability to other Protection Systems: This type of impedance relay is suspected to have previously tripped at other locations because of the same type of capacitor issue. Based on the evaluation, the preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay should be pursued for the identified stations A through I by 04/30/2015.
>
> A plan is being developed to replace the impedance relay capacitors at stations A, B, and C by 09/01/2014. A second plan is being developed to replace the impedance relay capacitors at stations D, E, and F by 11/01/2014. The last plan will replace the impedance relay capacitors at stations G, H, and I by 02/01/2015.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was due to a version 2 firmware problem and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined the firmware needs preemptive correction action.

> **Example R5d:** Actions: Provide the manufacturer fault records. Install new firmware pending manufacturer results by 10/01/2014.
>
> Applicability to other Protection Systems: Based on the evaluation of other locations and a risk assessment, the newer firmware version 3 should be installed at all installations that are identified to be version 2. Twelve relays were identified across the system. Proposed completion date is 12/31/2014.

The following are examples of a declaration made where corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability and that no further corrective actions will be taken.

> **Example R5e:** The cause of the Misoperation was due to a non-registered entity communications provider problem.
>
> **Example R5f:** The cause of the Misoperation was due to a transmission transformer tapped industrial customer who initiated a direct transfer trip to a registered entity's transmission breaker.

In situations where a Misoperation cause emanates from a non-registered outside entity, there may be limited influence an entity can exert on an outside entity and is considered outside of an entity's control.

The following are examples of declarations made why corrective actions would not improve BES reliability.

> **Example R5g:** The investigation showed that the Misoperation occurred due to transients associated with energizing transformer ABC at Station Y. Studies show that de-sensitizing the relay to the recorded transients may cause the relay to fail to operate as intended during power system oscillations.
>
> **Example R5h:** As a result of an operation that left a portion of the power system in an electrical island condition, circuit XYZ within that island tripped, resulting in loss of load within the island. Subsequent investigation showed an overfrequency condition persisted after the formation of that island and the XYZ line protective relay operated. Since this relay was operating outside of its designed frequency range and would not be subject to this condition when line XYZ is operated normally connected to the BES, no corrective action will be taken because BES reliability would not be improved.

> **Example R5i:** During a major ice storm, four of six circuits were lost at Station A. Subsequent to the loss of these circuits, a skywire (i.e., shield wire) broke near station A on line AB (between Station A and B) resulting in a phase-phase Fault. The protection scheme utilized for both protection groups is a permissive overreaching transfer trip (POTT). The Line AB protection at Station B tripped timed for this event (i.e., Slow Trip – During Fault) even though this line had been identified as requiring high speed clearing. A weak infeed condition was created at Station A due to the loss of 4 transmission circuits resulting in the absence of a permissive signal on Line AB from Station A during this Fault. No corrective action will be taken for this Misoperation as even under N-1 conditions, there is normally enough infeed at Station A to send a proper permissive signal to station B. Any changes to the protection scheme to account for this would not improve BES reliability.

A declaration why corrective actions are beyond the entity’s control or would not improve BES reliability should include the Misoperation cause and the justification for taking no corrective action. Furthermore, a declaration that no further corrective actions will be taken is expected to be used sparingly.

Requirement R6

To achieve the stated purpose of this standard, which is to identify and correct the causes of Misoperations of Protection Systems for BES Elements, the responsible entity is required to implement a CAP that addresses the specific problem (i.e., cause(s) of the Misoperation) through completion. Protection System owners are required in the implementation of a CAP to update it when actions or timetable change, until completed. Accomplishing this objective is intended to reduce the occurrence of future Misoperations of a similar nature, thereby improving reliability and minimizing risk to the BES.

The following is an example of a completed CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip (See also, Example R5a).

> **Example R6a:** Actions: The impedance relay was removed from service on 06/02/2014 because it was applying a standing trip. A failed capacitor was found within the impedance relay and replaced. The impedance relay functioned properly during testing after the capacitor was replaced. The impedance relay was returned to service on 06/05/2014.
>
> CAP completed on 06/25/2014.

The following is an example of a completed CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip that resulted in the correction and the establishment of a program for further replacements (See also, Example R5b).

> **Example R6b:** Actions: The impedance relay was removed from service on 06/02/2014 because it was applying a standing trip. A failed capacitor was found within the impedance relay and replaced. The impedance relay functioned properly during testing after the capacitor was replaced. The impedance relay was returned to service on 06/05/2014.
>
> A program for wholesale preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay was established on 10/28/2014.
>
> CAP completed on 10/28/2014.

The following is an example of a completed CAP of corrective actions with a timetable that required updating for a failed relay and preemptive actions for similar installations (See also, Example R5c).

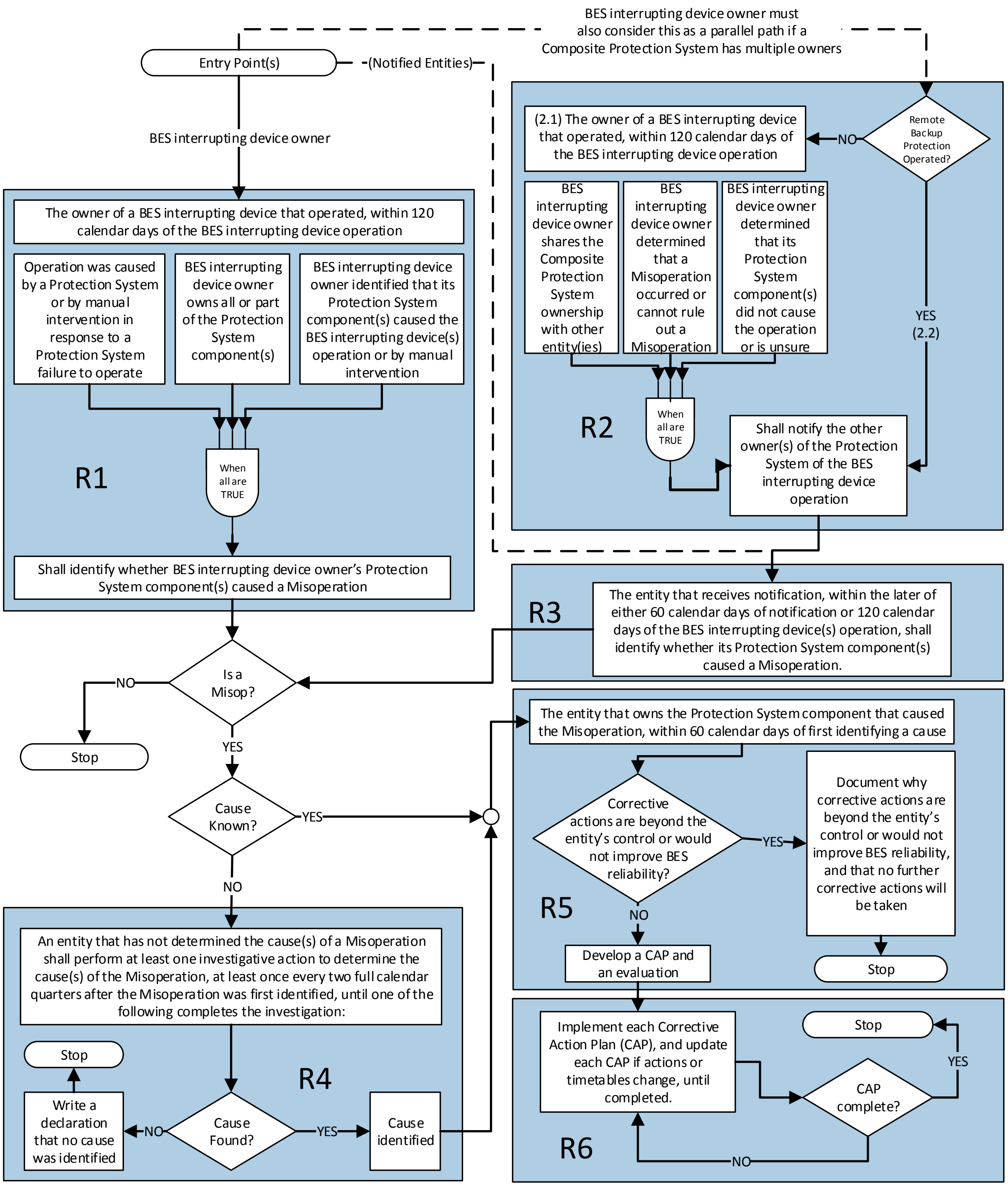
> **Example R6c:** Actions: The impedance relay was removed from service on 06/02/2014 because it was applying a standing trip. A failed capacitor was found within the impedance relay and replaced. The impedance relay functioned properly during testing after the capacitor was replaced. The impedance relay was returned to service on 06/05/2014.
>
> The impedance relay capacitor replacement was completed at stations A, B, and C on 08/16/2014. The impedance relay capacitor replacement was completed at stations D, E, and F on 10/24/2014. The impedance relay capacitor replacement for stations G, H, and I were postponed due to resource rescheduling from a scheduled 02/01/15 completion to 04/01/2015 completion. Capacitor replacement was completed on 03/09/2015 at stations G, H, and I. All stations identified in the evaluation have been completed.
>
> CAP completed on 03/09/2015.

The following is an example of a completed CAP for corrective actions with updated actions for a firmware problem and preemptive actions for similar installations. (See also, Example R5d).

> **Example R6d:** Actions: fault records were provided to the manufacturer on 06/04/2014. The manufacturer responded that the Misoperation was caused by a bug in version 2 firmware, and recommended installing version 3 firmware. Version 3 firmware was installed on 08/12/2014.
>
> Nine of the twelve relays were updated to version 3 firmware on 09/23/2014. The manufacturer provided a subsequent update which was determined to be beneficial for the remaining relays. The remaining three of twelve relays identified as having the version 2 firmware were updated to version 3.01 firmware on 11/10/2014.
>
> CAP completed on 11/10/2014.

The CAP is complete when all of the actions identified within the CAP have been completed.

Process Flow Chart: Below is a graphical representation demonstrating the relationships between Requirements:



Rationale

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes were moved to this section.

Rationale for Applicability:

Protection Systems that protect BES Elements are integral to the operation and reliability of the BES. Some functions of relays are not used as protection but as control functions or for automation; therefore, any operation of the control function portion or the automation portion of relays is excluded from this standard. See the Application Guidelines for detailed examples of non-protective functions. Special Protection Systems (SPS) and Remedial Action Schemes (RAS) are excluded in this standard because they are planned to be handled in the second phase of this project.

Rationale for R1:

This Requirement ensures that entities review those Protection System operations meeting the circumstances in all three Parts (1.1, 1.2, and 1.3) and identify any that are Misoperations. The BES interrupting device owner is assigned the responsibility to initiate the review because the owner is in the best position to be aware of the operation. Manual intervention is included as a condition that initiates a review. Occasionally, Protection System failures do not yield other Protection System operations and manual intervention is required to isolate the problematic equipment. The 120 calendar day period accounts for the sporadic volumes of Protection System operations, and provides the opportunity to identify any Misoperations which were initially missed.

Rationale for R2:

Part 2.1 ensures that the BES interrupting device owner notifies the other owners of the Composite Protection System. The phrase "owner(s) that share Misoperation identification responsibility" allows entities to notify the specific other owners that will actually review the operation to determine if a Misoperation occurred. Part 2.2 ensures that the Protection System owner(s) for which backup protection was provided receives notification, within the same 120 calendar day period as R1. This ensures other entities are notified to review their Protection System components. The expectation is that entities will communicate accordingly and when it is clear that Part 2.1, 2.2, or both are met, the entity would make the notification. It is not intended for entities to automatically and unnecessarily notify other entities before adequate detail is known.

Rationale for R3:

When an entity receives notification of a Protection System operation by the BES interrupting device owner, the other Protection System owner is allotted at least 60 calendar days to identify whether it was a Misoperation. A shorter time period is allotted on the basis that the BES interrupting device owner has already performed preliminary work, collaborated with the other owners, and that other owners generally have fewer associated Protection System components.

Rationale for R4:

If a Misoperation cause is not identified within the time period established by Requirements R1 or R3 (i.e., 120 calendar days), the Protection System component owner must demonstrate investigative actions toward identifying the cause(s). Performing at least one action every two full calendar quarters from first identifying the Misoperation encourages periodic focus on finding the cause of the Misoperation.

Rationale for R5:

A formal CAP is a proven tool for resolving and reducing the possibility of reoccurrence of operational problems. A time period of 60 calendar days is based on industry experience and operational coordination time needed for considering such things as alternative solutions, coordination of resources, or development of a schedule. When the cause of a Misoperation is identified, a CAP will generally be developed. An evaluation of the CAP's applicability to the entity's other Protection Systems including other locations helps identify similar problems, the potential for Misoperation occurrences in other Protection Systems, common mode failure, design problems, etc.

In rare cases, altering the Protection System to avoid a Misoperation recurrence may lower the reliability or performance of the BES. In those cases, a statement documenting the reasons for taking no corrective actions is essential for future reference and for justifying the absence of a CAP.

Rationale for R6:

Each CAP must accomplish all identified objectives to be complete. During the course of implementing a CAP, updates may be necessary for a variety of reasons such as new information, scheduling conflicts, or resource issues. Documenting changes or completion of CAP activities provides measurable progress and confirmation of completion.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-004-3 — Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-004-3	All	07/01/2016	06/30/2016

Reliability Standard PRC-004-4

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction**

2. **Number:** PRC-004-4

3. **Purpose:** Identify and correct the causes of Misoperations of Protection Systems for Bulk Electric System (BES) Elements.

4. **Applicability:**

4.1. Functional Entities:

4.1.1 Transmission Owner

4.1.2 Generator Owner

4.1.3 Distribution Provider

4.2. Facilities:

4.2.1 Protection Systems for BES Elements, with the following exclusions:

4.2.1.1 Non-protective functions that are embedded within a Protection System.

4.2.1.2 Protective functions intended to operate as a control function during switching.[1]

4.2.1.3 Special Protection Systems (SPS).

4.2.1.4 Remedial Action Schemes (RAS).

4.2.1.5 Protection Systems of individual dispersed power producing resources identified under Inclusion I4 of the BES definition where the Misoperations affected an aggregate nameplate rating of less than or equal to 75 MVA of BES Facilities.

4.2.2 Underfrequency load shedding (UFLS) that is intended to trip one or more BES Elements.

5. **Background**:

A key factor for BES reliability is the correct performance of Protection Systems. The monitoring of Protection System events for BES Elements, as well as identifying and correcting the causes of Misoperations, will improve Protection System performance. This Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 – Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction is a revision of PRC-004-2.1a – Analysis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection System Misoperations. The Reliability Standard PRC-003-1 – Regional Procedure for Analysis of Misoperations of Transmission and Generation Protection Systems requires Regional Entities to establish procedures for analysis of

[1] For additional information and examples, see the "Non-Protective Functions" and "Control Functions" sections in the Application Guidelines.

Misoperations. In the FERC Order No. 693, the Commission identified PRC-003-0 as a "fill-in-the-blank" standard. The Order stated that because the regional procedures had not been submitted, the Commission proposed not to approve or remand PRC-003-0. Because PRC-003-0 (now PRC-003-1) is not enforceable, there is not a mandatory requirement for Regional Entity procedures to support the Requirements of PRC-004-2.1a. This is a potential reliability gap; consequently, PRC-004-3 combines the reliability intent of the two legacy standards PRC-003-1 and PRC-004-2.1a.

This project includes revising the existing definition of Misoperation, which reads:

Misoperation

- Any failure of a Protection System element to operate within the specified time when a fault or abnormal condition occurs within a zone of protection.
- Any operation for a fault not within a zone of protection (other than operation as backup protection for a fault in an adjacent zone that is not cleared within a specified time for the protection for that zone).
- Any unintentional Protection System operation when no fault or other abnormal condition has occurred unrelated to on-site maintenance and testing activity.

In general, this definition needed more specificity and clarity. The terms "specified time" and "abnormal condition" are ambiguous. In the third bullet, more clarification is needed as to whether an unintentional Protection System operation for an atypical, yet explainable, condition is a Misoperation.

The SAR for this project also included clarifying reporting requirements. Misoperation data, as currently collected and reported, is not optimal to establish consistent metrics for measuring Protection System performance. As such, the data reporting obligation for this standard is being removed and is being developed under the NERC Rules of Procedure, Section 1600 – Request for Data or Information ("data request"). As a result of the data request, NERC will analyze the data to: develop meaningful metrics; identify trends in Protection System performance that negatively impact reliability; identify remediation techniques; and publicize lessons learned for the industry. The removal of the data collection obligation from the standard does not result in a reduction of reliability. The standard and data request have been developed in a manner such that evidence used for compliance with the standard and data request are intended to be independent of each other.

The proposed Requirements of the revised Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 meet the following objectives:

- Review all Protection System operations on the BES to identify those that are Misoperations of Protection Systems for Facilities that are part of the BES.
- Analyze Misoperations of Protection Systems for Facilities that are part of the BES to identify the cause(s).
- Develop and implement Corrective Action Plans to address the cause(s) of Misoperations of Protection Systems for Facilities that are part of the BES.

Misoperations associated with Special Protection Schemes (SPS) and Remedial Action Schemes (RAS) are not addressed in this standard due to their inherent complexities. NERC plans to handle SPS and RAS in the second phase of this project.

The Western Electric Coordinating Council (WECC) Regional Reliability Standard PRC-004-WECC-1 – Protection System and Remedial Action Scheme Misoperation relates to the reporting of Misoperations of Protection Systems and RAS for a limited set of WECC Paths. The WECC region plans to conduct work to harmonize the regional standard with this continent-wide proposed standard and the second phase of this project concerning SPS and RAS.

Undervoltage load shedding (UVLS) has not been included in this standard's applicability because Misoperations of UVLS relays are currently addressed by Reliability Standard PRC-022-1 – Under-Voltage Load Shedding Program Performance, Requirement R1.5. Underfrequency load shedding (UFLS) was added to PRC-004-3 to close a gap in reliability as Misoperations of UFLS relays are not covered by a Reliability Standard currently.

6. Effective Dates:

See the Implementation Plan for this Standard.

B. Requirements and Measures

R1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that owns a BES interrupting device that operated under the circumstances in Parts 1.1 through 1.3 shall, within 120 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation, identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*

1.1 The BES interrupting device operation was caused by a Protection System or by manual intervention in response to a Protection System failure to operate; and

1.2 The BES interrupting device owner owns all or part of the Composite Protection System; and

1.3 The BES interrupting device owner identified that its Protection System component(s) caused the BES interrupting device(s) operation or was caused by manual intervention in response to its Protection System failure to operate.

M1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it identified the Misoperation of its Protection System component(s), if any, that meet the circumstances in Requirement R1, Parts 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3 within the allotted time period. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R1, including Parts 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): reports, databases, spreadsheets, emails, facsimiles, lists, logs, records, declarations, analyses of sequence of events, relay targets, Disturbance Monitoring Equipment (DME) records, test results, or transmittals.

R2. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that owns a BES interrupting device that operated shall, within 120 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation, provide notification as described in Parts 2.1 and 2.2. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*

2.1 For a BES interrupting device operation by a Composite Protection System or by manual intervention in response to a Protection System failure to operate, notification of the operation shall be provided to the other owner(s) that share Misoperation identification responsibility for the Composite Protection System under the following circumstances:

2.1.1 The BES interrupting device owner shares the Composite Protection System ownership with any other owner; and

2.1.2 The BES interrupting device owner has determined that a Misoperation occurred or cannot rule out a Misoperation; and

2.1.3 The BES interrupting device owner has determined that its Protection System component(s) did not cause the BES interrupting device(s) operation or cannot determine whether its Protection System components caused the BES interrupting device(s) operation.

2.2 For a BES interrupting device operation by a Protection System component intended to operate as backup protection for a condition on another entity's BES Element, notification of the operation shall be provided to the other Protection System owner(s) for which that backup protection was provided.

M2. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates notification to the other owner(s), within the allotted time period for either Requirement R2, Part 2.1, including subparts 2.1.1, 2.1.2, and 2.1.3 and Requirement R2, Part 2.2. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R2, including Parts 2.1 and 2.2 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): emails, facsimiles, or transmittals.

R3. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that receives notification, pursuant to Requirement R2 shall, within the later of 60 calendar days of notification or 120 calendar days of the BES interrupting device(s) operation, identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*

M3. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation within the allotted time period. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R3 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): reports, databases, spreadsheets, emails, facsimiles, lists, logs, records, declarations, analyses of sequence of events, relay targets, DME records, test results, or transmittals.

R4. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that has not determined the cause(s) of a Misoperation, for a Misoperation identified in accordance with Requirement R1 or R3, shall perform investigative action(s) to determine the cause(s) of the Misoperation at least once every two full calendar quarters after the Misoperation was first identified, until one of the following completes the investigation: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*

- The identification of the cause(s) of the Misoperation; or
- A declaration that no cause was identified.

M4. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it performed at least one investigative action according to Requirement R4 every two full calendar quarters until a cause is identified or a declaration is made. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R4 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): reports, databases, spreadsheets, emails, facsimiles, lists, logs, records, declarations, analyses of sequence of events, relay targets, DME records, test results, or transmittals.

R5. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that owns the Protection System component(s) that caused the Misoperation shall, within 60 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation: [*Violation Risk Factor: Medium*] [*Time Horizon: Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning*]

- Develop a Corrective Action Plan (CAP) for the identified Protection System component(s), and an evaluation of the CAP's applicability to the entity's other Protection Systems including other locations; or
- Explain in a declaration why corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability, and that no further corrective actions will be taken.

M5. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it developed a CAP and an evaluation of the CAP's applicability to other Protection Systems and locations, or a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R5 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): CAP and evaluation, or declaration.

R6. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall implement each CAP developed in Requirement R5, and update each CAP if actions or timetables change, until completed. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning]*

M6. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it implemented each CAP, including updating actions or timetables. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R6 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): records that document the implementation of each CAP and the completion of actions for each CAP including revision history of each CAP. Evidence may also include work management program records, work orders, and maintenance records.

C. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" (CEA) means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Evidence Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the CEA may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall keep data or evidence to show compliance as identified below unless directed by its CEA to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation.

> The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall retain evidence of Requirements R1, R2, R3, and R4, Measures M1, M2, M3, and M4 for a minimum of 12 calendar months following the completion of each Requirement.
>
> The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall retain evidence of Requirement R5, Measure M5, including any supporting analysis per Requirements R1, R2, R3, and R4, for a minimum of 12 calendar months following completion of each CAP, completion of each evaluation, and completion of each declaration.
>
> The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall retain evidence of Requirement R6, Measure M6 for a minimum of 12 calendar months following completion of each CAP.

If a Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, or Distribution Provider is found non-compliant, it shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is complete and approved, or for the time specified above, whichever is longer.

The CEA shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None.

D. Table of Compliance Elements

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 120 calendar days and less than or equal to 150 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 150 calendar days and less than or equal to 165 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 165 calendar days and less than or equal to 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation. OR The responsible entity failed to identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R2	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 120 calendar days and less than or equal to 150 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 150 calendar days and less than or equal to 165 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 165 calendar days and less than or equal to 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation. OR The responsible entity failed to notify one or more of the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R3	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was less than or equal to 30 calendar days late.	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was greater than 30 calendar days and less than or equal to 45 calendar days late.	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was greater than 45 calendar days and less than or equal to 60 calendar days late.	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was greater than 60 calendar days late. OR The responsible entity failed to identify whether or not a Misoperation of its Protection System component(s) occurred in accordance with Requirement R3.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R4	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was less than or equal to one calendar quarter late.	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was greater than one calendar quarter and less than or equal to two calendar quarters late.	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was greater than two calendar quarters and less than or equal to three calendar quarters late.	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was more than three calendar quarters late. OR The responsible entity failed to perform investigative action(s) in accordance with Requirement R4.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R5	Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning	Medium	The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 60 calendar days and less than or equal to 70 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR (See next page)	The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 70 calendar days and less than or equal to 80 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR (See next page)	The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 80 calendar days and less than or equal to 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR (See next page)	The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR The responsible entity failed to develop a CAP or explain in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5. OR (See next page)

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R5	(Continued)		The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 60 calendar days and less than or equal to 70 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.	The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 70 calendar days and less than or equal to 80 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.	The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 80 calendar days and less than or equal to 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.	The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR The responsible entity failed to develop an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5.
R6	Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning	Medium	The responsible entity implemented, but failed to update a CAP, when actions or timetables changed, in accordance with Requirement R6.	N/A	N/A	The responsible entity failed to implement a CAP in accordance with Requirement R6.

E. Regional Variances

None.

F. Interpretations

None.

G. Associated Documents

NERC System Protection and Controls Subcommittee of the NERC Planning Committee, Assessment of Standards: PRC-003-1 – Regional Procedure for Analysis of Misoperations of Transmission and Generation Protection Systems, PRC-004-1 – Analysis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection Misoperations, PRC-016-1 – Special Protection System Misoperations, May 22, 2009.[2]

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Date	New
1	December 1, 2005	1. Changed incorrect use of certain hyphens (-) to "en dash" (–) and "em dash (—)." 2. Added "periods" to items where appropriate. Changed "Timeframe" to "Time Frame" in item D, 1.2.	01/20/06
2		Modified to address Order No. 693 Directives contained in paragraph 1469.	Revised
2	August 5, 2010	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
1a	February 17, 2011	Added Appendix 1 - Interpretation regarding applicability of standard to protection of radially connected transformers	Project 2009-17 interpretation
1a	February 17, 2011	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	

[2] http://www.nerc.com/comm/PC/System%20Protection%20and%20Control%20Subcommittee%20SPCS%20DL/PRC-003-004-016%20Report.pdf

1a	September 26, 2011	FERC Order issued approving the interpretation of R1 and R3 (FERC's Order is effective as of September 26, 2011)	
2a	September 26, 2011	Appended FERC-approved interpretation of R1 and R3 to version 2	
2.1a		Errata change: Edited R2 to add "…and generator interconnection Facility…"	Revision under Project 2010-07
2.1a	February 9, 2012	Errata change adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
2.1a	September 19, 2013	FERC Order issued approving PRC-004-2.1a (approval becomes effective November 25, 2013).	
3	August 14, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Revision under Project 2010-05.1
4	November 13, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Applicability revised in Project 2014-01 to clarify application of Requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources.
4	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order issued approving PRC-004-4.	

Guidelines and Technical Basis

Introduction

This standard addresses the reliability issues identified in the letter[3] from Gerry Cauley, NERC President and CEO, dated January 7, 2011.

> "Nearly all major system failures, excluding perhaps those caused by severe weather, have misoperations of relays or automatic controls as a factor contributing to the propagation of the failure. …Relays can misoperate, either operate when not needed or fail to operate when needed, for a number of reasons. First, the device could experience an internal failure – but this is rare. Most commonly, relays fail to operate correctly due to incorrect settings, improper coordination (of timing and set points) with other devices, ineffective maintenance and testing, or failure of communications channels or power supplies. Preventable errors can be introduced by field personnel and their supervisors or more programmatically by the organization."

The standard also addresses the findings in the *2011 Risk Assessment of Reliability Performance*[4]; July 2011.

> "…a number of multiple outage events were initiated by protection system Misoperations. These events, which go beyond their design expectations and operating procedures, represent a tangible threat to reliability. A deeper review of the root causes of dependent and common mode events, which include three or more automatic outages, is a high priority for NERC and the industry."

The *State of Reliability 2014*[5] report continued to identify Protection System Misoperations as a significant contributor to automatic transmission outage severity. The report recommended completion of the development of PRC-004-3 as part of the solution to address Protection System Misoperations.

Definitions

The Misoperation definition is based on the IEEE/PSRC Working Group I3 "Transmission Protective Relay System Performance Measuring Methodology[6]." Misoperations of a Protection System include failure to operate, slowness in operating, or operating when not required either during a Fault or non-Fault condition.

---

3 http://www.nerc.com/pa/Stand/Project%20201005%20Protection%20System%20Misoperations%20DL/20110209130708-Cauley%20letter.pdf

4 "2011 Risk Assessment of Reliability Performance." NERC. http://www.nerc.com/files/2011_RARPR_FINAL.pdf. July 2011. Pg. 3.

5 "State of Reliability 2014." NERC. http://www.nerc.com/pa/Stand/Pages/RelaibilityCoordinationProject20066.aspx. May 2014. Pg. 18 of 106.

6 "Transmission Protective Relay System Performance Measuring Methodology." Working Group I3 of Power System Relaying Committee of IEEE Power Engineering Society. 1999.

For reference, a "Protection System" is defined in the *Glossary of Terms Used in NERC Reliability Standards* ("NERC Glossary") as:

- Protective relays which respond to electrical quantities,
- Communications systems necessary for correct operation of protective functions,
- Voltage and current sensing devices providing inputs to protective relays,
- Station dc supply associated with protective functions (including station batteries, battery chargers, and non-battery-based dc supply), and
- Control circuitry associated with protective functions through the trip coil(s) of the circuit breakers or other interrupting devices.

A BES interrupting device is a BES Element, typically a circuit breaker or circuit switcher that has the capability to interrupt fault current. Although BES interrupting device mechanisms are not part of a Protection System, the standard uses the operation of a BES interrupting device by a Protection System to initiate the review for Misoperation.

The following two definitions are being proposed for inclusion in the NERC Glossary:

> **Composite Protection System** – *The total complement of Protection System(s) that function collectively to protect an Element. Backup protection provided by a different Element's Protection System(s) is excluded.*

The Composite Protection System definition is based on the principle that an Element's multiple layers of protection are intended to function collectively. This definition has been introduced in this standard and incorporated into the proposed definition of Misoperation to clarify that the overall performance of an Element's total complement of protection should be considered while evaluating an operation.

Composite Protection System – Line Example

The Composite Protection System of the Alpha-Beta line (Circuit #123) is comprised of current differential, permissive overreaching transfer trip (POTT), step distance (classic zone 1, zone 2, and zone 3), instantaneous-overcurrent, time-overcurrent, out-of-step, and overvoltage protection. The protection is housed at the Alpha and Beta substations, and includes the associated relays, communications systems, voltage and current sensing devices, DC supplies, and control circuitry.

Composite Protection System – Transformer Example

The Composite Protection System of the Alpha transformer (#2) is comprised of internal differential, overall differential, instantaneous-overcurrent, and time-overcurrent protection. The protection is housed at the Alpha substation, and includes the associated relays, voltage and current sensing devices, DC supplies, and control circuitry.

Composite Protection System – Generator Example

The Composite Protection System of the Beta generator (#3) is comprised of generator differential, overall differential, overcurrent, stator ground, reverse power, volts per hertz, loss-of-field, and undervoltage protection. The protection is housed at the Beta generating plant and at the Beta substation, and includes the associated relays, voltage and current sensing devices, DC supplies, and control circuitry.

Composite Protection System – Breaker Failure Example

Breaker failure protection provides backup protection for the breaker, and therefore is part of the breaker's Composite Protection System. Considering breaker failure protection to be part of another Element's Composite Protection System could lead to an incorrect conclusion that a breaker failure operation automatically satisfies the "Slow Trip" criteria of the Misoperation definition.

- An example of a correct operation of the breaker's Composite Protection System is when the breaker failure relaying tripped because the line relaying operated, but the breaker failed to clear the Fault. The breaker failure relaying operated because of a failed trip coil. The failed trip coil caused a Misoperation of the line's Composite Protection System.
- An example of a correct operation of the breaker's Composite Protection System is when the breaker failure relaying tripped because the line relaying operated, but the breaker failed to clear the Fault. Only the breaker failure relaying operated because of a failed breaker mechanism. This was not a Misoperation because the breaker mechanism is not part of the breaker's Composite Protection System.
- An example of an "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" is when the breaker failure relaying tripped at the same time as the line relaying during a Fault. The Misoperation was due to the breaker failure timer being set to zero.

Misoperation – *The failure a Composite Protection System to operate as intended for protection purposes. Any of the following is a Misoperation:*

1. **Failure to Trip – During Fault** – *A failure of a Composite Protection System to operate for a Fault condition for which it is designed. The failure of a Protection System component is not a Misoperation as long as the performance of the Composite Protection System is correct.*
2. ***Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault*** – *A failure of a Composite Protection System to operate for a non-Fault condition for which it is designed, such as a power swing, undervoltage, overexcitation, or loss of excitation. The failure of a Protection System component is not a Misoperation as long as the performance of the Composite Protection System is correct.*

3. ***Slow Trip – During Fault*** *– A Composite Protection System operation that is slower than required for a Fault condition if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System.*
4. ***Slow Trip – Other Than Fault*** *– A Composite Protection System operation that is slower than required for a non-Fault condition, such as a power swing, undervoltage, overexcitation, or loss of excitation, if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System.*
5. ***Unnecessary Trip – During Fault*** *– An unnecessary Composite Protection System operation for a Fault condition on another Element.*
6. ***Unnecessary Trip – Other Than Fault*** *– An unnecessary Composite Protection System operation for a non-Fault condition. A Composite Protection System operation that is caused by personnel during on-site maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning activities is not a Misoperation.*

The Misoperation definition is based on the principle that an Element's total complement of protection is intended to operate dependably and securely.

- Failure to automatically reclose after a Fault condition is not included as a Misoperation because reclosing equipment is not included within the definition of Protection System.
- A breaker failure operation does not, in itself, constitute a Misoperation.
- A remote backup operation resulting from a "Failure to Trip" or a "Slow Trip" does not, in itself, constitute a Misoperation.

This proposed definition of Misoperation provides additional clarity over the current version. A Misoperation is the failure of a Composite Protection System to operate as intended for protection purposes. The definition includes six categories which provide further differentiation of what constitutes a Misoperation. These categories are discussed in greater detail in the following sections.

Failure to Trip – During Fault

This category of Misoperation typically results in the Fault condition being cleared by remote backup Protection System operation.

Example 1a: A failure of a transformer's Composite Protection System to operate for a transformer Fault is a Misoperation.

Example 1b: A failure of a "primary" transformer relay (or any other component) to operate for a transformer Fault is not a "Failure to Trip – During Fault" Misoperation as long as another component of the transformer's Composite Protection System operated.

Example 1c: A lack of target information does not by itself constitute a Misoperation. When a high-speed pilot system does not target because a high-speed zone element trips first, it would not in and of itself be a Misoperation.

Example 1d: A failure of an overall differential relay to operate is not a "Failure to Trip – During Fault" Misoperation as long as another component such as a generator differential relay operated.

Example 1e: The Composite Protection System for a bus does not operate during a bus Fault which results in the operation of all local transformer Protection Systems connected to that bus and all remote line Protection Systems connected to that bus isolating the faulted bus from the grid. The operation of the local transformer Protection Systems and the operation of all remote line Protection Systems correctly provided backup protection. There is one “Failure to Trip – During Fault” Misoperation of the bus Composite Protection System.

In analyzing the Protection System for Misoperation, the entity must also consider whether the “Slow Trip – During Fault” category applies to the operation.

Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault

This category of Misoperation may have resulted in operator intervention. The “Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault” conditions cited in the definition are examples only, and do not constitute an all-inclusive list.

Example 2a: A failure of a generator's Composite Protection System to operate for an unintentional loss of field condition is a Misoperation.

Example 2b: A failure of an overexcitation relay (or any other component) is not a "Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault" Misoperation as long as the generator's Composite Protection System operated as intended isolating the generator from the BES.

In analyzing the Protection System for Misoperation, the entity must also consider whether the “Slow Trip – Other Than Fault” category applies to the operation.

Slow Trip – During Fault

This category of Misoperation typically results in remote backup Protection System operation before the Fault is cleared.

Example 3a: A Composite Protection System that is slower than required for a Fault condition is a Misoperation if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element’s Composite Protection System. The current differential element of a multiple function relay failed to operate for a line Fault. The same relay's time-overcurrent element operated after a time delay. However, an adjacent line also operated from a time-overcurrent element. The faulted line's time-overcurrent element was found to be set to trip too slowly.

Example 3b: A failure of a breaker's Composite Protection System to operate as quickly as intended to meet the expected critical Fault clearing time for a line Fault in conjunction with a breaker failure (i.e., stuck breaker) is a Misoperation if it resulted in an unintended operation of at least one other Element’s Composite Protection System. If a generating unit’s Composite Protection System operates due to instability caused by the slow trip of the breaker's Composite Protection System, it is not an “Unnecessary Trip – During Fault” Misoperation of the generating unit’s Composite Protection System. This event would be a “Slow Trip – During Fault” Misoperation of the breaker's Composite Protection System.

> **Example 3c:** A line connected to a generation interconnection station is protected with two independent high-speed pilot systems. The Composite Protection System for this line also includes step distance and time-overcurrent schemes in addition to the two pilot systems. During a Fault on this line, the two pilot systems fail to operate and the time-overcurrent scheme operates clearing the Fault with no generating units or other Elements tripping (i.e., no over-trips). This event is not a Misoperation.

The phrase "slower than required" means the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. It would be impractical to provide a precise tolerance in the definition that would be applicable to every type of Protection System. Rather, the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation should understand whether the speed and outcome of its Protection System operation met their objective. The intent is not to require documentation of exact Protection System operation times, but to assure consideration of relay coordination and system stability by the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation.

The phrase "resulted in the operation of any other Composite Protection System" refers to the need to ensure that relaying operates in the proper or planned sequence (i.e., the primary relaying for a faulted Element operates before the remote backup relaying for the faulted Element).

In analyzing the Protection System for Misoperation, the entity must also consider the "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" category to determine if an "unnecessary trip" applies to the Protection System operation of an Element other than the faulted Element.

If a coordination error was at the local terminal (i.e., set too slow), then it was a "Slow Trip," category of Misoperation at the local terminal.

Slow Trip – Other Than Fault

The phrase "slower than required" means the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. It would be impractical to provide a precise tolerance in the definition that would be applicable to every type of Protection System. Rather, the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation should understand whether the speed and outcome of its Protection System operation met their objective. The intent is not to require documentation of exact Protection System operation times, but to assure consideration of relay coordination and system stability by the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation.

> **Example 4:** A phase to phase fault occurred on the terminals of a generator. The generator's Composite Protection System and a transmission line's Composite Protection System both operated in response to the fault. It was found during subsequent investigation that the generator protection contained an inappropriate time delay. This caused the transmission line's correctly set overreaching zone of protection to operate. This was a Misoperation of the generator's Composite Protection System, but not of the transmission line's Composite Protection System.

The "Slow Trip – Other Than Fault" conditions cited in the definition are examples only, and do not constitute an all-inclusive list.

Unnecessary Trip – During Fault

An operation of a properly coordinated remote Protection System is not in and of itself a Misoperation if the Fault has persisted for a sufficient time to allow the correct operation of the Composite Protection System of the faulted Element to clear the Fault. A BES interrupting device failure, a "failure to trip" Misoperation, or a "slow trip" Misoperation may result in a proper remote Protection System operation.

Example 5: An operation of a transformer's Composite Protection System which trips (i.e., over-trips) for a properly cleared line Fault is a Misoperation. The Fault is cleared properly by the faulted equipment's Composite Protection System (i.e., line relaying) without the need for an external Protection System operation resulting in an unnecessary trip of the transformer protection; therefore, the transformer Protection System operation is a Misoperation.

Example 5b: An operation of a line's Composite Protection System which trips (i.e., over-trips) for a properly cleared Fault on a different line is a Misoperation. The Fault is cleared properly by the faulted line's Composite Protection System (i.e., line relaying); however, elsewhere in the system, a carrier blocking signal is not transmitted (e.g., carrier ON/OFF switch found in OFF position) resulting in the operation of a remote Protection System, single-end trip of a non-faulted line. The operation of the Protection System for the non-faulted line is an unnecessary trip during a Fault. Therefore, the non-faulted line Protection System operation is an "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" Misoperation.

Example 5c: If a coordination error was at the remote terminal (i.e., set too fast), then it was an "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" category of Misoperation at the remote terminal.

Unnecessary Trip – Other Than Fault

Unnecessary trips for non-Fault conditions include but are not limited to: power swings, overexcitation, loss of excitation, frequency excursions, and normal operations.

Example 6a: An operation of a line's Composite Protection System due to a relay failure during normal operation is a Misoperation.

Example 6b: Tripping a generator by the operation of the loss of field protection during an off-nominal frequency condition while the field is intact is a Misoperation assuming the Composite Protection System was not intended to operate under this condition.

Example 6c: An impedance line relay trip for a power swing that entered the relay's characteristic is a Misoperation if the power swing was stable and the relay operated because power swing blocking was enabled and should have prevented the trip, but did not.

Example 6d: Tripping a generator operating at normal load by the operation of a reverse power protection relay due to a relay failure is a Misoperation.

Additionally, an operation that occurs during a non-Fault condition but was initiated directly by on-site (i.e., real-time) maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning is not a Misoperation.

> **Example 6e:** A BES interrupting device operation that occurs at the remote end of a line during a non-Fault condition because a direct transfer trip was initiated by system maintenance and testing activities at the local end of the line is not a Misoperation because of the maintenance exclusion in category 6 of the definition of "Misoperation."

The "on-site" activities at one location that initiates a trip to another location are included in this exemption. This includes operation of a Protection System when energizing equipment to facilitate measurements, such as verification of current circuits as a part of performing commissioning; however, once the maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning activity associated with the Protection System is complete, the "on-site" Misoperation exclusion no longer applies, regardless of the presence of on-site personnel.

Special Cases

Protection System operations for these cases would not be a Misoperation.

> **Example 7a:** A generator Protection System operation prior to closing the unit breaker(s) is not a Misoperation provided no in-service Elements are tripped.

This type of operation is not a Misoperation because the generating unit is not synchronized and is isolated from the BES. Protection System operations that occur when the protected Element is out of service and that do not trip any in-service Elements are not Misoperations.

In some cases where zones of protection overlap, the owner(s) of Elements may decide to allow a Protection System to operate faster in order to gain better overall Protection System performance for an Element.

> **Example 7b:** The high-side of a transformer connected to a line may be within the zone of protection of the supplying line's relaying. In this case, the line relaying is planned to protect the area of the high-side of the transformer and into its primary winding. In order to provide faster protection for the line, the line relaying may be designed and set to operate without direct coordination (or coordination is waived) with local protection for Faults on the high-side of the connected transformer. Therefore, the operation of the line relaying for a high-side transformer Fault operated as intended and would not be a Misoperation.

Below are examples of conditions that would be a Misoperation.

> **Example7c:** A 230 kV shunt capacitor bank was released for operational service. The capacitor bank trips due to a settings error in the capacitor bank differential relay upon energization.

> **Example 7d:** A 230/115 kV BES transformer bank trips out when being re-energized due to an incorrect operation of the transformer differential relay for inrush after being released for operational service. Only the high-side breaker opens since the low-side breaker had not yet been closed.

Non-Protective Functions

BES interrupting device operations which are initiated by non-protective functions, such as those associated with generator controls, excitation controls, or turbine/boiler controls, static voltampere-reactive compensators (SVC), flexible ac transmission systems (FACTS), high-voltage dc (HVdc) transmission systems, circuit breaker mechanisms, or other facility control systems are not operations of a Protection System. The standard is not applicable to non-protective functions such as automation (e.g., data collection) or control functions that are embedded within a Protection System.

Control Functions

The entity must make a determination as to whether the standard is applicable to each operation of its Protection System in accordance with the provided exclusions in the standard's Applicability, see Section 4.2.1. The subject matter experts (SME) developing this standard recognize that entities use Protection Systems as part of a routine practice to control BES Elements. This standard is not applicable to operation of protective functions within a Protection System when intended for controlling a BES Element as a part of an entity's process or planned switching sequence. The following are examples of conditions to which this standard is not applicable:

> **Example 8a:** The reverse power protective function that operates to remove a generating unit from service using the entity's normal or routine process.
>
> **Example 8b:** The reverse power relay enables a permissive trip and the generator operator trips the unit.

The standard is not applicable to operation of the protective relay because its operation is intended as a control function as part of a controlled shutdown sequence for the generator. However, the standard remains applicable to operation of the reverse power relay when it operates for conditions not associated with the controlled shutdown sequence, such as a motoring condition caused by a trip of the prime mover.

The following is another example of a condition to which this standard is not applicable:

> **Example 8c:** Operation of a capacitor bank interrupting device for voltage control using functions embedded within a microprocessor based relay that is part of a Protection System.

The above are examples only, and do not constitute an all-inclusive list to which the standard is not applicable.

Extenuating Circumstances

In the event of a natural disaster or other extenuating circumstances, the December 20, 2012 Sanction Guidelines of the North American Electric Reliability Corporation, Section 2.8, Extenuating Circumstances, reads: "In unique extenuating circumstances causing or contributing to the violation, such as significant natural disasters, NERC or the Regional Entity may significantly reduce or eliminate Penalties." The Regional Entities to whom NERC has delegated

authority will consider extenuating circumstances when considering any sanctions in relation to the timelines outlined in this standard.

The volume of Protection System operations tend to be sporadic. If a high rate of Protection System operations is not sustained, utilities will have an opportunity to catch up within the 120 day period.

Requirement Time Periods

The time periods within all the Requirements are distinct and separate. The applicable entity in Requirement R1 has 120 calendar days to identify whether a BES interrupting device operation is a Misoperation. Once the applicable entity has identified a Misoperation, it has completed its performance under Requirement R1. Identified Misoperations without an identified cause become subject to Requirement R4 and any subsequent Requirements as necessary. Identified Misoperations with an identified cause become subject to Requirement R5 and any subsequent Requirements as necessary.

In Requirement R2, the applicable entity has 120 calendar days, based on the date of the BES interrupting device operation, to provide notification to the other Protection System owners that meet the circumstances in Parts 2.1 and 2.2. For the case of an applicable entity that was notified (R3), it has the later of 120 calendar days from the date of the BES interrupting device operation or 60 calendar days of notification to identify whether its Protection System components caused a Misoperation.

Once a Misoperation is identified in either Requirement R1 or R3, and the applicable entity did not identify the cause(s) of the Misoperation, the time period for performing at least one investigative action every two full calendar quarters begins. The time period(s) in Requirement R4 resets upon each period. When the applicable entity's investigative actions identify the cause of the identified Misoperation or the applicable entity declares that no cause was found, the applicable entity has completed its performance in Requirement R4.

The time period in Requirement R5 begins when the Misoperation cause is first identified. The applicable entity is allotted 60 calendar days to perform one of the two activities listed in Requirement R5 (e.g., CAP or declaration) to complete its performance under Requirement R5.

Requirement R6 time period is determined by the actions and the associated timetable to complete those actions identified in the CAP. The time periods contained in the CAP may change from time to time and the applicable entity is required to update the timetable when it changes.

Time periods provided in the Requirements are intended to provide a reasonable amount of time to perform each Requirement. Performing activities in the least amount of time facilitates prompt identification of Misoperations, notification to other Protection System owners, identification of the cause(s), correction of the cause(s), and that important information is retained that may be lost due to time.

Requirement R1

This Requirement initiates a review of each BES interrupting device operation to identify whether or not a Misoperation may have occurred. Since the BES interrupting device owner typically monitors and tracks device operations, the owner is the logical starting point for identifying Misoperations of Protection Systems for BES Elements. A review is required when (1) a BES interrupting device operates that is caused by a Protection System or by manual intervention in response to a Protection System failure to operate, (2) regardless of whether the owner owns all or part of the Protection System component(s), and (3) the owner identified its Protection System component(s) as causing the BES interrupting device operation or was caused by manual intervention in response to its Protection System failure to operate.

Since most Misoperations result in the operation of one or more BES interrupting devices, these operations initiate a review to identify any Misoperation. If an Element is manually isolated in response to a failure to operate, the manual isolation of the Element triggers a review for Misoperation.

> **Example R1a:** The failure of a loss of field relay on a generating unit where an operator takes action to isolate the unit.

Manual intervention may indicate a Misoperation has occurred, thus requiring the initiation of an investigation by the BES interrupting device owner.

For the case where a BES interrupting device did not operate and remote clearing occurs due to the failure of a Composite Protection System to operate, the BES interrupting device owner would still review the operation under Requirement R1. However, if the BES interrupting device owner determines that its Protection System component operated as backup protection for a condition on another entity's BES Element, the owner would provide notification of the operation to the other Protection System owner(s) under Requirement R2, Part 2.2.

Protection Systems are made of many components. These components may be owned by different entities. For example, a Generator Owner may own a current transformer that sends information to a Transmission Owner's differential relay. All of these components and many more are part of a Protection System. It is expected that all of the owners will communicate with each other, sharing information freely, so that Protection System operations can be analyzed, Misoperations identified, and corrective actions taken.

Each entity is expected to use judgment to identify those Protection System operations that meet the definition of Misoperation regardless of the level of ownership. A combination of available information from resources such as counters, relay targets, Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) systems, or DME would typically be used to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The intent of the standard is to classify an operation as a Misoperation if the available information leads to that conclusion. In many cases, it will not be necessary to leverage all available data to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The standard also allows an entity to classify an operation as a Misoperation if entity is not sure. The entity may decide to identify the operation as a Misoperation to satisfy Requirement R1 and continue its investigation for a cause of the Misoperation under Requirement R4. If the continued investigative actions are inconclusive, the entity may declare no cause found and end its investigation. The entity is allotted 120 calendar days from the date of its BES interrupting device operation to identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation.

The Protection System operation may be documented in a variety of ways such as in a report, database, spreadsheet, or list. The documentation may be organized in a variety of ways such as by BES interrupting device, protected Element, or Composite Protection System.

Repeated operations which occur during the same automatic reclosing sequence do not need a separate identification under Requirement R1. Repeated Misoperations which occur during the same 24-hour period do not need a separate identification under Requirement R1. This is consistent with the NERC *Misoperations Report*[7] which states:

> "In order to avoid skewing the data with these repeated events, the NERC SPCS should clarify, in the next annual update of the misoperation template, that all misoperations due to the same equipment and cause within a 24 hour period be recorded as one misoperation."

The following is an example of a condition that is not a Misoperation.

> **Example R1b:** A high impedance Fault occurs within a transformer. The sudden pressure relaying detects and operates for the Fault, but the differential relaying did not operate due to the low Fault current levels. This is not a Misoperation because the Composite Protection System was not required to operate because the Fault was cleared by the sudden pressure relay.

Requirement R2

Requirement R2 ensures notification of those who have a role in identifying Misoperations, but were not accounted for within Requirement R1. In the case of multi-entity ownership, the entity that owns the BES interrupting device that operated is expected to use judgment to identify those Protection System operations that meet the definition of Misoperation under Requirement R1; however, if the entity that owns a BES interrupting device determines that its Protection System component(s) did not cause the BES interrupting device(s) operation or cannot determine whether its Protection System components caused the BES interrupting device(s) operation, it must notify the other Protection System owner(s) that share Misoperation identification responsibility when the criteria in Requirement R2 is met.

This Requirement does not preclude the Protection System owners from initially communicating and working together to determine whether a Misoperation occurred and, if so, the cause. The BES interrupting device owner is only required to officially notify the other owners when it: (1) shares the Composite Protection System ownership with other entity(ies), (2) determines that a Misoperation occurred or cannot rule out a Misoperation, and (3) determines its Protection System component(s) did not cause a Misoperation or is unsure. Officially notifying the other owners without performing a preliminary review may unnecessarily burden the other owners with compliance obligations under Requirement R3, redirect valuable resources, and add little benefit to reliability. The BES interrupting device owner should officially notify other owners when appropriate within the established time period.

[7] "Misoperations Report." Reporting Multiple Occurrences. NERC Protection System Misoperations Task Force. http://www.nerc.com/docs/pc/psmtf/PSMTF_Report.pdf. April 1, 2013. pg. 37 of 40.

The following is an example of a notification to another Protection System owner:

> **Example R2a:** Circuit breakers A and B at the Charlie station tripped from directional comparison blocking (DCB) relaying on 03/03/2014 at 15:43 UTC during an external Fault. As discussed last week, the fault records indicate that a problem with your equipment (failure to transmit) caused the operation.
>
> **Example R2b:** A generator unit tripped out immediately upon synchronizing to the grid due to a Misoperation of its overcurrent protection. The Transmission Owner owns the 230 kV generator breaker that operated. The Transmission Owner, as the owner of the BES interrupting device after determining that its Protection System components did not cause the Misoperation, notified the Generator Owner of the operation. The Generator Owner investigated and determined that its Protection System components caused the Misoperation. In this example, the Generator Owner's Protection System components did cause the Misoperation. As the owner of the Protection System components that caused the Misoperation, the Generator Owner is responsible for creating and implementing the CAP.

A Composite Protection System owned by different functional entities within the same registered entity does not necessarily satisfy the notification criteria in Part 2.1.1 of Requirement R2. For example, if the same personnel within a registered entity perform the Misoperation identification for both the Generator Owner and Transmission Owner functions, then the Misoperation identification would be completely covered in Requirement R1, and therefore notification would not be required. However, if the Misoperation identification is handled by different groups, then notification would be required because the Misoperation identification would not necessarily be covered in Requirement R1.

> **Example R2c:** Line A Composite Protection System (owned by entity 1) failed to operate for an internal Fault. As a result, the zone 3 portion of Line B's Composite Protection System (owned by entity 2) and zone 3 portion of Line C's Composite Protection System (owned by entity 3) operated to clear the Fault. Entity 2 and 3 notified entity 1 of the remote zone 3 operation.

For the case where a BES interrupting device operates to provide backup protection for a non-BES Element, the entity reviewing the operation is not required to notify the other owners of Protection Systems for non-BES Elements. No notification is required because this Reliability Standard is not applicable to Protection Systems for non-BES Elements.

Requirement R3

For Requirement R3 (i.e., notification received), the entity that also owns a portion of the Composite Protection System is expected to use judgment to identify whether the Protection System operation is a Misoperation. A combination of available information from resources such as counters, relay targets, SCADA, DME, and information from the other owner(s) would typically be used to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The intent of the standard is to classify an operation as a Misoperation if the available information leads to that conclusion. In many cases, it will not be necessary to leverage all available data to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The standard also allows an entity to classify an operation as a Misoperation if an entity is not sure. The entity may decide to identify the operation as a

Misoperation to satisfy Requirement R1 and continue its investigation for a cause of the Misoperation under Requirement R4. If the continued investigative actions are inconclusive, the entity may declare no cause found and end its investigation.

The entity that is notified by the BES interrupting device owner is allotted the later of 60 calendar days from receipt of notification or 120 calendar days from the BES interrupting device operation date to determine if its portion of the Composite Protection System caused the Protection System operation. It is expected that in most cases of a jointly owned Protection System, the entity making notification would have been in communication with the other owner(s) early in the process. This means that the shorter 60 calendar days only comes into play if the notification occurs in the second half of the 120 calendar days allotted to the BES interrupting device owner in Requirement R1.

The Protection System review may be organized in a variety of ways such as in a report, database, spreadsheet, or list. The documentation may be organized in a variety of ways such as by BES interrupting device, protected Element, or Composite Protection System. The BES interrupting device owner's notification received may be documented in a variety of ways such as an email or a facsimile.

Requirement R4

The entity in Requirement R4 (i.e., cause identification), whether it is the entity that owns the BES interrupting device or an entity that was notified, is expected to use due diligence in taking investigative action(s) to determine the cause(s) of an identified Misoperation for its portion of the Composite Protection System. The SMEs developing this standard recognize there will be cases where the cause(s) of a Misoperation will not be revealed during the allotted time periods in Requirements R1 or R3; therefore, Requirement R4 provides the entity a mechanism to continue its investigative work to determine the cause(s) of the Misoperation when the cause is not known.

A combination of available information from resources such as counters, relay targets, SCADA, DME, test results, and studies would typically be used to determine the cause of the Misoperation. At least one investigative action must be performed every two full calendar quarters until the investigation is completed.

The following is an example of investigative actions taken to determine the cause of an identified Misoperation:

> **Example R4a**: A Misoperation was identified on 03/18/2014. A line outage to test the Protection System was scheduled on 03/24/2014 for 12/15/2014 as the first investigative action (i.e., beyond the next two full calendar quarters) due to summer peak conditions. The protection engineer contacted the manufacturer on 04/10/2014 (i.e., within two full calendar quarters) to obtain any known issues. The engineer reviewed manufacturer's documents on 05/27/2014. The outage schedule was confirmed on 08/29/2014 and was taken on 12/15/2014. Testing was completed on 12/16/2014 (i.e., in the second two full quarters) revealing the microprocessor relay as the cause of the Misoperation. A CAP is being developed to replace the relay.

Periodic action minimizes compliance burdens and focuses the entity's effort on determining the cause(s) of the Misoperation while providing measurable evidence. The SMEs recognize that certain planned investigative actions may require months or years to schedule and complete; therefore, the entity is only required to perform at least one investigative action every two full calendar quarters. If an investigative action is performed in the first quarter of a calendar year, the next investigative action would need to be performed by the end of the third calendar quarter. If an investigative action is performed in the last quarter of a calendar year, the next investigative action would need to be performed by the end of the second calendar quarter of the following calendar year. Investigative actions may include a variety of actions, such as reviewing DME records, performing or reviewing studies, completing relay calibration or testing, requesting manufacturer review, requesting an outage, or confirming a schedule.

The entity's investigation is complete when it identifies the cause of the Misoperation or makes a declaration that no cause was determined. The declaration is intended to be used if the entity determines that investigative actions have been exhausted or have not provided direction for identifying the Misoperation cause. Historically, approximately 12% of Misoperations are unknown or unexplainable.[8]

Although the entity only has to document its specific investigative actions taken to determine the cause(s) of an identified Misoperation, the entity should consider the benefits of formally organizing (e.g., in a report or database) its actions and findings. Well documented investigative actions and findings may be helpful in future investigations of a similar event or circumstances. A thorough report or database may contain a detailed description of the event, information gathered, investigative actions, findings, possible causes, identified causes, and conclusions. Multiple owners of a Composite Protection System might consider working together to produce a common report for their mutual benefit.

The following are examples of a declaration where no cause was determined:

> **Example R4b**: A Misoperation was identified on 04/11/2014. All relays at station A and B functioned properly during testing on 08/26/2014 as the first investigative action. The carrier system functioned properly during testing on 08/27/2014. The carrier coupling equipment functioned properly during testing on 08/28/2014. A settings review completed on 09/03/2014 indicated the relay settings were proper. Since the equipment involved in the operation functioned properly during testing, the settings were reviewed and found to be correct, and the equipment at station A and station B is already monitored. The investigation is being closed because no cause was found.

> **Example R4c:** A Misoperation was identified on 03/22/2014. The protection scheme was replaced before the cause was identified. The power line carrier or PLC based protection was replaced with fiber-optic based protection with an in-service date of 04/16/2014. The new system will be monitored for recurrence of the Misoperation.

Requirement R5

Resolving the causes of Protection System Misoperations benefits BES reliability by preventing recurrence. The Corrective Action Plan (CAP) is an established tool for resolving operational problems. The NERC Glossary defines a Corrective Action Plan as, *"A list of actions and an*

[8] NERC System Protection and Control Subcommittee. Misoperations Report. April 1, 2013: http://www.nerc.com/docs/pc/psmtf/PSMTF_Report.pdf. Figure 15: NERC Wide Misoperations by Cause Code. pg. 22 of 40.

associated timetable for implementation to remedy a specific problem." Since a CAP addresses specific problems, the determination of what went wrong needs to be completed before developing a CAP. When the Misoperation cause is identified in Requirement R1, R3 or R4, Requirement R5 requires Protection System owner(s) to develop a CAP, or explain why corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability. The entity must develop the CAP or make a declaration why additional actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability and that no further corrective actions will be taken within 60 calendar days of first determining a cause.

The SMEs developing this standard recognize there may be multiple causes for a Misoperation. In these circumstances, the CAP would include a remedy for the identified causes. The CAP may be revised if additional causes are found; therefore, the entity has the option to create a single or multiple CAP(s) to correct multiple causes of a Misoperation. The 60 calendar day period for developing a CAP (or declaration) is established on the basis of industry experience which includes operational coordination timeframes, time to consider alternative solutions, coordination of resources, and development of a schedule.

The development of a CAP is intended to document the specific corrective actions needed to be taken to prevent Misoperation recurrence, the timetable for executing such actions, and an evaluation of the CAP's applicability to the entity's other Protection Systems including other locations. The evaluation of these other Protection Systems aims to reduce the risk and likelihood of similar Misoperations in other Protection Systems. The Protection System owner is responsible for determining the extent of its evaluation concerning other Protection Systems and locations. The evaluation may result in the owner including actions to address Protection Systems at other locations or the reasoning for not taking any action. The CAP and an evaluation of other Protection Systems including other locations must be developed to complete Requirement R5.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip due to a failed capacitor within the relay and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined capacitor replacement was not necessary.

For completion of each CAP in Examples R5a through R5d, please see Examples R6a through R6d.

> **Example R5a:** Actions: Remove the relay from service. Replace capacitor in the relay. Test the relay. Return to service or replace by 07/01/2014.
>
> Applicability to other Protection Systems: This type of impedance relay has not been experiencing problems and is systematically being replaced with microprocessor relays as Protection Systems are modernized. Therefore, it was assessed that a program for wholesale preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay does not need to be established for the system.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip due to a failed capacitor within the relay and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined the capacitors need preemptive correction action.

> **Example R5b:** Actions: Remove the relay from service. Replace capacitor in the relay. Test the relay. Return to service or replace by 07/01/2014.
>
> Applicability to other Protection Systems: This type of impedance relay is suspected to have previously tripped at other locations because of the same type of capacitor issue. Based on the evaluation, a program should be established by 12/01/2014 for wholesale preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip due to a failed capacitor within the relay and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined the capacitors need preemptive correction action.

> **Example R5c:** Actions: Remove the relay from service. Replace capacitor in the relay. Test the relay. Return to service or replace by 07/01/2014.
>
> Applicability to other Protection Systems: This type of impedance relay is suspected to have previously tripped at other locations because of the same type of capacitor issue. Based on the evaluation, the preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay should be pursued for the identified stations A through I by 04/30/2015.
>
> A plan is being developed to replace the impedance relay capacitors at stations A, B, and C by 09/01/2014. A second plan is being developed to replace the impedance relay capacitors at stations D, E, and F by 11/01/2014. The last plan will replace the impedance relay capacitors at stations G, H, and I by 02/01/2015.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was due to a version 2 firmware problem and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined the firmware needs preemptive correction action.

> **Example R5d:** Actions: Provide the manufacturer fault records. Install new firmware pending manufacturer results by 10/01/2014.
>
> Applicability to other Protection Systems: Based on the evaluation of other locations and a risk assessment, the newer firmware version 3 should be installed at all installations that are identified to be version 2. Twelve relays were identified across the system. Proposed completion date is 12/31/2014.

The following are examples of a declaration made where corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability and that no further corrective actions will be taken.

> **Example R5e:** The cause of the Misoperation was due to a non-registered entity communications provider problem.
>
> **Example R5f:** The cause of the Misoperation was due to a transmission transformer tapped industrial customer who initiated a direct transfer trip to a registered entity's transmission breaker.

In situations where a Misoperation cause emanates from a non-registered outside entity, there may be limited influence an entity can exert on an outside entity and is considered outside of an entity's control.

The following are examples of declarations made why corrective actions would not improve BES reliability.

> **Example R5g:** The investigation showed that the Misoperation occurred due to transients associated with energizing transformer ABC at Station Y. Studies show that de-sensitizing the relay to the recorded transients may cause the relay to fail to operate as intended during power system oscillations.
>
> **Example R5h:** As a result of an operation that left a portion of the power system in an electrical island condition, circuit XYZ within that island tripped, resulting in loss of load within the island. Subsequent investigation showed an overfrequency condition persisted after the formation of that island and the XYZ line protective relay operated. Since this relay was operating outside of its designed frequency range and would not be subject to this condition when line XYZ is operated normally connected to the BES, no corrective action will be taken because BES reliability would not be improved.
>
> **Example R5i:** During a major ice storm, four of six circuits were lost at Station A. Subsequent to the loss of these circuits, a skywire (i.e., shield wire) broke near station A on line AB (between Station A and B) resulting in a phase-phase Fault. The protection scheme utilized for both protection groups is a permissive overreaching transfer trip (POTT). The Line AB protection at Station B tripped timed for this event (i.e., Slow Trip – During Fault) even though this line had been identified as requiring high speed clearing. A weak infeed condition was created at Station A due to the loss of 4 transmission circuits resulting in the absence of a permissive signal on Line AB from Station A during this Fault. No corrective action will be taken for this Misoperation as even under N-1 conditions, there is normally enough infeed at Station A to send a proper permissive signal to station B. Any changes to the protection scheme to account for this would not improve BES reliability.

A declaration why corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability should include the Misoperation cause and the justification for taking no corrective action. Furthermore, a declaration that no further corrective actions will be taken is expected to be used sparingly.

Requirement R6

To achieve the stated purpose of this standard, which is to identify and correct the causes of Misoperations of Protection Systems for BES Elements, the responsible entity is required to implement a CAP that addresses the specific problem (i.e., cause(s) of the Misoperation) through completion. Protection System owners are required in the implementation of a CAP to update it when actions or timetable change, until completed. Accomplishing this objective is intended to reduce the occurrence of future Misoperations of a similar nature, thereby improving reliability and minimizing risk to the BES.

The following is an example of a completed CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip (See also, Example R5a).

> **Example R6a:** Actions: The impedance relay was removed from service on 06/02/2014 because it was applying a standing trip. A failed capacitor was found within the impedance relay and replaced. The impedance relay functioned properly during testing after the capacitor was replaced. The impedance relay was returned to service on 06/05/2014.
>
> CAP completed on 06/25/2014.

The following is an example of a completed CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip that resulted in the correction and the establishment of a program for further replacements (See also, Example R5b).

> **Example R6b:** Actions: The impedance relay was removed from service on 06/02/2014 because it was applying a standing trip. A failed capacitor was found within the impedance relay and replaced. The impedance relay functioned properly during testing after the capacitor was replaced. The impedance relay was returned to service on 06/05/2014.
>
> A program for wholesale preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay was established on 10/28/2014.
>
> CAP completed on 10/28/2014.

The following is an example of a completed CAP of corrective actions with a timetable that required updating for a failed relay and preemptive actions for similar installations (See also, Example R5c).

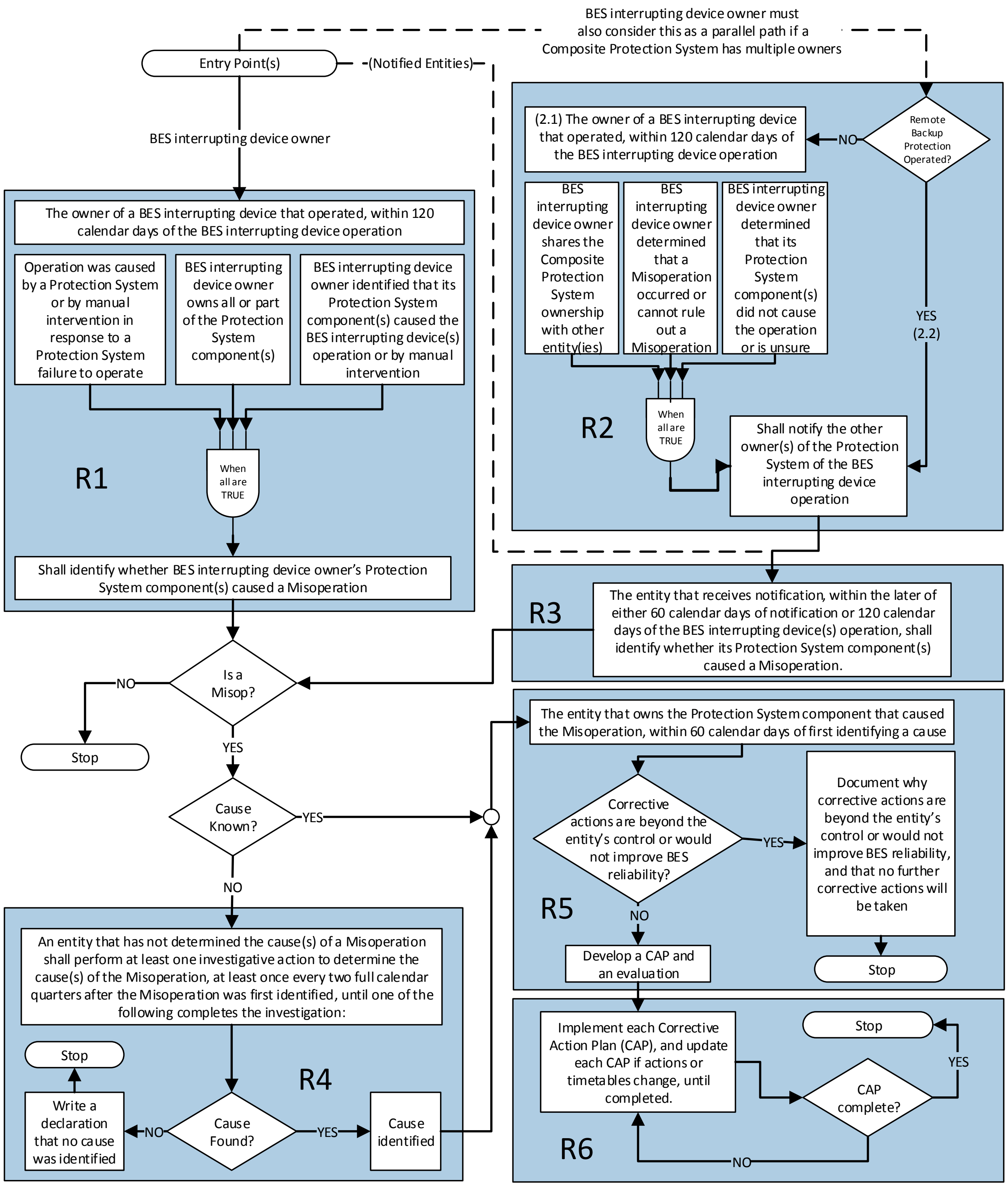
> **Example R6c:** Actions: The impedance relay was removed from service on 06/02/2014 because it was applying a standing trip. A failed capacitor was found within the impedance relay and replaced. The impedance relay functioned properly during testing after the capacitor was replaced. The impedance relay was returned to service on 06/05/2014.
>
> The impedance relay capacitor replacement was completed at stations A, B, and C on 08/16/2014. The impedance relay capacitor replacement was completed at stations D, E, and F on 10/24/2014. The impedance relay capacitor replacement for stations G, H, and I were postponed due to resource rescheduling from a scheduled 02/01/15 completion to 04/01/2015 completion. Capacitor replacement was completed on 03/09/2015 at stations G, H, and I. All stations identified in the evaluation have been completed.
>
> CAP completed on 03/09/2015.

The following is an example of a completed CAP for corrective actions with updated actions for a firmware problem and preemptive actions for similar installations. (See also, Example R5d).

> **Example R6d:** Actions: fault records were provided to the manufacturer on 06/04/2014. The manufacturer responded that the Misoperation was caused by a bug in version 2 firmware, and recommended installing version 3 firmware. Version 3 firmware was installed on 08/12/2014.
>
> Nine of the twelve relays were updated to version 3 firmware on 09/23/2014. The manufacturer provided a subsequent update which was determined to be beneficial for the remaining relays. The remaining three of twelve relays identified as having the version 2 firmware were updated to version 3.01 firmware on 11/10/2014.
>
> CAP completed on 11/10/2014.

The CAP is complete when all of the actions identified within the CAP have been completed.

Process Flow Chart: Below is a graphical representation demonstrating the relationships between Requirements:



Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for Introduction:
The only revisions made to this version of PRC-004 are revisions to section 4.2 Facilities to clarify applicability of the Requirements of the standard to generator Facilities. These applicability revisions are intended to clarify and provide for consistent application of the Requirements to BES generator Facilities included in the BES through Inclusion I4 – Dispersed Power Producing Resources.

Rationale for Applicability:
Protection Systems that protect BES Elements are integral to the operation and reliability of the BES. Some functions of relays are not used as protection but as control functions or for automation; therefore, any operation of the control function portion or the automation portion of relays is excluded from this standard. See the Application Guidelines for detailed examples of non-protective functions. Special Protection Systems (SPS) and Remedial Action Schemes (RAS) are excluded in this standard because they are planned to be handled in the second phase of Project 2010-05.1 .

Misoperations occurring on the Protection Systems of individual generation resources identified under Inclusion I4 of the BES definition do not have a material impact on BES reliability when considered individually; however, the aggregate capability of these resources may impact BES reliability if a number of Protection Systems on the individual power producing resources incorrectly operated or failed to operate as designed during a system event. To recognize the potential for the Protection Systems of individual power producing resources to affect the reliability of the BES, 4.2.1.5 of the Facilities section reflects the threshold consistent with the revised BES definition. See FERC Order Approving Revised Definition, P 20, Docket No. RD14-2-000. The intent of 4.2.1.5 of the Facilities section is to exclude from the standard requirements these Protection Systems for “common- mode failure” type scenarios affecting less than or equal to 75 MVA aggregated nameplate generating capability at these dispersed generating facilities.

Rationale for R1:

This Requirement ensures that entities review those Protection System operations meeting the circumstances in all three Parts (1.1, 1.2, and 1.3) and identify any that are Misoperations. The BES interrupting device owner is assigned the responsibility to initiate the review because the owner is in the best position to be aware of the operation. Manual intervention is included as a condition that initiates a review. Occasionally, Protection System failures do not yield other Protection System operations and manual intervention is required to isolate the problematic equipment. The 120 calendar day period accounts for the sporadic volumes of Protection

System operations, and provides the opportunity to identify any Misoperations which were initially missed.

Rationale for R2:

Part 2.1 ensures that the BES interrupting device owner notifies the other owners of the Composite Protection System. The phrase “owner(s) that share Misoperation identification responsibility” allows entities to notify the specific other owners that will actually review the operation to determine if a Misoperation occurred. Part 2.2 ensures that the Protection System owner(s) for which backup protection was provided receives notification, within the same 120 calendar day period as R1. This ensures other entities are notified to review their Protection System components. The expectation is that entities will communicate accordingly and when it is clear that Part 2.1, 2.2, or both are met, the entity would make the notification. It is not intended for entities to automatically and unnecessarily notify other entities before adequate detail is known.

Rationale for R3:

When an entity receives notification of a Protection System operation by the BES interrupting device owner, the other Protection System owner is allotted at least 60 calendar days to identify whether it was a Misoperation. A shorter time period is allotted on the basis that the BES interrupting device owner has already performed preliminary work, collaborated with the other owners, and that other owners generally have fewer associated Protection System components.

* FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY *

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-004-4 — Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-004-4	All	07/01/2016	

Reliability Standard PRC-005-2(i)

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Protection System Maintenance**

2. **Number:** PRC-005-2(i)

3. **Purpose:** To document and implement programs for the maintenance of all Protection Systems affecting the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES) so that these Protection Systems are kept in working order.

4. **Applicability:**

4.1. Functional Entities:

4.1.1 Transmission Owner

4.1.2 Generator Owner

4.1.3 Distribution Provider

4.2. Facilities:

4.2.1 Protection Systems that are installed for the purpose of detecting Faults on BES Elements (lines, buses, transformers, etc.)

4.2.2 Protection Systems used for underfrequency load-shedding systems installed per ERO underfrequency load-shedding requirements.

4.2.3 Protection Systems used for undervoltage load-shedding systems installed to prevent system voltage collapse or voltage instability for BES reliability.

4.2.4 Protection Systems installed as a Special Protection System (SPS) for BES reliability.

4.2.5 Protection Systems for the following BES generator Facilities for generators not identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:

4.2.5.1 Protection Systems that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or auxiliary tripping relays.

4.2.5.2 Protection Systems for generator step-up transformers for generators that are part of the BES.

4.2.5.3 Protection Systems for station service or excitation transformers connected to the generator bus of generators which are part of the BES, that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or tripping auxiliary relays.

4.2.6 Protection Systems for the following BES generator Facilities for dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:

4.2.6.1 Protection Systems for Facilities used in aggregating dispersed BES generation from the point where those resources aggregate to greater than 75 MVA to a common point of connection at 100 kV or above.

5. **Effective Date:** See Implementation Plan.

B. Requirements

R1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall establish a Protection System Maintenance Program (PSMP) for its Protection Systems identified in Section 4.2. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

The PSMP shall:

1.1. Identify which maintenance method (time-based, performance-based per PRC-005 Attachment A, or a combination) is used to address each Protection System Component Type. All batteries associated with the station dc supply Component Type of a Protection System shall be included in a time-based program as described in Table 1-4 and Table 3.

1.2. Include the applicable monitored Component attributes applied to each Protection System Component Type consistent with the maintenance intervals specified in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, and Table 3 where monitoring is used to extend the maintenance intervals beyond those specified for unmonitored Protection System Components.

R2. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP shall follow the procedure established in PRC-005 Attachment A to establish and maintain its performance-based intervals. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

R3. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes time-based maintenance program(s) shall maintain its Protection System Components that are included within the time-based maintenance program in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, and Table 3. *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

R4. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes performance-based maintenance program(s) in accordance with Requirement R2 shall implement and follow its PSMP for its Protection System Components that are included within the performance-based program(s). *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

R5. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall demonstrate efforts to correct identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

C. Measures

M1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner and Distribution Provider shall have a documented Protection System Maintenance Program in accordance with Requirement R1.

For each Protection System Component Type, the documentation shall include the type of maintenance method applied (time-based, performance-based, or a combination of these maintenance methods), and shall include all batteries associated with the station dc supply Component Types in a time-based program as described in Table 1-4 and Table 3. (Part 1.1)

For Component Types that use monitoring to extend the maintenance intervals, the responsible entity(s) shall have evidence for each protection Component Type (such as manufacturer's specifications or engineering drawings) of the appropriate monitored Component attributes as specified in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, and Table 3. (Part 1.2)

M2. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that uses performance-based maintenance intervals shall have evidence that its current performance-based maintenance program(s) is in accordance with Requirement R2, which may include but is not limited to Component lists, dated maintenance records, and dated analysis records and results.

M3. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes time-based maintenance program(s) shall have evidence that it has maintained its Protection System Components included within its time-based program in accordance with Requirement R3. The evidence may include but is not limited to dated maintenance records, dated maintenance summaries, dated check-off lists, dated inspection records, or dated work orders.

M4. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes performance-based maintenance intervals in accordance with Requirement R2 shall have evidence that it has implemented the Protection System Maintenance Program for the Protection System Components included in its performance-based program in accordance with Requirement R4. The evidence may include but is not limited to dated maintenance records, dated maintenance summaries, dated check-off lists, dated inspection records, or dated work orders.

M5. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have evidence that it has undertaken efforts to correct identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues in accordance with Requirement R5. The evidence may include but is not limited to work orders, replacement Component orders, invoices, project schedules with completed milestones, return material authorizations (RMAs) or purchase orders.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, “Compliance Enforcement Authority” means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards

1.2. Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Processes:

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.3. Evidence Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each keep data or evidence to show compliance as identified below unless directed by its

Compliance Enforcement Authority to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation.

For Requirement R1, the Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each keep its current dated Protection System Maintenance Program, as well as any superseded versions since the preceding compliance audit, including the documentation that specifies the type of maintenance program applied for each Protection System Component Type.

For Requirement R2, Requirement R3, Requirement R4, and Requirement R5, the Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each keep documentation of the two most recent performances of each distinct maintenance activity for the Protection System Component, or all performances of each distinct maintenance activity for the Protection System Component since the previous scheduled audit date, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None.

Violation Severity Levels

Requirement Number	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	The responsible entity's PSMP failed to specify whether one Component Type is being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both. (Part 1.1)	The responsible entity's PSMP failed to specify whether two Component Types are being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both. (Part 1.1)	The responsible entity's PSMP failed to include the applicable monitoring attributes applied to each Protection System Component Type consistent with the maintenance intervals specified in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, and Table 3 where monitoring is used to extend the maintenance intervals beyond those specified for unmonitored Protection System Components. (Part 1.2).	The responsible entity failed to establish a PSMP. OR The responsible entity failed to specify whether three or more Component Types are being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both. (Part 1.1). OR The responsible entity's PSMP failed to include applicable station batteries in a time-based program. (Part 1.1)
R2	The responsible entity uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP but failed to reduce Countable Events to no more than 4% within three years.	NA	The responsible entity uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP but failed to reduce Countable Events to no more than 4% within four years.	The responsible entity uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP but: 1) Failed to establish the technical justification described within Requirement R2 for the initial use of the performance-based PSMP OR 2) Failed to reduce Countable Events to no more than 4% within five years OR 3) Maintained a Segment with less than 60 Components OR 4) Failed to:

Requirement Number	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
				• Annually update the list of Components, OR • Annually perform maintenance on the greater of 5% of the segment population or 3 Components, OR • Annually analyze the program activities and results for each Segment.
R3	For Protection System Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain 5% or less of the total Components included within a specific Protection System Component Type, in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, and Table 3.	For Protection System Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 5% but 10% or less of the total Components included within a specific Protection System Component Type, in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, and Table 3.	For Protection System Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 10% but 15% or less of the total Components included within a specific Protection System Component Type, in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, and Table 3.	For Protection System Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 15% of the total Components included within a specific Protection System Component Type, in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, and Table 3.
R4	For Protection System Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain 5% or less of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific Protection System Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.	For Protection System Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 5% but 10% or less of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific Protection System Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.	For Protection System Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 10% but 15% or less of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific Protection System Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.	For Protection System Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 15% of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific Protection System Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.

Requirement Number	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R5	The responsible entity failed to undertake efforts to correct 5 or fewer identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.	The responsible entity failed to undertake efforts to correct greater than 5, but less than or equal to 10 identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.	The responsible entity failed to undertake efforts to correct greater than 10, but less than or equal to 15 identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.	The responsible entity failed to undertake efforts to correct greater than 15 identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.

E. Regional Variances

None

F. Supplemental Reference Document

The following documents present a detailed discussion about determination of maintenance intervals and other useful information regarding establishment of a maintenance program.

1. PRC-005-2 Protection System Maintenance Supplementary Reference and FAQ — July 2012.

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	February 8, 2005	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	New
1	February 7, 2006	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	1. Changed incorrect use of certain hyphens (-) to "en dash" (–) and "em dash (—)." 2. Added "periods" to items where appropriate. Changed "Timeframe" to "Time Frame" in item D, 1.2
1a	February 17, 2011	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Added Appendix 1 - Interpretation regarding applicability of standard to protection of radially connected transformers developed in Project 2009-17
1b	November 5, 2009	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Interpretation of R1, R1.1, and R1.2 developed by Project 2009-10
1b	February 3, 2012	FERC order approving revised definition of "Protection System"	Per footnote 8 of FERC's order, the definition of "Protection System" supersedes interpretation "b" of PRC-005-1b upon the effective date of the modified definition (i.e., April 1, 2013) *See N. Amer. Elec. Reliability Corp.*, 138 FERC ¶ 61,095 (February 3, 2012)
1.1b	May 9, 2012	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Errata change developed by Project 2010-07, clarified inclusion of generator interconnection Facility in Generator Owner's responsibility

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
2	November 7, 2012	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Project 2007-17 - Complete revision, absorbing maintenance requirements from PRC-005-1.1b, PRC-008-0, PRC-011-0, PRC-017-0
2	October 17, 2013	Approved by NERC Standards Committee	Errata Change: The Standards Committee approved an errata change to the implementation plan for PRC-005-2 to add the phrase “or as otherwise made effective pursuant to the laws applicable to such ERO governmental authorities;” to the second sentence under the “Retirement of Existing Standards” section. (no change to standard version number)
2	March 7, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Modified R1 VSL in response to FERC directive (no change to standard version number)
2(i)	November 13, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Applicability section revised by Project 2014-01 to clarify application of Requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
2(i)	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving PRC-005-2(i)	

Table 1-1 Component Type - Protective Relay Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**[1]	**Maintenance Activities**
Any unmonitored protective relay not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	6 calendar years	For all unmonitored relays: • Verify that settings are as specified For non-microprocessor relays: • Test and, if necessary calibrate For microprocessor relays: • Verify operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Verify acceptable measurement of power system input values.
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with the following: • Internal self-diagnosis and alarming (see Table 2). • Voltage and/or current waveform sampling three or more times per power cycle, and conversion of samples to numeric values for measurement calculations by microprocessor electronics. • Alarming for power supply failure (see Table 2).	12 calendar years	Verify: • Settings are as specified. • Operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Acceptable measurement of power system input values.

[1] For the tables in this standard, a calendar year starts on the first day of a new year (January 1) after a maintenance activity has been completed.
For the tables in this standard, a calendar month starts on the first day of the first month after a maintenance activity has been completed.

Table 1-1 Component Type - Protective Relay Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval[1]**	**Maintenance Activities**
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with preceding row attributes and the following: • Ac measurements are continuously verified by comparison to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for excessive error (See Table 2). • Some or all binary or status inputs and control outputs are monitored by a process that continuously demonstrates ability to perform as designed, with alarming for failure (See Table 2). • Alarming for change of settings (See Table 2).	12 calendar years	Verify only the unmonitored relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.

Table 1-2 Component Type - Communications Systems Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any unmonitored communications system necessary for correct operation of protective functions, and not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	4 calendar months	Verify that the communications system is functional.
	6 calendar years	Verify that the communications system meets performance criteria pertinent to the communications technology applied (e.g. signal level, reflected power, or data error rate). Verify operation of communications system inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.
Any communications system with continuous monitoring or periodic automated testing for the presence of the channel function, and alarming for loss of function (See Table 2).	12 calendar years	Verify that the communications system meets performance criteria pertinent to the communications technology applied (e.g. signal level, reflected power, or data error rate). Verify operation of communications system inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.
Any communications system with all of the following: • Continuous monitoring or periodic automated testing for the performance of the channel using criteria pertinent to the communications technology applied (e.g. signal level, reflected power, or data error rate, and alarming for excessive performance degradation). (See Table 2) • Some or all binary or status inputs and control outputs are monitored by a process that continuously demonstrates ability to perform as designed, with alarming for failure (See Table 2).	12 calendar years	Verify only the unmonitored communications system inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System

Table 1-3 Component Type - Voltage and Current Sensing Devices Providing Inputs to Protective Relays Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any voltage and current sensing devices not having monitoring attributes of the category below.	12 calendar years	Verify that current and voltage signal values are provided to the protective relays.
Voltage and Current Sensing devices connected to microprocessor relays with AC measurements are continuously verified by comparison of sensing input value, as measured by the microprocessor relay, to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for unacceptable error or failure (see Table 2).	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 1-4(a) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS systems, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Protection System Station dc supply using **Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) batteries** not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: • Electrolyte level • For unintentional grounds
	18 Calendar Months	Verify: • Float voltage of battery charger • Battery continuity • Battery terminal connection resistance • Battery intercell or unit-to-unit connection resistance Inspect: • Cell condition of all individual battery cells where cells are visible – or measure battery cell/unit internal ohmic values where the cells are not visible • Physical condition of battery rack
	18 Calendar Months -or- 6 Calendar Years	Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by evaluating cell/unit measurements indicative of battery performance (e.g. internal ohmic values or float current) against the station battery baseline. -or- Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by conducting a performance or modified performance capacity test of the entire battery bank.

Table 1-4(b) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Valve-Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS systems, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Protection System Station dc supply **with Valve Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) batteries** not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: • For unintentional grounds
	6 Calendar Months	Inspect: • Condition of all individual units by measuring battery cell/unit internal ohmic values.
	18 Calendar Months	Verify: • Float voltage of battery charger • Battery continuity • Battery terminal connection resistance • Battery intercell or unit-to-unit connection resistance Inspect: • Physical condition of battery rack
	6 Calendar Months -or- 3 Calendar Years	Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by evaluating cell/unit measurements indicative of battery performance (e.g. internal ohmic values or float current) against the station battery baseline. -or- Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by conducting a performance or modified performance capacity test of the entire battery bank.

Table 1-4(c) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Nickel-Cadmium (NiCad) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS system, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Protection System Station dc supply **Nickel-Cadmium (NiCad) batteries** not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: • Electrolyte level • For unintentional grounds
	18 Calendar Months	Verify: • Float voltage of battery charger • Battery continuity • Battery terminal connection resistance • Battery intercell or unit-to-unit connection resistance Inspect: • Cell condition of all individual battery cells. • Physical condition of battery rack
	6 Calendar Years	Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by conducting a performance or modified performance capacity test of the entire battery bank.

Table 1-4(d) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Non Battery Based Energy Storage Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS system, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any Protection System station dc supply not using a battery and not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: • For unintentional grounds
	18 Calendar Months	Inspect: Condition of non-battery based dc supply
	6 Calendar Years	Verify that the dc supply can perform as manufactured when ac power is not present.

Table 1-4(e) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply for non-BES Interrupting Devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS, and non-distributed UVLS systems		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any Protection System dc supply used for tripping only non-BES interrupting devices as part of a SPS, non-distributed UFLS, or non-distributed UVLS system and not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	When control circuits are verified (See Table 1-5)	Verify Station dc supply voltage.

Table 1-4(f) Exclusions for Protection System Station dc Supply Monitoring Devices and Systems		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any station dc supply with high and low voltage monitoring and alarming of the battery charger voltage to detect charger overvoltage and charger failure (See Table 2).	No periodic maintenance specified	No periodic verification of station dc supply voltage is required.
Any battery based station dc supply with electrolyte level monitoring and alarming in every cell (See Table 2).		No periodic inspection of the electrolyte level for each cell is required.
Any station dc supply with unintentional dc ground monitoring and alarming (See Table 2).		No periodic inspection of unintentional dc grounds is required.
Any station dc supply with charger float voltage monitoring and alarming to ensure correct float voltage is being applied on the station dc supply (See Table 2).		No periodic verification of float voltage of battery charger is required.
Any battery based station dc supply with monitoring and alarming of battery string continuity (See Table 2).		No periodic verification of the battery continuity is required.
Any battery based station dc supply with monitoring and alarming of the intercell and/or terminal connection detail resistance of the entire battery (See Table 2).		No periodic verification of the intercell and terminal connection resistance is required.
Any Valve Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) or Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) station battery with internal ohmic value or float current monitoring and alarming, and evaluating present values relative to baseline internal ohmic values for every cell/unit (See Table 2).		No periodic evaluation relative to baseline of battery cell/unit measurements indicative of battery performance is required to verify the station battery can perform as manufactured.
Any Valve Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) or Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) station battery with monitoring and alarming of each cell/unit internal ohmic value (See Table 2).		No periodic inspection of the condition of all individual units by measuring battery cell/unit internal ohmic values of a station VRLA or Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) battery is required.

Table 1-5 Component Type - Control Circuitry Associated With Protective Functions Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) **Note:** Table requirements apply to all Control Circuitry Components of Protection Systems, and SPSs except as noted.		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Trip coils or actuators of circuit breakers, interrupting devices, or mitigating devices (regardless of any monitoring of the control circuitry).	6 calendar years	Verify that each trip coil is able to operate the circuit breaker, interrupting device, or mitigating device.
Electromechanical lockout devices which are directly in a trip path from the protective relay to the interrupting device trip coil (regardless of any monitoring of the control circuitry).	6 calendar years	Verify electrical operation of electromechanical lockout devices.
Unmonitored control circuitry associated with SPS.	12 calendar years	Verify all paths of the control circuits essential for proper operation of the SPS.
Unmonitored control circuitry associated with protective functions inclusive of all auxiliary relays.	12 calendar years	Verify all paths of the trip circuits inclusive of all auxiliary relays through the trip coil(s) of the circuit breakers or other interrupting devices.
Control circuitry associated with protective functions and/or SPS whose integrity is monitored and alarmed (See Table 2).	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 2 – Alarming Paths and Monitoring In Tables 1-1 through 1-5 and Table 3, alarm attributes used to justify extended maximum maintenance intervals and/or reduced maintenance activities are subject to the following maintenance requirements		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any alarm path through which alarms in Tables 1-1 through 1-5 and Table 3 are conveyed from the alarm origin to the location where corrective action can be initiated, and not having all the attributes of the "Alarm Path with monitoring" category below. Alarms are reported within 24 hours of detection to a location where corrective action can be initiated.	12 Calendar Years	Verify that the alarm path conveys alarm signals to a location where corrective action can be initiated.
Alarm Path with monitoring: The location where corrective action is taken receives an alarm within 24 hours for failure of any portion of the alarming path from the alarm origin to the location where corrective action can be initiated.	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 3 Maintenance Activities and Intervals for distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS Systems		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any unmonitored protective relay not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	6 calendar years	Verify that settings are as specified For non-microprocessor relays: • Test and, if necessary calibrate For microprocessor relays: • Verify operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Verify acceptable measurement of power system input values.
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with the following: • Internal self diagnosis and alarming (See Table 2). • Voltage and/or current waveform sampling three or more times per power cycle, and conversion of samples to numeric values for measurement calculations by microprocessor electronics. Alarming for power supply failure (See Table 2).	12 calendar years	Verify: • Settings are as specified. • Operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Acceptable measurement of power system input values
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with preceding row attributes and the following: • Ac measurements are continuously verified by comparison to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for excessive error (See Table 2). • Some or all binary or status inputs and control outputs are monitored by a process that continuously demonstrates ability to perform as designed, with alarming for failure (See Table 2). Alarming for change of settings (See Table 2).	12 calendar years	Verify only the unmonitored relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.

Table 3 Maintenance Activities and Intervals for distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS Systems		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Voltage and/or current sensing devices associated with UFLS or UVLS systems.	12 calendar years	Verify that current and/or voltage signal values are provided to the protective relays.
Protection System dc supply for tripping non-BES interrupting devices used only for a UFLS or UVLS system.	12 calendar years	Verify Protection System dc supply voltage.
Control circuitry between the UFLS or UVLS relays and electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices (excludes non-BES interrupting device trip coils).	12 calendar years	Verify the path from the relay to the lockout and/or tripping auxiliary relay (including essential supervisory logic).
Electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices associated only with UFLS or UVLS systems (excludes non-BES interrupting device trip coils).	12 calendar years	Verify electrical operation of electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices.
Control circuitry between the electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices and the non-BES interrupting devices in UFLS or UVLS systems, or between UFLS or UVLS relays (with no interposing electromechanical lockout or auxiliary device) and the non-BES interrupting devices (excludes non-BES interrupting device trip coils).	No periodic maintenance specified	None.
Trip coils of non-BES interrupting devices in UFLS or UVLS systems.	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

PRC-005 — Attachment A

Criteria for a Performance-Based Protection System Maintenance Program

Purpose: To establish a technical basis for initial and continued use of a performance-based Protection System Maintenance Program (PSMP).

To establish the technical justification for the initial use of a performance-based PSMP:

1. Develop a list with a description of Components included in each designated Segment of the Protection System Component population, with a minimum **Segment** population of 60 Components.
2. Maintain the Components in each Segment according to the time-based maximum allowable intervals established in Tables 1-1 through 1-5 and Table 3 until results of maintenance activities for the Segment are available for a minimum of 30 individual Components of the Segment.
3. Document the maintenance program activities and results for each Segment, including maintenance dates and Countable Events for each included Component.
4. Analyze the maintenance program activities and results for each Segment to determine the overall performance of the Segment and develop maintenance intervals.
5. Determine the maximum allowable maintenance interval for each Segment such that the Segment experiences **Countable Events** on no more than 4% of the Components within the Segment, for the greater of either the last 30 Components maintained or all Components maintained in the previous year.

To maintain the technical justification for the ongoing use of a performance-based PSMP:

1. At least annually, update the list of Protection System Components and Segments and/or description if any changes occur within the Segment.
2. Perform maintenance on the greater of 5% of the Components (addressed in the performance based PSMP) in each Segment or 3 individual Components within the Segment in each year.
3. For the prior year, analyze the maintenance program activities and results for each Segment to determine the overall performance of the Segment.
4. Using the prior year's data, determine the maximum allowable maintenance interval for each Segment such that the Segment experiences Countable Events on no more than 4% of the Components within the Segment, for the greater of either the last 30 Components maintained or all Components maintained in the previous year.
5. If the Components in a Protection System Segment maintained through a performance-based PSMP experience 4% or more Countable Events, develop, document, and implement an action plan to reduce the Countable Events to less than 4% of the Segment population within 3 years.

Application Guidelines

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for 4.2.5

In order to differentiate between typical BES generator Facilities and BES generators at dispersed power producing facilities, section 4.2.5 was separated into two sections (4.2.5 and 4.2.6). The applicability to non-dispersed power producing Facilities has been maintained and can be found in 4.2.5. The applicability to dispersed power producing Facilities has been modified and relocated from 4.2.5 to 4.2.6.

Rationale for 4.2.6:

Applicability of the Requirements of PRC-005-2 to dispersed power producing resources is separated out in section 4.2.6. The intent is that for such resources, the Requirements would apply only to Protection Systems on equipment used in aggregating the BES dispersed power producing resources from the point where those resources aggregate to greater than 75 MVA to a common point of connection at 100 kV or higher including the Protection Systems for those transformers used in aggregating generation.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-005-2(i) — Protection System Maintenance

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-005-2(i)	All	05/29/2015	03/31/2016

Reliability Standard PRC-005-3(i)

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Maintenance**
2. **Number:** PRC-005-3(i)
3. **Purpose:** To document and implement programs for the maintenance of all Protection Systems and Automatic Reclosing affecting the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES) so that they are kept in working order.
4. **Applicability:**

4.1. Functional Entities:

4.1.1 Transmission Owner

4.1.2 Generator Owner

4.1.3 Distribution Provider

4.2. Facilities:

4.2.1 Protection Systems that are installed for the purpose of detecting Faults on BES Elements (lines, buses, transformers, etc.)

4.2.2 Protection Systems used for underfrequency load-shedding systems installed per ERO underfrequency load-shedding requirements.

4.2.3 Protection Systems used for undervoltage load-shedding systems installed to prevent system voltage collapse or voltage instability for BES reliability.

4.2.4 Protection Systems installed as a Special Protection System (SPS) for BES reliability.

4.2.5 Protection Systems for the following BES generator Facilities for generators not identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:

4.2.5.1 Protection Systems that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or auxiliary tripping relays.

4.2.5.2 Protection Systems for generator step-up transformers for generators that are part of the BES.

4.2.5.3 Protection Systems for station service or excitation transformers connected to the generator bus of generators which are part of the BES, that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or tripping auxiliary relays.

4.2.6 Protection Systems for the following BES generator Facilities for dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:

4.2.6.1 Protection Systems for Facilities used in aggregating dispersed BES generation from the point where those resources aggregate to greater than 75 MVA to a common point of connection at 100 kV or above.

4.2.7 Automatic Reclosing[1], including:

4.2.7.1 Automatic Reclosing applied on the terminals of Elements connected to the BES bus located at generating plant substations where the total installed gross generating plant capacity is greater than the gross capacity of the largest BES generating unit within the Balancing Authority Area.

4.2.7.2 Automatic Reclosing applied on the terminals of all BES Elements at substations one bus away from generating plants specified in Section 4.2.7.1 when the substation is less than 10 circuit-miles from the generating plant substation.

4.2.7.3 Automatic Reclosing applied as an integral part of an SPS specified in Section 4.2.4.

5. Effective Date: See Implementation Plan.

6. Definitions Used in this Standard: The following terms are defined for use only within PRC-005-3, and should remain with the standard upon approval rather than being moved to the Glossary of Terms.

Automatic Reclosing – Includes the following Components:

- Reclosing relay
- Control circuitry associated with the reclosing relay.

Unresolved Maintenance Issue – A deficiency identified during a maintenance activity that causes the Component to not meet the intended performance, cannot be corrected during the maintenance interval, and requires follow-up corrective action.

Segment – Components of a consistent design standard, or a particular model or type from a single manufacturer that typically share other common elements. Consistent performance is expected across the entire population of a Segment. A Segment must contain at least sixty (60) individual Components.

Component Type – Either any one of the five specific elements of the Protection System definition or any one of the two specific elements of the Automatic Reclosing definition.

Component – A Component is any individual discrete piece of equipment included in a Protection System or in Automatic Reclosing, including but not limited to a protective relay, reclosing relay, or current sensing device. The designation of what constitutes a control circuit Component is dependent upon how an entity performs and tracks the testing of the control circuitry. Some entities test their control circuits on a breaker basis whereas others test their circuitry on a local zone of protection basis. Thus, entities are allowed the latitude to designate their own definitions of control circuit Components. Another example of where the entity has some discretion on determining what constitutes a single Component is the voltage and current sensing devices, where the entity may choose either to designate a full three-phase set of such devices or a single device as a single Component.

Countable Event – A failure of a Component requiring repair or replacement, any condition discovered during the maintenance activities in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2 which requires corrective action or a Protection System Misoperation attributed

[1] Automatic Reclosing addressed in Section 4.2.7.1 and 4.2.7.2 may be excluded if the equipment owner can demonstrate that a close-in three-phase fault present for twice the normal clearing time (capturing a minimum trip-close-trip time delay) does not result in a total loss of gross generation in the Interconnection exceeding the gross capacity of the largest BES generating unit within the Balancing Authority Area where the Automatic Reclosing is applied.

to hardware failure or calibration failure. Misoperations due to product design errors, software errors, relay settings different from specified settings, Protection System Component or Automatic Reclosing configuration or application errors are not included in Countable Events.

B. Requirements

R1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall establish a Protection System Maintenance Program (PSMP) for its Protection Systems and Automatic Reclosing identified in Facilities Section 4.2. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

The PSMP shall:

1.1. Identify which maintenance method (time-based, performance-based per PRC-005 Attachment A, or a combination) is used to address each Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Component Type. All batteries associated with the station dc supply Component Type of a Protection System shall be included in a time-based program as described in Table 1-4 and Table 3.

1.2. Include the applicable monitored Component attributes applied to each Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Component Type consistent with the maintenance intervals specified in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, and Table 4-1 through 4-2 where monitoring is used to extend the maintenance intervals beyond those specified for unmonitored Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Components.

R2. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP shall follow the procedure established in PRC-005 Attachment A to establish and maintain its performance-based intervals. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

R3. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes time-based maintenance program(s) shall maintain its Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Components that are included within the time-based maintenance program in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, and Table 4-1 through 4-2. *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

R4. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes performance-based maintenance program(s) in accordance with Requirement R2 shall implement and follow its PSMP for its Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Components that are included within the performance-based program(s). *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

R5. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall demonstrate efforts to correct identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

C. Measures

M1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner and Distribution Provider shall have a documented Protection System Maintenance Program in accordance with Requirement R1.

For each Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Component Type, the documentation shall include the type of maintenance method applied (time-based, performance-based, or a combination of these maintenance methods), and shall include all batteries associated with the station dc supply Component Types in a time-based program as described in Table 1-4 and Table 3. (Part 1.1)

For Component Types that use monitoring to extend the maintenance intervals, the responsible entity(s) shall have evidence for each Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Component Type (such as manufacturer's specifications or engineering drawings) of the appropriate monitored Component attributes as specified in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, and Table 4-1 through 4-2. (Part 1.2)

M2. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that uses performance-based maintenance intervals shall have evidence that its current performance-based maintenance program(s) is in accordance with Requirement R2, which may include but is not limited to Component lists, dated maintenance records, and dated analysis records and results.

M3. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes time-based maintenance program(s) shall have evidence that it has maintained its Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Components included within its time-based program in accordance with Requirement R3. The evidence may include but is not limited to dated maintenance records, dated maintenance summaries, dated check-off lists, dated inspection records, or dated work orders.

M4. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes performance-based maintenance intervals in accordance with Requirement R2 shall have evidence that it has implemented the Protection System Maintenance Program for the Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Components included in its performance-based program in accordance with Requirement R4. The evidence may include but is not limited to dated maintenance records, dated maintenance summaries, dated check-off lists, dated inspection records, or dated work orders.

M5. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have evidence that it has undertaken efforts to correct identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues in accordance with Requirement R5. The evidence may include but is not limited to work orders, replacement Component orders, invoices, project schedules with completed milestones, return material authorizations (RMAs) or purchase orders.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Processes:

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.3. Evidence Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each keep data or evidence to show compliance as identified below unless directed by its Compliance Enforcement Authority to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation.

For Requirement R1, the Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each keep its current dated Protection System Maintenance Program, as well as any superseded versions since the preceding compliance audit, including the documentation that specifies the type of maintenance program applied for each Protection System Component Type.

For Requirement R2, Requirement R3, Requirement R4, and Requirement R5, the Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each keep documentation of the two most recent performances of each distinct maintenance activity for the Protection System or Automatic Reclosing Component, or all performances of each distinct maintenance activity for the Protection System or Automatic Reclosing Component since the previous scheduled audit date, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None.

Violation Severity Levels

Requirement Number	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	The responsible entity's PSMP failed to specify whether one Component Type is being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both. (Part 1.1)	The responsible entity's PSMP failed to specify whether two Component Types are being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both. (Part 1.1)	The responsible entity's PSMP failed to specify whether three Component Types are being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both. (Part 1.1). OR The responsible entity's PSMP failed to include the applicable monitoring attributes applied to each Component Type consistent with the maintenance intervals specified in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2 where monitoring is used to extend the maintenance intervals beyond those specified for unmonitored Components. (Part 1.2).	The responsible entity failed to establish a PSMP. OR The responsible entity's PSMP failed to specify whether four or more Component Types are being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both. (Part 1.1). OR The responsible entity's PSMP failed to include applicable station batteries in a time-based program. (Part 1.1)
R2	The responsible entity uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP but failed to reduce Countable Events to no more than 4% within three years.	NA	The responsible entity uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP but failed to reduce Countable Events to no more than 4% within four years.	The responsible entity uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP but: 1) Failed to establish the technical justification described within Requirement R2 for the initial use of the performance-based PSMP OR 2) Failed to reduce Countable Events to no more than 4% within five years OR

Requirement Number	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
				3) Maintained a Segment with less than 60 Components OR 4) Failed to: • Annually update the list of Components, OR • Annually perform maintenance on the greater of 5% of the Segment population or 3 Components, OR • Annually analyze the program activities and results for each Segment.
R3	For Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain 5% or less of the total Components included within a specific Component Type, in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2.	For Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 5% but 10% or less of the total Components included within a specific Component Type, in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2.	For Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 10% but 15% or less of the total Components included within a specific Component Type, in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2.	For Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 15% of the total Components included within a specific Component Type, in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2.
R4	For Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain 5% or less of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific	For Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 5% but 10% or less of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific	For Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 10% but 15% or less of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific	For Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 15% of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific

Requirement Number	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
	Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.	Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.	Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.	Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.
R5	The responsible entity failed to undertake efforts to correct 5 or fewer identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.	The responsible entity failed to undertake efforts to correct greater than 5, but less than or equal to 10 identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.	The responsible entity failed to undertake efforts to correct greater than 10, but less than or equal to 15 identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.	The responsible entity failed to undertake efforts to correct greater than 15 identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.

E. Regional Variances

None

F. Supplemental Reference Document

The following documents present a detailed discussion about determination of maintenance intervals and other useful information regarding establishment of a maintenance program.

1. PRC-005-2 Protection System Maintenance Supplementary Reference and FAQ — March 2013.
2. Considerations for Maintenance and Testing of Autoreclosing Schemes — November 2012.

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Date	New
1	December 1, 2005	1. Changed incorrect use of certain hyphens (-) to "en dash" (–) and "em dash (—)." 2. Added "periods" to items where appropriate. 3. Changed "Timeframe" to "Time Frame" in item D, 1.2.	01/20/05
1a	February 17, 2011	Added Appendix 1 - Interpretation regarding applicability of standard to protection of radially connected transformers	Project 2009-17 interpretation
1a	February 17, 2011	Adopted by Board of Trustees	
1a	September 26, 2011	FERC Order issued approving interpretation of R1 and R2 (FERC's Order is effective as of September 26, 2011)	
1.1a	February 1, 2012	Errata change: Clarified inclusion of generator interconnection Facility in Generator Owner's responsibility	Revision under Project 2010-07
1b	February 3, 2012	FERC Order issued approving interpretation of R1, R1.1, and R1.2 (FERC's Order dated March 14, 2012). Updated version from 1a to 1b.	Project 2009-10 Interpretation
1.1b	April 23, 2012	Updated standard version to 1.1b to reflect FERC approval of PRC-005-1b.	Revision under Project 2010-07

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
1.1b	May 9, 2012	PRC-005-1.1b was adopted by the Board of Trustees as part of Project 2010-07 (GOTO).	
2	November 7, 2012	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Project 2007-17 - Complete revision, absorbing maintenance requirements from PRC-005-1.1b, PRC-008-0, PRC-011-0, PRC-017-0
2	October 17, 2013	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Errata Change: The Standards Committee approved an errata change to the implementation plan for PRC-005-2 to add the phrase "or as otherwise made effective pursuant to the laws applicable to such ERO governmental authorities;" to the second sentence under the "Retirement of Existing
2(i)	November 13, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Applicability section revised by Project 2014-01 to clarify application of Requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
2(ii)	November 13, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Replaced references to Special Protection System and SPS with Remedial Action Scheme and RAS
3	November 7, 2013	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Revised to address the FERC directive in Order No.758 to include Automatic Reclosing in maintenance programs
3(i)	November 13, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Applicability section revised by Project 2014-01 to clarify application of Requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
3(i)	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving PRC-005-3(i)	

Table 1-1
Component Type - Protective Relay
Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)

Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval[2]	Maintenance Activities
Any unmonitored protective relay not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	6 Calendar Years	For all unmonitored relays: • Verify that settings are as specified For non-microprocessor relays: • Test and, if necessary calibrate For microprocessor relays: • Verify operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Verify acceptable measurement of power system input values.
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with the following: • Internal self-diagnosis and alarming (see Table 2). • Voltage and/or current waveform sampling three or more times per power cycle, and conversion of samples to numeric values for measurement calculations by microprocessor electronics. • Alarming for power supply failure (see Table 2).	12 Calendar Years	Verify: • Settings are as specified. • Operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Acceptable measurement of power system input values.

[2] For the tables in this standard, a calendar year starts on the first day of a new year (January 1) after a maintenance activity has been completed. For the tables in this standard, a calendar month starts on the first day of the first month after a maintenance activity has been completed.

Table 1-1 Component Type - Protective Relay Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**[2]	**Maintenance Activities**
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with preceding row attributes and the following: • Ac measurements are continuously verified by comparison to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for excessive error (See Table 2). • Some or all binary or status inputs and control outputs are monitored by a process that continuously demonstrates ability to perform as designed, with alarming for failure (See Table 2). • Alarming for change of settings (See Table 2).	12 Calendar Years	Verify only the unmonitored relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.

Table 1-2 Component Type - Communications Systems Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any unmonitored communications system necessary for correct operation of protective functions, and not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	4 Calendar Months	Verify that the communications system is functional.
	6 Calendar Years	Verify that the communications system meets performance criteria pertinent to the communications technology applied (e.g. signal level, reflected power, or data error rate). Verify operation of communications system inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.
Any communications system with continuous monitoring or periodic automated testing for the presence of the channel function, and alarming for loss of function (See Table 2).	12 Calendar Years	Verify that the communications system meets performance criteria pertinent to the communications technology applied (e.g. signal level, reflected power, or data error rate). Verify operation of communications system inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.
Any communications system with all of the following: • Continuous monitoring or periodic automated testing for the performance of the channel using criteria pertinent to the communications technology applied (e.g. signal level, reflected power, or data error rate, and alarming for excessive performance degradation). (See Table 2) • Some or all binary or status inputs and control outputs are monitored by a process that continuously demonstrates ability to perform as designed, with alarming for failure (See Table 2).	12 Calendar Years	Verify only the unmonitored communications system inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System

Table 1-3 Component Type - Voltage and Current Sensing Devices Providing Inputs to Protective Relays Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any voltage and current sensing devices not having monitoring attributes of the category below.	12 Calendar Years	Verify that current and voltage signal values are provided to the protective relays.
Voltage and Current Sensing devices connected to microprocessor relays with AC measurements are continuously verified by comparison of sensing input value, as measured by the microprocessor relay, to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for unacceptable error or failure (see Table 2).	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 1-4(a) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS systems, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Protection System Station dc supply using **Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) batteries** not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: • Electrolyte level • For unintentional grounds
	18 Calendar Months	Verify: • Float voltage of battery charger • Battery continuity • Battery terminal connection resistance • Battery intercell or unit-to-unit connection resistance Inspect: • Cell condition of all individual battery cells where cells are visible – or measure battery cell/unit internal ohmic values where the cells are not visible • Physical condition of battery rack

Table 1-4(a) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS systems, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
	18 Calendar Months -or- 6 Calendar Years	Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by evaluating cell/unit measurements indicative of battery performance (e.g. internal ohmic values or float current) against the station battery baseline. -or- Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by conducting a performance or modified performance capacity test of the entire battery bank.

Table 1-4(b) **Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Valve-Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) Batteries** **Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)** **Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS systems, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).**		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Protection System Station dc supply **with Valve Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) batteries** not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: • For unintentional grounds
	6 Calendar Months	Inspect: • Condition of all individual units by measuring battery cell/unit internal ohmic values.
	18 Calendar Months	Verify: • Float voltage of battery charger • Battery continuity • Battery terminal connection resistance • Battery intercell or unit-to-unit connection resistance Inspect: • Physical condition of battery rack

Table 1-4(b) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Valve-Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS systems, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
	6 Calendar Months -or- 3 Calendar Years	Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by evaluating cell/unit measurements indicative of battery performance (e.g. internal ohmic values or float current) against the station battery baseline. -or- Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by conducting a performance or modified performance capacity test of the entire battery bank.

Table 1-4(c) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Nickel-Cadmium (NiCad) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS system, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Protection System Station dc supply **Nickel-Cadmium (NiCad) batteries** not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: • Electrolyte level • For unintentional grounds
	18 Calendar Months	Verify: • Float voltage of battery charger • Battery continuity • Battery terminal connection resistance • Battery intercell or unit-to-unit connection resistance Inspect: • Cell condition of all individual battery cells. • Physical condition of battery rack
	6 Calendar Years	Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by conducting a performance or modified performance capacity test of the entire battery bank.

Table 1-4(d) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Non Battery Based Energy Storage Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS system, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any Protection System station dc supply not using a battery and not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: • For unintentional grounds
	18 Calendar Months	Inspect: Condition of non-battery based dc supply
	6 Calendar Years	Verify that the dc supply can perform as manufactured when ac power is not present.

Table 1-4(e) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply for non-BES Interrupting Devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS, and non-distributed UVLS systems		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any Protection System dc supply used for tripping only non-BES interrupting devices as part of a SPS, non-distributed UFLS, or non-distributed UVLS system and not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	When control circuits are verified (See Table 1-5)	Verify Station dc supply voltage.

Table 1-4(f) Exclusions for Protection System Station dc Supply Monitoring Devices and Systems		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any station dc supply with high and low voltage monitoring and alarming of the battery charger voltage to detect charger overvoltage and charger failure (See Table 2).	No periodic maintenance specified	No periodic verification of station dc supply voltage is required.
Any battery based station dc supply with electrolyte level monitoring and alarming in every cell (See Table 2).		No periodic inspection of the electrolyte level for each cell is required.
Any station dc supply with unintentional dc ground monitoring and alarming (See Table 2).		No periodic inspection of unintentional dc grounds is required.
Any station dc supply with charger float voltage monitoring and alarming to ensure correct float voltage is being applied on the station dc supply (See Table 2).		No periodic verification of float voltage of battery charger is required.
Any battery based station dc supply with monitoring and alarming of battery string continuity (See Table 2).		No periodic verification of the battery continuity is required.
Any battery based station dc supply with monitoring and alarming of the intercell and/or terminal connection detail resistance of the entire battery (See Table 2).		No periodic verification of the intercell and terminal connection resistance is required.
Any Valve Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) or Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) station battery with internal ohmic value or float current monitoring and alarming, and evaluating present values relative to baseline internal ohmic values for every cell/unit (See Table 2).		No periodic evaluation relative to baseline of battery cell/unit measurements indicative of battery performance is required to verify the station battery can perform as manufactured.
Any Valve Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) or Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) station battery with monitoring and alarming of each cell/unit internal ohmic value (See Table 2).		No periodic inspection of the condition of all individual units by measuring battery cell/unit internal ohmic values of a station VRLA or Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) battery is required.

Table 1-5 Component Type - Control Circuitry Associated With Protective Functions Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Note: Table requirements apply to all Control Circuitry Components of Protection Systems, and SPSs except as noted.		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Trip coils or actuators of circuit breakers, interrupting devices, or mitigating devices (regardless of any monitoring of the control circuitry).	6 Calendar Years	Verify that each trip coil is able to operate the circuit breaker, interrupting device, or mitigating device.
Electromechanical lockout devices which are directly in a trip path from the protective relay to the interrupting device trip coil (regardless of any monitoring of the control circuitry).	6 Calendar Years	Verify electrical operation of electromechanical lockout devices.
Unmonitored control circuitry associated with SPS. (See Table 4-2(b) for SPS which include Automatic Reclosing.)	12 Calendar Years	Verify all paths of the control circuits essential for proper operation of the SPS.
Unmonitored control circuitry associated with protective functions inclusive of all auxiliary relays.	12 Calendar Years	Verify all paths of the trip circuits inclusive of all auxiliary relays through the trip coil(s) of the circuit breakers or other interrupting devices.
Control circuitry associated with protective functions and/or SPSs whose integrity is monitored and alarmed (See Table 2).	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 2 – Alarming Paths and Monitoring In Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2, alarm attributes used to justify extended maximum maintenance intervals and/or reduced maintenance activities are subject to the following maintenance requirements		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any alarm path through which alarms in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2 are conveyed from the alarm origin to the location where corrective action can be initiated, and not having all the attributes of the "Alarm Path with monitoring" category below. Alarms are reported within 24 hours of detection to a location where corrective action can be initiated.	12 Calendar Years	Verify that the alarm path conveys alarm signals to a location where corrective action can be initiated.
Alarm Path with monitoring: The location where corrective action is taken receives an alarm within 24 hours for failure of any portion of the alarming path from the alarm origin to the location where corrective action can be initiated.	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 3 Maintenance Activities and Intervals for distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS Systems		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any unmonitored protective relay not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	6 Calendar Years	Verify that settings are as specified. For non-microprocessor relays: • Test and, if necessary calibrate. For microprocessor relays: • Verify operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Verify acceptable measurement of power system input values.
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with the following: • Internal self diagnosis and alarming (See Table 2). • Voltage and/or current waveform sampling three or more times per power cycle, and conversion of samples to numeric values for measurement calculations by microprocessor electronics. Alarming for power supply failure (See Table 2).	12 Calendar Years	Verify: • Settings are as specified. • Operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Acceptable measurement of power system input values
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with preceding row attributes and the following: • Ac measurements are continuously verified by comparison to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for excessive error (See Table 2). • Some or all binary or status inputs and control outputs are monitored by a process that continuously demonstrates ability to perform as designed, with alarming for failure (See Table 2). Alarming for change of settings (See Table 2).	12 Calendar Years	Verify only the unmonitored relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.

Table 3 Maintenance Activities and Intervals for distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS Systems		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Voltage and/or current sensing devices associated with UFLS or UVLS systems.	12 Calendar Years	Verify that current and/or voltage signal values are provided to the protective relays.
Protection System dc supply for tripping non-BES interrupting devices used only for a UFLS or UVLS system.	12 Calendar Years	Verify Protection System dc supply voltage.
Control circuitry between the UFLS or UVLS relays and electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices (excludes non-BES interrupting device trip coils).	12 Calendar Years	Verify the path from the relay to the lockout and/or tripping auxiliary relay (including essential supervisory logic).
Electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices associated only with UFLS or UVLS systems (excludes non-BES interrupting device trip coils).	12 Calendar Years	Verify electrical operation of electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices.
Control circuitry between the electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices and the non-BES interrupting devices in UFLS or UVLS systems, or between UFLS or UVLS relays (with no interposing electromechanical lockout or auxiliary device) and the non-BES interrupting devices (excludes non-BES interrupting device trip coils).	No periodic maintenance specified	None.
Trip coils of non-BES interrupting devices in UFLS or UVLS systems.	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 4-1 Maintenance Activities and Intervals for Automatic Reclosing Components Component Type – Reclosing Relay		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any unmonitored reclosing relay not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	6 Calendar Years	Verify that settings are as specified. For non-microprocessor relays: • Test and, if necessary calibrate For microprocessor relays: • Verify operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Automatic Reclosing.
Monitored microprocessor reclosing relay with the following: • Internal self diagnosis and alarming (See Table 2). • Alarming for power supply failure (See Table 2).	12 Calendar Years	Verify: • Settings are as specified. • Operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Automatic Reclosing.

Table 4-2(a) Maintenance Activities and Intervals for Automatic Reclosing Components Component Type – Control Circuitry Associated with Reclosing Relays that are NOT an Integral Part of an SPS		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Unmonitored Control circuitry associated with Automatic Reclosing that is not an integral part of an SPS.	12 Calendar Years	Verify that Automatic Reclosing, upon initiation, does not issue a premature closing command to the close circuitry.
Control circuitry associated with Automatic Reclosing that is not part of an SPS and is monitored and alarmed for conditions that would result in a premature closing command. (See Table 2)	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 4-2(b) Maintenance Activities and Intervals for Automatic Reclosing Components Component Type – Control Circuitry Associated with Reclosing Relays that ARE an Integral Part of an SPS		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Close coils or actuators of circuit breakers or similar devices that are used in conjunction with Automatic Reclosing as part of an SPS (regardless of any monitoring of the control circuitry).	6 Calendar Years	Verify that each close coil or actuator is able to operate the circuit breaker or mitigating device.
Unmonitored close control circuitry associated with Automatic Reclosing used as an integral part of an SPS.	12 Calendar Years	Verify all paths of the control circuits associated with Automatic Reclosing that are essential for proper operation of the SPS.
Control circuitry associated with Automatic Reclosing that is an integral part of an SPS whose integrity is monitored and alarmed. (See Table 2)	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

PRC-005 — Attachment A

Criteria for a Performance-Based Protection System Maintenance Program

Purpose: To establish a technical basis for initial and continued use of a performance-based Protection System Maintenance Program (PSMP).

To establish the technical justification for the initial use of a performance-based PSMP:

1. Develop a list with a description of Components included in each designated Segment, with a minimum **Segment** population of 60 Components.
2. Maintain the Components in each Segment according to the time-based maximum allowable intervals established in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2 until results of maintenance activities for the Segment are available for a minimum of 30 individual Components of the Segment.
3. Document the maintenance program activities and results for each Segment, including maintenance dates and Countable Events for each included Component.
4. Analyze the maintenance program activities and results for each Segment to determine the overall performance of the Segment and develop maintenance intervals.
5. Determine the maximum allowable maintenance interval for each Segment such that the Segment experiences **Countable Events** on no more than 4% of the Components within the Segment, for the greater of either the last 30 Components maintained or all Components maintained in the previous year.

To maintain the technical justification for the ongoing use of a performance-based PSMP:

1. At least annually, update the list of Components and Segments and/or description if any changes occur within the Segment.
2. Perform maintenance on the greater of 5% of the Components (addressed in the performance based PSMP) in each Segment or 3 individual Components within the Segment in each year.
3. For the prior year, analyze the maintenance program activities and results for each Segment to determine the overall performance of the Segment.
4. Using the prior year's data, determine the maximum allowable maintenance interval for each Segment such that the Segment experiences Countable Events on no more than 4% of the Components within the Segment, for the greater of either the last 30 Components maintained or all Components maintained in the previous year.
5. If the Components in a Segment maintained through a performance-based PSMP experience 4% or more Countable Events, develop, document, and implement an action plan to reduce the Countable Events to less than 4% of the Segment population within 3 years.

Application Guidelines

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for 4.2.5:
In order to differentiate between typical BES generator Facilities and BES generators at dispersed power producing facilities, section 4.2.5 was separated into two sections (4.2.5 and 4.2.6). The applicability to non-dispersed power producing Facilities has been maintained and can be found in 4.2.5. The applicability to dispersed power producing Facilities has been modified and relocated from 4.2.5 to 4.2.6.

Rationale for 4.2.6:
Applicability of the Requirements of PRC-005-2 to dispersed power producing resources is separated out in section 4.2.6. The intent is that for such resources, the Requirements would apply only to Protection Systems on equipment used in aggregating the BES dispersed power producing resources from the point where those resources aggregate to greater than 75 MVA to a common point of connection at 100 kV or higher including the Protection Systems for those transformers used in aggregating generation.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-005-3(i) — Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Maintenance

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-005-3(i)	All	04/01/2016	

Reliability Standard PRC-019-2

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Regulating Controls, and Protection

2. **Number:** PRC-019-2

3. **Purpose:** To verify coordination of generating unit Facility or synchronous condenser voltage regulating controls, limit functions, equipment capabilities and Protection System settings.

4. **Applicability:**

   4.1. Functional Entities

   4.1.1 Generator Owner

   4.1.2 Transmission Owner that owns synchronous condenser(s)

   4.2. Facilities

   For the purpose of this standard, the term, "applicable Facility" shall mean any one of the following:

   4.2.1 Individual generating unit greater than 20 MVA (gross nameplate rating) directly connected to the Bulk Electric System.

   4.2.2 Individual synchronous condenser greater than 20 MVA (gross nameplate rating) directly connected to the Bulk Electric System.

   4.2.3 Generating plant/ Facility consisting of one or more units that are connected to the Bulk Electric System at a common bus with total generation greater than 75 MVA (gross aggregate nameplate rating).

   4.2.3.1 This includes individual generating units of the dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition where voltage regulating control for the facility is performed solely at the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resources.

   4.2.4 Any generator, regardless of size, that is a blackstart unit material to and designated as part of a Transmission Operator's restoration plan.

5. **Effective Date:**

   See the Implementation Plan for PRC-019-2.

B. Requirements

R1. At a maximum of every five calendar years, each Generator Owner and Transmission Owner with applicable Facilities shall coordinate the voltage regulating system controls, (including in-service[1] limiters and protection functions) with the applicable

[1] Limiters or protection functions that are installed and activated on the generator or synchronous condenser.

equipment capabilities and settings of the applicable Protection System devices and functions. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*

1.1. Assuming the normal automatic voltage regulator control loop and steady-state system operating conditions, verify the following coordination items for each applicable Facility:

1.1.1. The in-service limiters are set to operate before the Protection System of the applicable Facility in order to avoid disconnecting the generator unnecessarily.

1.1.2. The applicable in-service Protection System devices are set to operate to isolate or de-energize equipment in order to limit the extent of damage when operating conditions exceed equipment capabilities or stability limits.

R2. Within 90 calendar days following the identification or implementation of systems, equipment or setting changes that will affect the coordination described in Requirement R1, each Generator Owner and Transmission Owner with applicable Facilities shall perform the coordination as described in Requirement R1. These possible systems, equipment or settings changes include, but are not limited to the following *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*:

- Voltage regulating settings or equipment changes;
- Protection System settings or component changes;
- Generating or synchronous condenser equipment capability changes; or
- Generator or synchronous condenser step-up transformer changes.

C. Measures

M1. Each Generator Owner and Transmission Owner with applicable Facilities will have evidence (such as examples provided in PRC-019 Section G) that it coordinated the voltage regulating system controls, including in-service[2] limiters and protection functions, with the applicable equipment capabilities and settings of the applicable Protection System devices and functions as specified in Requirement R1. This evidence should include dated documentation that demonstrates the coordination was performed.

M2. Each Generator Owner and Transmission Owner with applicable Facilities will have evidence of the coordination required by the events listed in Requirement R2. This evidence should include dated documentation that demonstrates the specified intervals in Requirement R2 have been met.

[2] Limiters or protection functions that are installed and activated on the generator or synchronous condenser.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

The Regional Entity shall serve as the Compliance enforcement authority unless the applicable entity is owned, operated, or controlled by the Regional Entity. In such cases the ERO or a Regional entity approved by FERC or other applicable governmental authority shall serve as the CEA.

1.2. Evidence Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify a period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention specified below is shorter than the time since the last compliance audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Generator Owner and Transmission Owner shall retain evidence of compliance with Requirements R1 and R2, Measures M1 and M2 for six years.

If a Generator Owner or Transmission Owner is found non-compliant, the entity shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is complete and approved or for the time period specified above, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last periodic audit report and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None

2. Violation Severity Levels

R #	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 5 calendar years but less than or equal to 5 calendar years plus 4 months after the previous coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 5 calendar years plus 4 months but less than or equal to 5 calendar years plus 8 months after the previous coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 5 calendar years plus 8 months but less than or equal to 5 calendar years plus 12 months after the previous coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner failed to coordinate equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 within 5 calendar years plus 12 months after the previous coordination.
R2	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 90 calendar days but less than or equal to 100 calendar days following the identification or implementation of a change in equipment or settings that affected the coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 100 calendar days but less than or equal to 110 calendar days following the identification or implementation of a change in equipment or settings that affected the coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 110 calendar days but less than or equal to 120 calendar days following the identification or implementation of a change in equipment or settings that affected the coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner failed to coordinate equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 within 120 calendar days following the identification or implementation of a change in equipment or settings that affected the coordination.

E. Regional Variances

None.

F. Associated Documents

“Underexcited Operation of Turbo Generators”, AIEE Proceedings T Section 881, Volume 67, 1948, Appendix 1, C. G. Adams and J. B. McClure.

,”Protective Relaying For Power Generation Systems”, Boca Raton, FL, Taylor & Francis, 2006, Reimert, Donald

"Coordination of Generator Protection with Generator Excitation Control and Generator Capability", a report of Working Group J5 of the IEEE PSRC Rotating Machinery Subcommittee

"IEEE C37.102-2006 IEEE Guide for AC Generator Protection"

"IEEE C50.13-2005 IEEE Standard for Cylindrical-Rotor 50 Hz and 60 Hz Synchronous Generators Rated 10 MVA and Above"

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
1	February 7, 2013	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	New
1	March 20, 2014	FERC Order issued approving PRC-019-1. (Order becomes effective on 7/1/16.)	
2	February 12, 2015	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Standard revised in Project 2014-01: Applicability revised to clarify application of requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
2	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving PRC-019-2	Modifications to adjust the applicability to owners of dispersed generation resources.

G. Reference

Examples of Coordination

The evidence of coordination associated with Requirement R1 may be in the form of:

- P-Q Diagram (Example in Attachment 1), or
- R-X Diagram (Example in Attachment 2), or
- Inverse Time Diagram (Example in Attachment 3) or,
- Equivalent tables or other evidence

This evidence should include the equipment capabilities and the operating region for the limiters and protection functions

Equipment limits, types of limiters and protection functions which could be coordinated include (but are not limited to):

- Field over-excitation limiter and associated protection functions.
- Inverter over current limit and associated protection functions.
- Field under-excitation limiter and associated protection functions.
- Generator or synchronous condenser reactive capabilities.
- Volts per hertz limiter and associated protection functions.
- Stator over-voltage protection system settings.
- Generator and transformer volts per hertz capability.
- Time vs. field current or time vs. stator current.

NOTE: This listing is for reference only. This standard does not require the installation or activation of any of the above limiter or protection functions.

For this example, the Steady State Stability Limit (SSSL) is the limit to synchronous stability in the under-excited region with fixed field current.

On a P-Q diagram using X_d as the direct axis saturated synchronous reactance of the generator, X_s as the equivalent reactance between the generator terminals and the "infinite bus" including the reactance of the generator step-up transformer and V_g as the generator terminal voltage (all values in per-unit), the SSSL can be calculated as an arc with the center on the Q axis with the magnitude of the center and radius described by the following equations

$$C = V^2_g/2*(1/X_s-1/X_d)$$

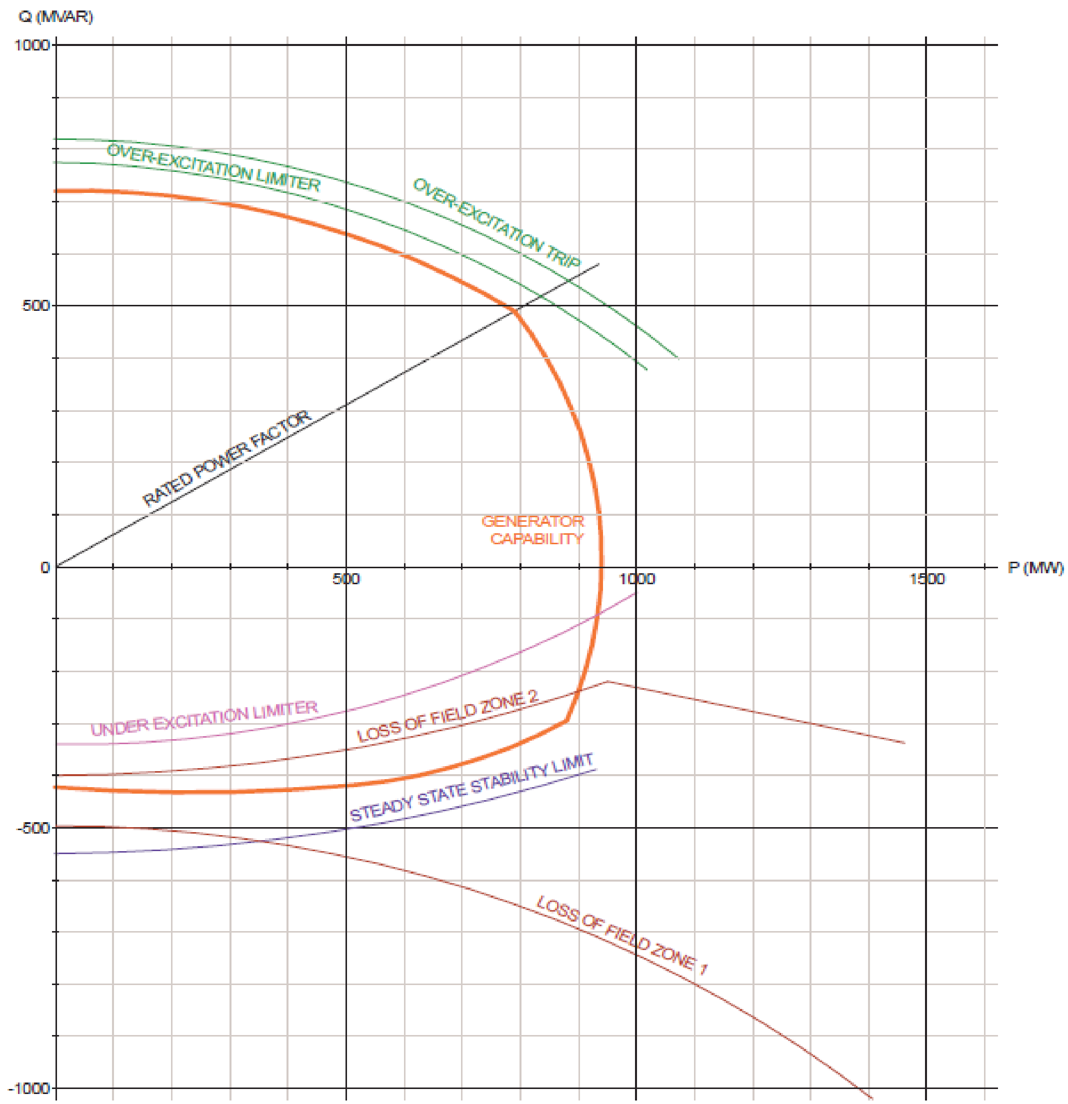
$$R = V^2_g/2*(1/X_s+1/X_d)$$

On an R-X diagram using X_d as the direct axis saturated synchronous reactance of the generator, and X_s as the equivalent reactance between the generator terminals and the "infinite bus" including the reactance of the generator step-up transformer the SSSL is an arc with the center on the X axis with the center and radius described by the following equations:

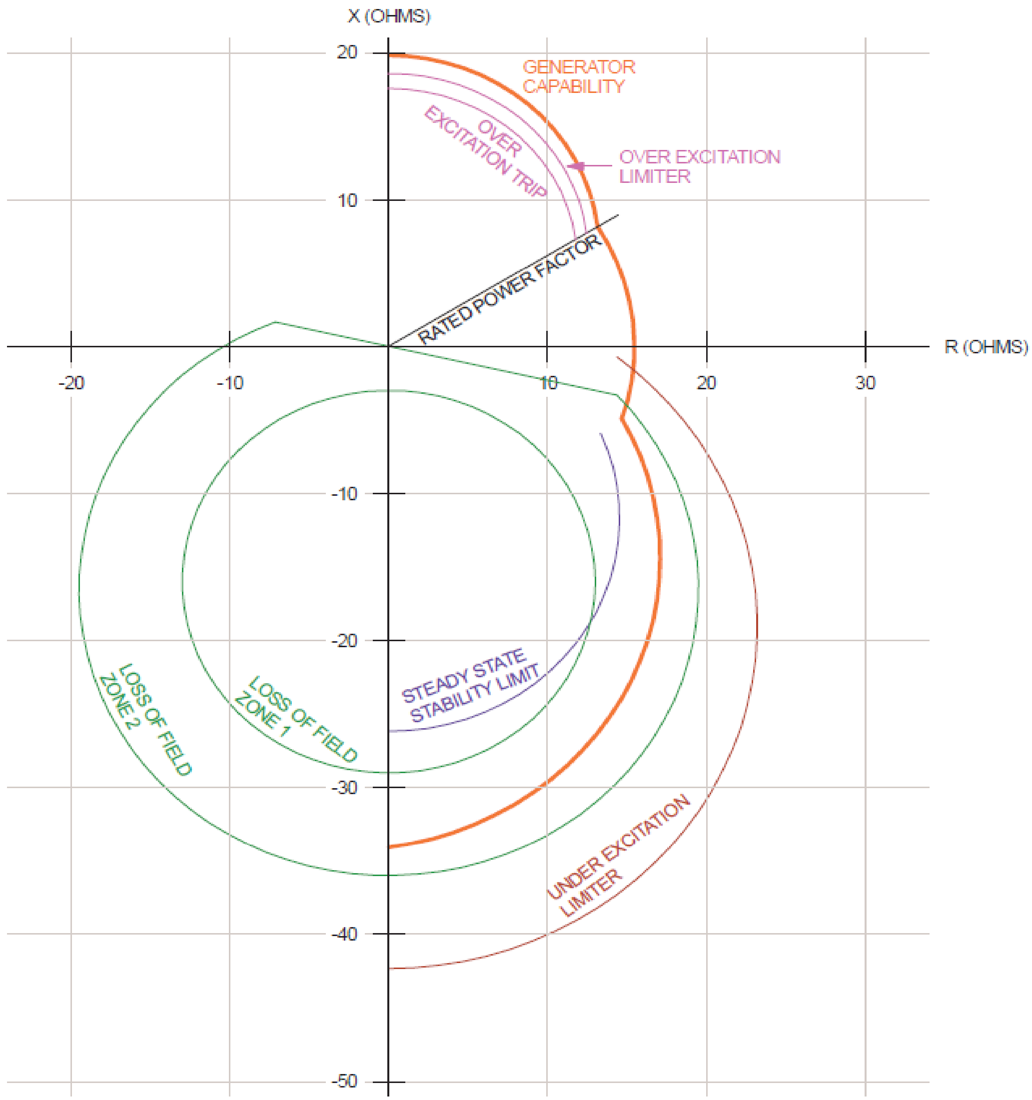
$$C = (X_d-X_s)/2$$

$$R = (X_d+X_s)/2$$

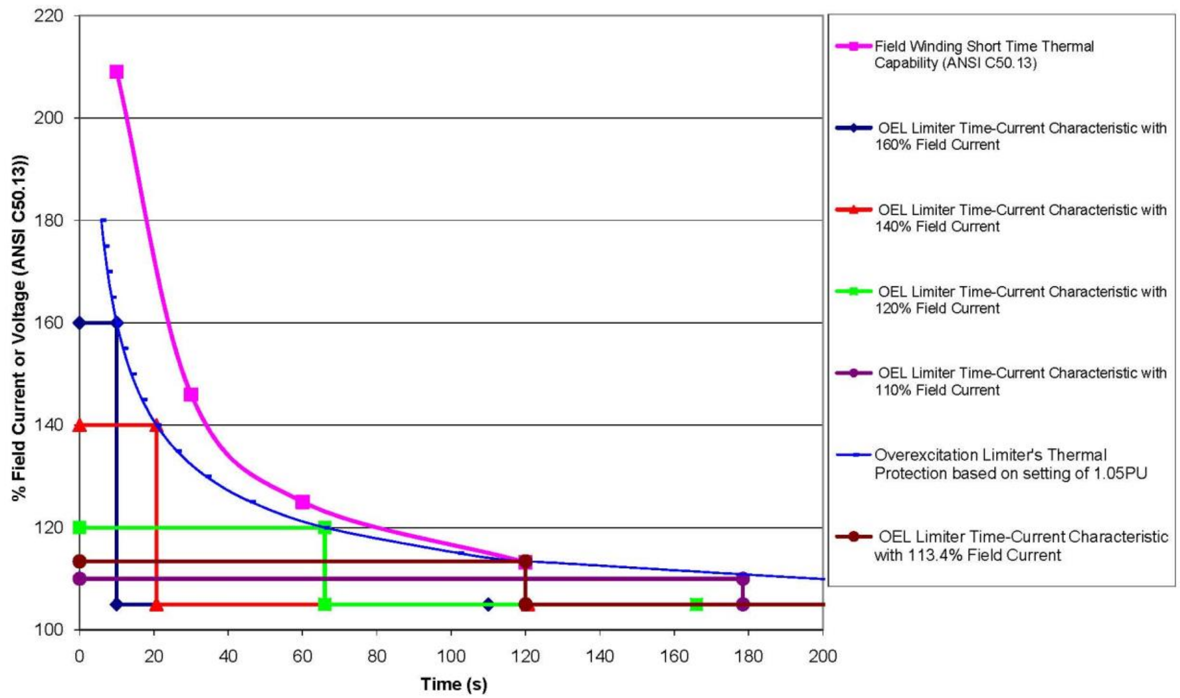
Section G Attachment 1 – Example of Capabilities, Limiters and Protection on a P-Q Diagram at nominal voltage and frequency



Section G Attachment 2 – Example of Capabilities, Limiters, and Protection on an R-X Diagram at nominal voltage and frequency



Section G Attachment 3 - Example of Capabilities, Limiters, and Protection on an Inverse Time Characteristic Plot



Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for Facilities section 4.2.3.1

For those dispersed power producing facilities that only perform voltage regulating control at the individual generating unit level, the SDT believes that coordination should take place at the individual generating unit level of the dispersed power producing resource. These facilities need to consider the Protection Systems at the individual units and their compatibility with the reactive and voltage limitations of the units. Where voltage regulating control is done at an aggregate level, applicability is already included under Facilities section 4.2.3.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-019-2 — Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Regulating Controls, and Protection

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-019-2	All	07/01/2016	

Reliability Standard PRC-024-2

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Generator Frequency and Voltage Protective Relay Settings**
2. **Number:** PRC-024-2
3. **Purpose:** Ensure Generator Owners set their generator protective relays such that generating units remain connected during defined frequency and voltage excursions.
4. **Applicability:**

   4.1. Generator Owner
5. **Effective Date:**

   See the Implementation Plan for PRC-024-2.

B. Requirements

R1. Each Generator Owner that has generator frequency protective relaying[1] activated to trip its applicable generating unit(s) shall set its protective relaying such that the generator frequency protective relaying does not trip the applicable generating unit(s) within the “no trip zone” of PRC-024 Attachment 1, subject to the following exceptions:[2] *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*

- Generating unit(s) may trip if the protective functions (such as out-of-step functions or loss-of-field functions) operate due to an impending or actual loss of synchronism or, for asynchronous generating units, due to instability in power conversion control equipment.
- Generating unit(s) may trip if clearing a system fault necessitates disconnecting (a) generating unit(s).
- Generating unit(s) may trip within a portion of the “no trip zone” of PRC-024 Attachment 1 for documented and communicated regulatory or equipment limitations in accordance with Requirement R3.

R2. Each Generator Owner that has generator voltage protective relaying[1] activated to trip its applicable generating unit(s) shall set its protective relaying such that the generator voltage protective relaying does not trip the applicable generating unit(s) as a result of a

---

[1] Each Generator Owner is not required to have frequency or voltage protective relaying (including but not limited to frequency and voltage protective functions for discrete relays, volts per hertz relays evaluated at nominal frequency, multi-function protective devices or protective functions within control systems that directly trip or provide tripping signals to the generator based on frequency or voltage inputs) installed or activated on its unit.

[2] For frequency protective relays associated with dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition, this requirement applies to frequency protective relays applied on the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resources, as well as frequency protective relays applied on equipment from the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resource up to the point of interconnection.

voltage excursion (at the point of interconnection[3]) caused by an event on the transmission system external to the generating plant that remains within the "no trip zone" of PRC-024 Attachment 2.[4] If the Transmission Planner allows less stringent voltage relay settings than those required to meet PRC-024 Attachment 2, then the Generator Owner shall set its protective relaying within the voltage recovery characteristics of a location-specific Transmission Planner's study. Requirement R2 is subject to the following exceptions: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*

- Generating unit(s) may trip in accordance with a Special Protection System (SPS) or Remedial Action Scheme (RAS).
- Generating unit(s) may trip if clearing a system fault necessitates disconnecting (a) generating unit(s).
- Generating unit(s) may trip by action of protective functions (such as out-of-step functions or loss-of-field functions) that operate due to an impending or actual loss of synchronism or, for asynchronous generating units, due to instability in power conversion control equipment.
- Generating unit(s) may trip within a portion of the "no trip zone" of PRC-024 Attachment 2 for documented and communicated regulatory or equipment limitations in accordance with Requirement R3.

R3. Each Generator Owner shall document each known regulatory or equipment limitation[5] that prevents an applicable generating unit with generator frequency or voltage protective relays from meeting the relay setting criteria in Requirements R1 or R2 including (but not limited to) study results, experience from an actual event, or manufacturer's advice. *[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*

3.1. The Generator Owner shall communicate the documented regulatory or equipment limitation, or the removal of a previously documented regulatory or equipment limitation, to its Planning Coordinator and Transmission Planner within 30 calendar days of any of the following:

- Identification of a regulatory or equipment limitation.
- Repair of the equipment causing the limitation that removes the limitation.
- Replacement of the equipment causing the limitation with equipment that removes the limitation.

---

[3] For the purposes of this standard, point of interconnection means the transmission (high voltage) side of the generator step-up or collector transformer.

[4] For voltage protective relays associated with dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition, this requirement applies to voltage protective relays applied on the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resources, as well as voltage protective relays applied on equipment from the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resource up to the point of interconnection.

[5] Excludes limitations that are caused by the setting capability of the generator frequency and voltage protective relays themselves but does not exclude limitations originating in the equipment that they protect.

- Creation or adjustment of an equipment limitation caused by consumption of the cumulative turbine life-time frequency excursion allowance.

R4. Each Generator Owner shall provide its applicable generator protection trip settings associated with Requirements R1 and R2 to the Planning Coordinator or Transmission Planner that models the associated unit within 60 calendar days of receipt of a written request for the data and within 60 calendar days of any change to those previously requested trip settings unless directed by the requesting Planning Coordinator or Transmission Planner that the reporting of relay setting changes is not required. *[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

C. Measures

M1. Each Generator Owner shall have evidence that generator frequency protective relays have been set in accordance with Requirement R1 such as dated setting sheets, calibration sheets or other documentation.

M2. Each Generator Owner shall have evidence that generator voltage protective relays have been set in accordance with Requirement R2 such as dated setting sheets, voltage-time curves, calibration sheets, coordination plots, dynamic simulation studies or other documentation.

M3. Each Generator Owner shall have evidence that it has documented and communicated any known regulatory or equipment limitations (excluding limitations noted in footnote 3) that resulted in an exception to Requirements R1 or R2 in accordance with Requirement R3 such as a dated email or letter that contains such documentation as study results, experience from an actual event, or manufacturer's advice.

Each Generator Owner shall have evidence that it communicated applicable generator protective relay trip settings in accordance with Requirement R4, such as dated e-mails, correspondence or other evidence and copies of any requests it has received for that information.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

The Regional Entity shall serve as the Compliance Enforcement Authority (CEA) unless the applicable entity is owned, operated, or controlled by the Regional Entity. In such cases, the ERO or a Regional Entity approved by FERC or other applicable governmental authority shall serve as the CEA.

1.2. Data Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Generator Owner shall retain evidence of compliance with Requirement R1 through R4; for 3 years or until the next audit, whichever is longer.

If a Generator Owner is found non-compliant, the Generator Owner shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is complete and approved for the time period specified above, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None

2. Violation Severity Levels

R #	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	N/A	N/A	N/A	The Generator Owner that has frequency protection activated to trip a generating unit, failed to set its generator frequency protective relaying so that it does not trip within the criteria listed in Requirement R1 unless there is a documented and communicated regulatory or equipment limitation per Requirement R3.
R2	N/A	N/A	N/A	The Generator Owner with voltage protective relaying activated to trip a generating unit, failed to set its voltage protective relaying so that it does not trip as a result of a voltage excursion at the point of interconnection, caused by an event external to the plant per the criteria specified in Requirement R2 unless there is a documented and communicated regulatory or equipment limitation per Requirement R3.
R3	The Generator Owner documented the known non-protection system equipment limitation that prevented it from meeting the criteria in Requirement R1 or R2 and communicated the documented limitation to its Planning Coordinator and Transmission Planner more than 30 calendar days but less than or equal to 60 calendar days of identifying the limitation.	The Generator Owner documented the known non-protection system equipment limitation that prevented it from meeting the criteria in Requirement R1 or R2 and communicated the documented limitation to its Planning Coordinator and Transmission Planner more than 60 calendar days but less than or equal to 90 calendar days of identifying the limitation.	The Generator Owner documented the known non-protection system equipment limitation that prevented it from meeting the criteria in Requirement R1 or R2 and communicated the documented limitation to its Planning Coordinator and Transmission Planner more than 90 calendar days but less than or equal to 120 calendar days of identifying the limitation.	The Generator Owner failed to document any known non-protection system equipment limitation that prevented it from meeting the criteria in Requirement R1 or R2. OR The Generator Owner failed to communicate the documented limitation to its Planning Coordinator and Transmission Planner within 120 calendar days of identifying the limitation.

R #	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R4	The Generator Owner provided its generator protection trip settings more than 60 calendar days but less than or equal to 90 calendar days of any change to those trip settings. OR The Generator Owner provided trip settings more than 60 calendar days but less than or equal to 90 calendar days of a written request.	The Generator Owner provided its generator protection trip settings more than 90 calendar days but less than or equal to 120 calendar days of any change to those trip settings. OR The Generator Owner provided trip settings more than 90 calendar days but less than or equal to 120 calendar days of a written request.	The Generator Owner provided its generator protection trip settings more than 120 calendar days but less than or equal to 150 calendar days of any change to those trip settings. OR The Generator Owner provided trip settings more than 120 calendar days but less than or equal to 150 calendar days of a written request.	The Generator Owner failed to provide its generator protection trip settings within 150 calendar days of any change to those trip settings. OR The Generator Owner failed to provide trip settings within 150 calendar days of a written request.

E. Regional Variances

None

F. Associated Documents

None

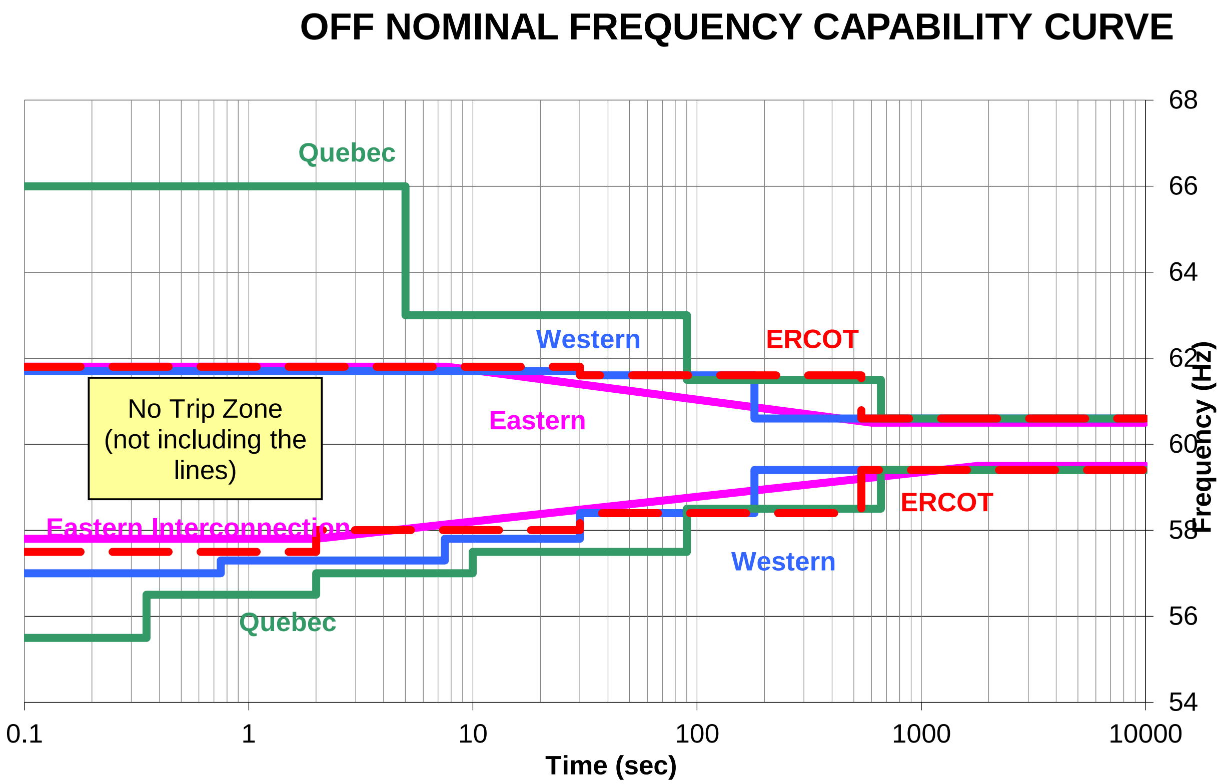
Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
1	May 9, 2013	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	
1	March 20, 2014	FERC Order issued approving PRC-024-1. (Order becomes effective on 7/1/16.)	
2	February 12, 2015	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Standard revised in Project 2014-01: Applicability revised to clarify application of requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
2	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving PRC-024-2	Modifications to adjust the applicability to owners of dispersed generation resources.

G. References

1. "The Technical Justification for the New WECC Voltage Ride-Through (VRT) Standard, A White Paper Developed by the Wind Generation Task Force (WGTF)," dated June 13, 2007, a guideline approved by WECC Technical Studies Subcommittee.

PRC-024 — Attachment 1



Curve Data Points:

Eastern Interconnection

High Frequency Duration		Low Frequency Duration	
Frequency (Hz)	**Time (Sec)**	**Frequency (Hz)**	**Time (sec)**
≥61.8	Instantaneous trip	≤57.8	Instantaneous trip
≥60.5	$10^{(90.935-1.45713*f)}$	≤59.5	$10^{(1.7373*f-100.116)}$
<60.5	Continuous operation	> 59.5	Continuous operation

Western Interconnection

High Frequency Duration		Low Frequency Duration	
Frequency (Hz)	Time (Sec)	Frequency (Hz)	Time (sec)
≥61.7	Instantaneous trip	≤57.0	Instantaneous trip
≥61.6	30	≤57.3	0.75
≥60.6	180	≤57.8	7.5
<60.6	Continuous operation	≤58.4	30
		≤59.4	180
		>59.4	Continuous operation

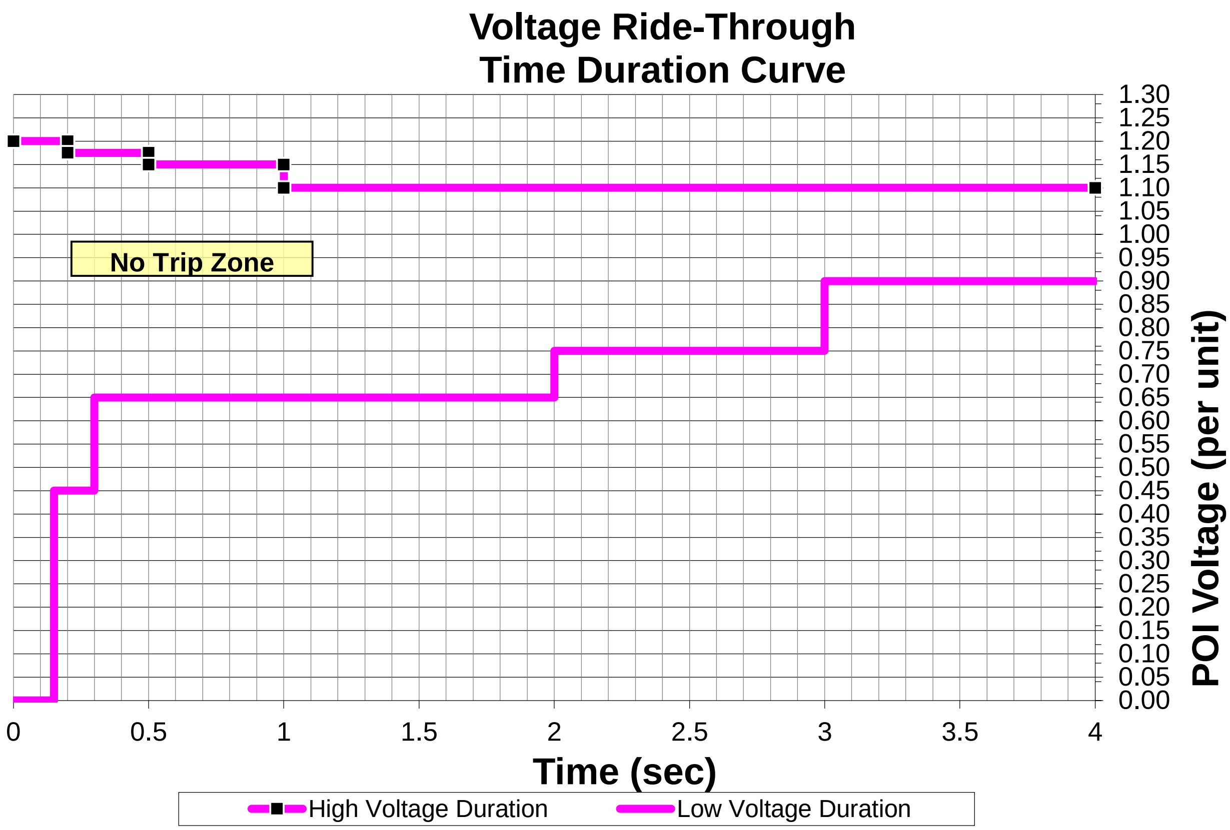
Quebec Interconnection

High Frequency Duration		Low Frequency Duration	
Frequency (Hz)	Time (Sec)	Frequency (Hz)	Time (Sec)
>66.0	Instantaneous trip	<55.5	Instantaneous trip
≥63.0	5	≤56.5	0.35
≥61.5	90	≤57.0	2
≥60.6	660	≤57.5	10
<60.6	Continuous operation	≤58.5	90
		≤59.4	660
		>59.4	Continuous operation

ERCOT Interconnection

High Frequency Duration		Low Frequency Duration	
Frequency (Hz)	Time (Sec)	Frequency (Hz)	Time (sec)
≥61.8	Instantaneous trip	≤57.5	Instantaneous trip
≥61.6	30	≤58.0	2
≥60.6	540	≤58.4	30
<60.6	Continuous operation	≤59.4	540
		>59.4	Continuous operation

PRC-024— Attachment 2



Ride Through Duration:

High Voltage Ride Through Duration		Low Voltage Ride Through Duration	
Voltage (pu)	Time (sec)	Voltage (pu)	Time (sec)
≥1.200	Instantaneous trip	<0.45	0.15
≥1.175	0.20	<0.65	0.30
≥1.15	0.50	<0.75	2.00
≥1.10	1.00	<0.90	3.00

Voltage Ride-Through Curve Clarifications

Curve Details:

1. The per unit voltage base for these curves is the nominal operating voltage specified by the Transmission Planner in the analysis of the reliability of the Interconnected Transmission Systems at the point of interconnection to the Bulk Electric System (BES).
2. The curves depicted were derived based on three-phase transmission system zone 1 faults with Normal Clearing not exceeding 9 cycles. The curves apply to voltage excursions regardless of the type of initiating event.
3. The envelope within the curves represents the cumulative voltage duration at the point of interconnection with the BES. For example, if the voltage first exceeds 1.15 pu at 0.3 seconds after a fault, does not exceed 1.2 pu voltage, and returns below 1.15 pu at 0.4 seconds, then the cumulative time the voltage is above 1.15 pu voltage is 0.1 seconds and is within the no trip zone of the curve.
4. The curves depicted assume system frequency is 60 Hertz. When evaluating Volts/Hertz protection, you may adjust the magnitude of the high voltage curve in proportion to deviations of frequency below 60 Hz.
5. Voltages in the curve assume minimum fundamental frequency phase-to-ground or phase-to-phase voltage for the low voltage duration curve and the greater of maximum RMS or crest phase-to-phase voltage for the high voltage duration curve.

Evaluating Protective Relay Settings:

1. Use either the following assumptions or loading conditions that are believed to be the most probable for the unit under study to evaluate voltage protection relay setting calculations on the static case for steady state initial conditions:
   a. All of the units connected to the same transformer are online and operating.
   b. All of the units are at full nameplate real-power output.
   c. Power factor is 0.95 lagging (i.e. supplying reactive power to the system) as measured at the generator terminals.
   d. The automatic voltage regulator is in automatic voltage control mode.
2. Evaluate voltage protection relay settings assuming that additional installed generating plant reactive support equipment (such as static VAr compensators, synchronous condensers, or capacitors) is available and operating normally.
3. Evaluate voltage protection relay settings accounting for the actual tap settings of transformers between the generator terminals and the point of interconnection.

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for Footnotes 4 and 6

The SDT has determined it is appropriate to require that protective relay settings applied on both the individual generating units and aggregating equipment (including any non-Bulk Electric System collection system equipment) are set respecting the “no-trip zone” referenced in the requirements to maintain reliability of the BES. If any of the protective relay settings applied on these elements of the facility were to be excluded from this standard, the potential would exist for portions of or the entire generating capacity of the dispersed power producing facility to be lost during a voltage or frequency excursion.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-024-2 — Generator Frequency and Voltage Protective Relay Settings

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-024-2	All	07/01/2016	

Reliability Standard VAR-002-4

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Generator Operation for Maintaining Network Voltage Schedules**

2. **Number:** VAR-002-4

3. **Purpose:** To ensure generators provide reactive support and voltage control, within generating Facility capabilities, in order to protect equipment and maintain reliable operation of the Interconnection.

4. **Applicability:**

   4.1. Generator Operator

   4.2. Generator Owner

5. **Effective Dates**

   See Implementation Plan.

B. Requirements and Measures

R1. The Generator Operator shall operate each generator connected to the interconnected transmission system in the automatic voltage control mode (with its automatic voltage regulator (AVR) in service and controlling voltage) or in a different control mode as instructed by the Transmission Operator unless: 1) the generator is exempted by the Transmission Operator, or 2) the Generator Operator has notified the Transmission Operator of one of the following: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

- That the generator is being operated in start-up,[1] shutdown,[2] or testing mode pursuant to a Real-time communication or a procedure that was previously provided to the Transmission Operator; or
- That the generator is not being operated in automatic voltage control mode or in the control mode that was instructed by the Transmission Operator for a reason other than start-up, shutdown, or testing.

M1. The Generator Operator shall have evidence to show that it notified its associated Transmission Operator any time it failed to operate a generator in the automatic voltage control mode or in a different control mode as specified in Requirement R1. If a generator is being started up or shut down with the automatic voltage control off, or is being tested, and no notification of the AVR status is made to the Transmission Operator, the Generator Operator will have evidence that it notified the Transmission Operator of its procedure for placing the unit into automatic voltage control mode as required in Requirement R1. Such evidence may include, but is not limited to, dated evidence of transmittal of the procedure such as an electronic message or a transmittal letter with the procedure included or attached. If a generator is exempted, the Generator Operator shall also have evidence that the generator is exempted from being in automatic voltage control mode (with its AVR in service and controlling voltage).

R2. Unless exempted by the Transmission Operator, each Generator Operator shall maintain the generator voltage or Reactive Power schedule[3] (within each generating Facility's capabilities[4]) provided by the Transmission Operator, or otherwise shall meet the conditions of notification for deviations from the voltage or Reactive Power schedule provided by the Transmission Operator. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

2.1. When a generator's AVR is out of service or the generator does not have an AVR, the Generator Operator shall use an alternative method to control the generator reactive output to meet the voltage or Reactive Power schedule provided by the Transmission Operator.

2.2. When instructed to modify voltage, the Generator Operator shall comply or provide an explanation of why the schedule cannot be met.

2.3. Generator Operators that do not monitor the voltage at the location specified in their voltage schedule shall have a methodology for converting the scheduled voltage specified by the Transmission Operator to the voltage point being monitored by the Generator Operator.

M2. In order to identify when a generator is deviating from its schedule, the Generator Operator will monitor voltage based on existing equipment at its Facility. The Generator Operator shall have evidence to show that the generator maintained the voltage or Reactive Power schedule provided by the Transmission Operator, or shall have evidence of meeting the conditions of notification for deviations from the voltage or Reactive Power schedule provided by the Transmission Operator. Evidence may include, but is not limited to, operator logs, SCADA data, phone logs, and any other notifications that would alert the Transmission Operator or otherwise demonstrate that the Generator Operator complied with the Transmission Operator's instructions for addressing deviations from the voltage or Reactive Power schedule.

For Part 2.1, when a generator's AVR is out of service or the generator does not have an AVR, a Generator Operator shall have evidence to show an alternative method was used to control the generator reactive output to meet the voltage or Reactive Power schedule provided by the Transmission Operator.

---

[1] Start-up is deemed to have ended when the generator is ramped up to its minimum continuously sustainable load and the generator is prepared for continuous operation.
[2] Shutdown is deemed to begin when the generator is ramped down to its minimum continuously sustainable load and the generator is prepared to go offline.
[3] The voltage or Reactive Power schedule is a target value with a tolerance band or a voltage or Reactive Power range communicated by the Transmission Operator to the Generator Operator.
[4] Generating Facility capability may be established by test or other means, and may not be sufficient at times to pull the system voltage within the schedule tolerance band. Also, when a generator is operating in manual control, reactive power capability may change based on stability considerations.

For Part 2.2, the Generator Operator shall have evidence that it complied with the Transmission Operator's instructions to modify its voltage or provided an explanation to the Transmission Operator of why the Generator Operator was unable to comply with the instruction. Evidence may include, but is not limited to, operator logs, SCADA data, and phone logs.

For Part 2.3, for Generator Operators that do not monitor the voltage at the location specified on the voltage schedule, the Generator Operator shall demonstrate the methodology for converting the scheduled voltage specified by the Transmission Operator to the voltage point being monitored by the Generator Operator.

R3. Each Generator Operator shall notify its associated Transmission Operator of a status change on the AVR, power system stabilizer, or alternative voltage controlling device within 30 minutes of the change. If the status has been restored within 30 minutes of such change, then the Generator Operator is not required to notify the Transmission Operator of the status change *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

M3. The Generator Operator shall have evidence it notified its associated Transmission Operator within 30 minutes of any status change identified in Requirement R3. If the status has been restored within the first 30 minutes, no notification is necessary.

R4. Each Generator Operator shall notify its associated Transmission Operator within 30 minutes of becoming aware of a change in reactive capability due to factors other than a status change described in Requirement R3. If the capability has been restored within 30 minutes of the Generator Operator becoming aware of such change, then the Generator Operator is not required to notify the Transmission Operator of the change in reactive capability. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

- Reporting of status or capability changes as stated in Requirement R4 is not applicable to the individual generating units of dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition.

M4. The Generator Operator shall have evidence it notified its associated Transmission Operator within 30 minutes of becoming aware of a change in reactive capability in accordance with Requirement R4. If the capability has been restored within the first 30 minutes, no notification is necessary.

R5. The Generator Owner shall provide the following to its associated Transmission Operator and Transmission Planner within 30 calendar days of a request. *[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

5.1. For generator step-up and auxiliary transformers[5] with primary voltages equal to or greater than the generator terminal voltage:

5.1.1. Tap settings.

5.1.2. Available fixed tap ranges.

5.1.3. Impedance data.

M5. The Generator Owner shall have evidence it provided its associated Transmission Operator and Transmission Planner with information on its step-up and auxiliary transformers as required in Requirement R5, Part 5.1.1 through Part 5.1.3 within 30 calendar days.

R6. After consultation with the Transmission Operator regarding necessary step-up transformer tap changes, the Generator Owner shall ensure that transformer tap positions are changed according to the specifications provided by the Transmission Operator, unless such action would violate safety, an equipment rating, a regulatory requirement, or a statutory requirement. *[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

6.1. If the Generator Owner cannot comply with the Transmission Operator's specifications, the Generator Owner shall notify the Transmission Operator and shall provide the technical justification.

M6. The Generator Owner shall have evidence that its step-up transformer taps were modified per the Transmission Operator's documentation in accordance with Requirement R6. The Generator Owner shall have evidence that it notified its associated Transmission Operator when it could not comply with the Transmission Operator's step-up transformer tap specifications in accordance with Requirement R6, Part 6.1.

[5] For dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition, this requirement applies only to those transformers that have at least one winding at a voltage of 100 kV or above.

C. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process:

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority:

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, “Compliance Enforcement Authority” refers to NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Evidence Retention:

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Generator Owner shall keep its latest version of documentation on its step-up and auxiliary transformers. The Generator Operator shall maintain all other evidence for the current and previous calendar year.

The Compliance Monitor shall retain any audit data for three years.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes:

“Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes” refers to the identification of the processes that will be used to evaluate data or information for the purpose of assessing performance or outcomes with the associated reliability standard.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information:

None.

Table of Compliance Elements

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	**Real-time Operations**	**Medium**	N/A	N/A	N/A	Unless exempted, the Generator Operator did not operate each generator connected to the interconnected transmission system in the automatic voltage control mode or in a different control mode as instructed by the Transmission Operator, and failed to provide the required notifications to Transmission Operator as identified in Requirement R1.
R2	**Real-time Operations**	**Medium**	N/A	N/A	The Generator Operator did not have a conversion methodology when it monitors voltage at a location different from the schedule provided by the Transmission Operator.	The Generator Operator did not maintain the voltage or Reactive Power schedule as instructed by the Transmission Operator and did not make the necessary notifications required by the Transmission Operator. OR The Generator Operator did not have an operating AVR, and the responsible entity did not use an alternative method for controlling voltage. OR The Generator Operator did not modify voltage when directed, and the

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
						responsible entity did not provide any explanation.
R3	**Real-time Operations**	**Medium**	N/A	N/A	N/A	The Generator Operator did not make the required notification within 30 minutes of the status change.
R4	**Real-time Operations**	**Medium**	N/A	N/A	N/A	The Generator Operator did not make the required notification within 30 minutes of becoming aware of the capability change.
R5	**Real-time Operations**	**Lower**	N/A	N/A	The Generator Owner failed to provide its associated Transmission Operator and Transmission Planner one of the types of data specified in Requirement R5 Parts 5.1.1, 5.1.2, and 5.1.3.	The Generator Owner failed to provide to its associated Transmission Operator and Transmission Planner two or more of the types of data specified in Requirement R5 Parts 5.1.1, 5.1.2, and 5.1.3.
R6	**Real-time Operations**	**Lower**	N/A	N/A	N/A	The Generator Owner did not ensure the tap changes were made according the Transmission Operator's specifications.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
						OR The Generator Owner failed to perform the tap changes, and the Generator Owner did not provide technical justification for why it could not comply with the Transmission Operator specifications.

D. Regional Variances

None.

E. Interpretations

None.

F. Associated Documents

None.

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
1	5/1/2006	Added "(R2)" to the end of levels on non-compliance 2.1.2, 2.2.2, 2.3.2, and 2.4.3.	July 5, 2006
1a	12/19/2007	Added Appendix 1 – Interpretation of R1 and R2 approved by BOT on August 1, 2007	Revised
1a	1/16/2007	In Section A.2., Added "a" to end of standard number. Section F: added "1."; and added date.	Errata
1.1a	10/29/2008	BOT adopted errata changes; updated version number to "1.1a"	Errata
1.1b	3/3/2009	Added Appendix 2 – Interpretation of VAR-002-1.1a approved by BOT on February 10, 2009	Revised
2b	4/16/2013	Revised R1 to address an Interpretation Request. Also added previously approved VRFs, Time Horizons and VSLs. Revised R2 to address consistency issue with VAR-001-2, R4. FERC Order issued approving VAR-002-2b.	Revised
3	5/5/2014	Revised under Project 2013-04 to address outstanding Order 693 directives.	Revised
3	5/7/2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
3	8/1/2014	Approved by FERC in docket RD14-11-000	
4	8/27/2014	Revised under Project 2014-01 to clarify applicability of Requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources.	Revised

4	11/13/2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
4	5/29/2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving VAR-002-4	

Guidelines and Technical Basis

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for R1:

This requirement has been maintained due to the importance of running a unit with its automatic voltage regulator (AVR) in service and in either voltage controlling mode or the mode instructed by the TOP. However, the requirement has been modified to allow for testing, and the measure has been updated to include some of the evidence that can be used for compliance purposes.

Rationale for R2:

Requirement R2 details how a Generator Operator (GOP) operates its generator(s) to provide voltage support and when the GOP is expected to notify the Transmission Operator (TOP). In an effort to remove prescriptive notification requirements for the entire continent, the VAR-002-3 standard drafting team (SDT) opted to allow each TOP to determine the notification requirements for each of its respective GOPs based on system requirements. Additionally, a new Part 2.3 has been added to detail that each GOP may monitor voltage by using its existing facility equipment.

Conversion Methodology: There are many ways to convert the voltage schedule from one voltage level to another. Some entities may choose to develop voltage regulation curves for their transformers; others may choose to do a straight ratio conversion; others may choose an entirely different methodology. All of these methods have technical challenges, but the studies performed by the TOP, which consider N-1 and credible N-2 contingencies, should compensate for the error introduced by these methodologies, and the TOP possesses the authority to direct the GOP to modify its output if its performance is not satisfactory. During a significant system event, such as a voltage collapse, even a generation unit in automatic voltage control that controls based on the low-side of the generator step-up transformer should see the event on the low-side of the generator step-up transformer and respond accordingly.

Voltage Schedule Tolerances: The bandwidth that accompanies the voltage target in a voltage schedule should reflect the anticipated fluctuation in voltage at the GOP's Facility during normal operations and be based on the TOP's assessment of N-1 and credible N-2 system contingencies. The voltage schedule's bandwidth should not be confused with the control dead-band that is programmed into a GOP's AVR control system, which should be adjusting the AVR prior to reaching either end of the voltage schedule's bandwidth.

Rationale for R3:

This requirement has been modified to limit the notifications required when an AVR goes out of service and quickly comes back in service. Notifications of this type of status change provide little to no benefit to reliability. Thirty (30) minutes have been built into the requirement to allow a GOP time to resolve an issue before having to notify the TOP of a status change. The requirement has also been amended to remove the sub-requirement to provide an estimate for the expected duration of the status change.

Rationale for R4:

This requirement has been bifurcated from the prior version VAR-002-2b Requirement R3. This requirement allows GOPs to report reactive capability changes after they are made aware of the change. The current standard requires notification as soon as the change occurs, but many GOPs are not aware of a reactive capability change until it has taken place.

Rationale for Exclusion in R4:

VAR-002 addresses control and management of reactive resources and provides voltage control where it has an impact on the BES. For dispersed power producing resources as identified in Inclusion I4, Requirement R4 should not apply at the individual generator level due to the unique characteristics and small scale of individual dispersed power producing resources. In addition, other standards such as proposed TOP-003 require the Generator Operator to provide Real-time data as directed by the TOP.

Rationale for R5:

This requirement and corresponding measure have been maintained due to the importance of having accurate tap settings. If the tap setting is not properly set, then the VARs available from that unit can be affected. The prior version of VAR-002-2b, Requirement R4.1.4 (the +/- voltage range with step-change in % for load-tap changing transformers) has been removed. The percentage information was not needed because the tap settings, ranges and impedance are required. Those inputs can be used to calculate the step-change percentage if needed.

Rationale for Exclusion in R5:

The Transmission Operator and Transmission Planner only need to review tap settings, available fixed tap ranges, impedance data and the +/- voltage range with step-change in % for load-tap changing transformers on main generator step-up unit transformers which connect dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition to their transmission system. The dispersed power producing resources individual generator transformers are not intended, designed or installed to improve voltage performance at the point of interconnection. In addition, the dispersed power producing resources individual generator transformers have traditionally been excluded from Requirement R4 and R5 of VAR- 002-2b (similar requirements are R5 and R6 for VAR-002-3), as they are not used to improve voltage performance at the point of interconnection.

Rationale for R6:

This requirement and corresponding measure have been maintained due to the importance of having accurate tap settings. If the tap setting is not properly set, then the VARs available from that unit can be affected.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard VAR-002-4 — Generator Operation for Maintaining Network Voltage Schedules

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
VAR-002-4	All	05/29/2015	

Exhibit A (3): Updated *NERC Glossary of Terms*

NERC
NORTH AMERICAN ELECTRIC
RELIABILITY CORPORATION

Glossary of Terms Used in NERC Reliability Standards

Updated May 19, 2015

Introduction:
This Glossary lists each term that was defined for use in one or more of NERC's continent-wide or Regional Reliability Standards and adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees from February 8, 2005 through May 19, 2015.

This reference is divided into two sections, and each section is organized in alphabetical order. The first section identifies all terms that have been adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees for use in continent-wide standards; the second section identifies all terms that have been adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees for use in regional standards. (WECC, NPCC and RF are the only Regions that have definitions approved by the NERC Board of Trustees. If other Regions develop definitions for approved Regional Standards using a NERC-approved standards development process, those definitions will be added to the Regional Definitions section of this glossary.)

Most of the terms identified in this glossary were adopted as part of the development of NERC's initial set of reliability standards, called the "Version 0" standards. Subsequent to the development of Version 0 standards, new definitions have been developed and approved following NERC's Reliability Standards Development Process, and added to this glossary following board adoption, with the "FERC approved" date added following a final Order approving the definition.

Immediately under each term is a link to the archive for the development of that term.

- Definitions that have been adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees but have not been approved by FERC, or FERC has not approved but has directed be modified, are shaded in blue.
- Definitions that have been remanded or retired are shaded in orange.
- Definitions that have been approved by FERC are white.

Any comments regarding this glossary should be reported to the following:
sarcomm@nerc.com with "Glossary Comment" in the subject line.

Continent-wide Definitions:

Regional Definitions:

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approval Date	FERC Approval Date	Definition
Adequacy [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The ability of the electric system to supply the aggregate electrical demand and energy requirements of the end-use customers at all times, taking into account scheduled and reasonably expected unscheduled outages of system elements.
Adjacent Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A Balancing Authority Area that is interconnected another Balancing Authority Area either directly or via a multi-party agreement or transmission tariff.
Adjacent Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	A Balancing Authority whose Balancing Authority Area is interconnected with another Balancing Authority Area either directly or via a multi-party agreement or transmission tariff.
Adverse Reliability Impact [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	The impact of an event that results in frequency-related instability; unplanned tripping of load or generation; or uncontrolled separation or cascading outages that affects a widespread area of the Interconnection.
Adverse Reliability Impact [Archive]		8/4/2011		The impact of an event that results in Bulk Electric System instability or Cascading.
After the Fact [Archive]	ATF	10/29/2008	12/17/2009	A time classification assigned to an RFI when the submittal time is greater than one hour after the start time of the RFI.
Agreement [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A contract or arrangement, either written or verbal and sometimes enforceable by law.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approval Date	FERC Approval Date	Definition
Alternative Interpersonal Communication [Archive]		11/7/2012	4/16/2015 (Becomes effective 10/1/2015)	Any Interpersonal Communication that is able to serve as a substitute for, and does not utilize the same infrastructure (medium) as, Interpersonal Communication used for day-to-day operation.
Altitude Correction Factor [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	A multiplier applied to specify distances, which adjusts the distances to account for the change in relative air density (RAD) due to altitude from the RAD used to determine the specified distance. Altitude correction factors apply to both minimum worker approach distances and to minimum vegetation clearance distances.
Ancillary Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Those services that are necessary to support the transmission of capacity and energy from resources to loads while maintaining reliable operation of the Transmission Service Provider's transmission system in accordance with good utility practice. (*From FERC order 888-A.*)
Anti-Aliasing Filter [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An analog filter installed at a metering point to remove the high frequency components of the signal over the AGC sample period.
Area Control Error [Archive]	ACE	2/8/2005	3/16/2007 (Becomes inactive 3/31/14)	The instantaneous difference between a Balancing Authority's net actual and scheduled interchange, taking into account the effects of Frequency Bias and correction for meter error.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approval Date	FERC Approval Date	Definition
Area Control Error [Archive]	ACE	12/19/2012	10/16/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2014)	The instantaneous difference between a Balancing Authority's net actual and scheduled interchange, taking into account the effects of Frequency Bias, correction for meter error, and Automatic Time Error Correction (ATEC), if operating in the ATEC mode. ATEC is only applicable to Balancing Authorities in the Western Interconnection.
Area Interchange Methodology [Archive]		08/22/2008	11/24/2009	The Area Interchange methodology is characterized by determination of incremental transfer capability via simulation, from which Total Transfer Capability (TTC) can be mathematically derived. Capacity Benefit Margin, Transmission Reliability Margin, and Existing Transmission Commitments are subtracted from the TTC, and Postbacks and counterflows are added, to derive Available Transfer Capability. Under the Area Interchange Methodology, TTC results are generally reported on an area to area basis.
Arranged Interchange [Archive]		5/2/2006	3/16/2007	The state where the Interchange Authority has received the Interchange information (initial or revised).
Arranged Interchange [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	The state where a Request for Interchange (initial or revised) has been submitted for approval.
Attaining Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	A Balancing Authority bringing generation or load into its effective control boundaries through a Dynamic Transfer from the Native Balancing Authority.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approval Date	FERC Approval Date	Definition
Automatic Generation Control [Archive]	AGC	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Equipment that automatically adjusts generation in a Balancing Authority Area from a central location to maintain the Balancing Authority's interchange schedule plus Frequency Bias. AGC may also accommodate automatic inadvertent payback and time error correction.
Available Flowgate Capability [Archive]	AFC	08/22/2008	11/24/2009	A measure of the flow capability remaining on a Flowgate for further commercial activity over and above already committed uses. It is defined as TFC less Existing Transmission Commitments (ETC), less a Capacity Benefit Margin, less a Transmission Reliability Margin, plus Postbacks, and plus counterflows.
Available Transfer Capability [Archive]	ATC	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A measure of the transfer capability remaining in the physical transmission network for further commercial activity over and above already committed uses. It is defined as Total Transfer Capability less existing transmission commitments (including retail customer service), less a Capacity Benefit Margin, less a Transmission Reliability Margin.
Available Transfer Capability [Archive]	ATC	08/22/2008	11/24/2009	A measure of the transfer capability remaining in the physical transmission network for further commercial activity over and above already committed uses. It is defined as Total Transfer Capability less Existing Transmission Commitments (including retail customer service), less a Capacity Benefit Margin, less a Transmission Reliability Margin, plus Postbacks, plus counterflows.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approval Date	FERC Approval Date	Definition
Available Transfer Capability Implementation Document [Archive]	ATCID	08/22/2008	11/24/2009	A document that describes the implementation of a methodology for calculating ATC or AFC, and provides information related to a Transmission Service Provider's calculation of ATC or AFC.
ATC Path [Archive]		08/22/2008	Not approved; Modification directed 11/24/09	Any combination of Point of Receipt and Point of Delivery for which ATC is calculated; and any Posted Path[1].

[1] See 18 CFR 37.6(b)(1)

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Balancing Authority [Archive]	BA	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The responsible entity that integrates resource plans ahead of time, maintains load-interchange-generation balance within a Balancing Authority Area, and supports Interconnection frequency in real time.
Balancing Authority Area [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The collection of generation, transmission, and loads within the metered boundaries of the Balancing Authority. The Balancing Authority maintains load-resource balance within this area.
Base Load [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The minimum amount of electric power delivered or required over a given period at a constant rate.
BES Cyber Asset [Archive]		11/26/2012	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	A Cyber Asset that if rendered unavailable, degraded, or misused would, within 15 minutes of its required operation, misoperation, or non-operation, adversely impact one or more Facilities, systems, or equipment, which, if destroyed, degraded, or otherwise rendered unavailable when needed, would affect the reliable operation of the Bulk Electric System. Redundancy of affected Facilities, systems, and equipment shall not be considered when determining adverse impact. Each BES Cyber Asset is included in one or more BES Cyber Systems. (A Cyber Asset is not a BES Cyber Asset if, for 30 consecutive calendar days or less, it is directly connected to a network within an ESP, a Cyber Asset within an ESP, or to a BES Cyber Asset, and it is used for data transfer, vulnerability assessment, maintenance, or troubleshooting purposes.)

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
BES Cyber Asset [Archive]	BCA	2/12/2015		A Cyber Asset that if rendered unavailable, degraded, or misused would, within 15 minutes of its required operation, misoperation, or non-operation, adversely impact one or more Facilities, systems, or equipment, which, if destroyed, degraded, or otherwise rendered unavailable when needed, would affect the reliable operation of the Bulk Electric System. Redundancy of affected Facilities, systems, and equipment shall not be considered when determining adverse impact. Each BES Cyber Asset is included in one or more BES Cyber Systems.
BES Cyber System [Archive]		11/26/2012	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	One or more BES Cyber Assets logically grouped by a responsible entity to perform one or more reliability tasks for a functional entity.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
BES Cyber System Information [Archive]		11/26/2012	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	Information about the BES Cyber System that could be used to gain unauthorized access or pose a security threat to the BES Cyber System. BES Cyber System Information does not include individual pieces of information that by themselves do not pose a threat or could not be used to allow unauthorized access to BES Cyber Systems, such as, but not limited to, device names, individual IP addresses without context, ESP names, or policy statements. Examples of BES Cyber System Information may include, but are not limited to, security procedures or security information about BES Cyber Systems, Physical Access Control Systems, and Electronic Access Control or Monitoring Systems that is not publicly available and could be used to allow unauthorized access or unauthorized distribution; collections of network addresses; and network topology of the BES Cyber System.
Blackstart Capability Plan [Archive]		2/8/2005 Will be retired when EOP-005-2 becomes enforceable on (7/1/13)	3/16/2007	A documented procedure for a generating unit or station to go from a shutdown condition to an operating condition delivering electric power without assistance from the electric system. This procedure is only a portion of an overall system restoration plan.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Blackstart Resource [Archive]		8/5/2009	3/17/2011	A generating unit(s) and its associated set of equipment which has the ability to be started without support from the System or is designed to remain energized without connection to the remainder of the System, with the ability to energize a bus, meeting the Transmission Operator's restoration plan needs for real and reactive power capability, frequency and voltage control, and that has been included in the Transmission Operator's restoration plan.
Block Dispatch [Archive]		08/22/2008	11/24/2009	A set of dispatch rules such that given a specific amount of load to serve, an approximate generation dispatch can be determined. To accomplish this, the capacity of a given generator is segmented into loadable "blocks," each of which is grouped and ordered relative to other blocks (based on characteristics including, but not limited to, efficiency, run of river or fuel supply considerations, and/or "must-run" status).
Bulk Electric System [Archive]	BES	2/8/2005	3/16/2007 (Becomes inactive on 6/30/2014)	As defined by the Regional Reliability Organization, the electrical generation resources, transmission lines, interconnections with neighboring systems, and associated equipment, generally operated at voltages of 100 kV or higher. Radial transmission facilities serving only load with one transmission source are generally not included in this definition.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Bulk Electric System[2] [Archive]	BES	01/18/2012	6/14/2013 (Replaced by BES definition FERC approved 3/20/2014)	Unless modified by the lists shown below, all Transmission Elements operated at 100 kV or higher and Real Power and Reactive Power resources connected at 100 kV or higher. This does not include facilities used in the local distribution of electric energy. **Inclusions:** • **I1** - Transformers with the primary terminal and at least one secondary terminal operated at 100 kV or higher unless excluded under Exclusion E1 or E3. • **I2** - Generating resource(s) with gross individual nameplate rating greater than 20 MVA or gross plant/facility aggregate nameplate rating greater than 75 MVA including the generator terminals through the high-side of the step-up transformer(s) connected at a voltage of 100 kV or above. • **I3** - Blackstart Resources identified in the Transmission Operator's restoration plan. • **I4** - Dispersed power producing resources with aggregate capacity greater than 75 MVA (gross aggregate nameplate rating) utilizing a system designed primarily for aggregating capacity, connected at a common point at a voltage of 100 kV or above.

[2] FERC issued an order on April 18, 2013 approving the revised definition with an effective date of July 1, 2013. On June 14, 2013, FERC granted NERC's request to extend the effective date of the revised definition of the Bulk Electric System to July 1, 2014.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Bulk Electric System **(Continued)**	BES			**I5** –Static or dynamic devices (excluding generators) dedicated to supplying or absorbing Reactive Power that are connected at 100 kV or higher, or through a dedicated transformer with a high-side voltage of 100 kV or higher, or through a transformer that is designated in Inclusion I1. **Exclusions:** • **E1** - Radial systems: A group of contiguous transmission Elements that emanates from a single point of connection of 100 kV or higher and: a) Only serves Load. Or, b) Only includes generation resources, not identified in Inclusion I3, with an aggregate capacity less than or equal to 75 MVA (gross nameplate rating). Or, c) Where the radial system serves Load and includes generation resources, not identified in Inclusion I3, with an aggregate capacity of non-retail generation less than or equal to 75 MVA (gross nameplate rating). Note – A normally open switching device between radial systems, as depicted on prints or one-line diagrams for example, does not affect this exclusion.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Bulk Electric System **(Continued)**	BES			• **E2** - A generating unit or multiple generating units on the customer's side of the retail meter that serve all or part of the retail Load with electric energy if: (i) the net capacity provided to the BES does not exceed 75 MVA, and (ii) standby, back-up, and maintenance power services are provided to the generating unit or multiple generating units or to the retail Load by a Balancing Authority, or provided pursuant to a binding obligation with a Generator Owner or Generator Operator, or under terms approved by the applicable regulatory authority. • **E3** - Local networks (LN): A group of contiguous transmission Elements operated at or above 100 kV but less than 300 kV that distribute power to Load rather than transfer bulk power across the interconnected system. LN's emanate from multiple points of connection at 100 kV or higher to improve the level of service to retail customer Load and not to accommodate bulk power transfer across the interconnected system. The LN is characterized by all of the following:

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Bulk Electric System **(Continued)**	BES			a) Limits on connected generation: The LN and its underlying Elements do not include generation resources identified in Inclusion I3 and do not have an aggregate capacity of non-retail generation greater than 75 MVA (gross nameplate rating); b) Power flows only into the LN and the LN does not transfer energy originating outside the LN for delivery through the LN; and c) Not part of a Flowgate or transfer path: The LN does not contain a monitored Facility of a permanent Flowgate in the Eastern Interconnection, a major transfer path within the Western Interconnection, or a comparable monitored Facility in the ERCOT or Quebec Interconnections, and is not a monitored Facility included in an Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit (IROL). • **E4** – Reactive Power devices owned and operated by the retail customer solely for its own use. Note - Elements may be included or excluded on a case-by-case basis through the Rules of Procedure exception process.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Bulk Electric System [Archive]	BES	11/21/2013	3/20/14 (Becomes effective 7/1/2014) (Please see the Imple-mentation Plan for Phase 2 Compliance obligations.)	Unless modified by the lists shown below, all Transmission Elements operated at 100 kV or higher and Real Power and Reactive Power resources connected at 100 kV or higher. This does not include facilities used in the local distribution of electric energy. **Inclusions:** • **I1** - Transformers with the primary terminal and at least one secondary terminal operated at 100 kV or higher unless excluded by application of Exclusion E1 or E3. • **I2** – Generating resource(s) including the generator terminals through the high-side of the step-up transformer(s) connected at a voltage of 100 kV or above with: a) Gross individual nameplate rating greater than 20 MVA. Or, b) Gross plant/facility aggregate nameplate rating greater than 75 MVA. • **I3** - Blackstart Resources identified in the Transmission Operator's restoration plan. • **I4** - Dispersed power producing resources that aggregate to a total capacity greater than 75 MVA (gross nameplate rating), and that are connected through a system designed primarily for delivering such capacity to a common point of connection at a voltage of 100 kV or above. Thus, the facilities designated as BES are:

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Bulk Electric System **(Continued)**	BES			a) The individual resources, and b) The system designed primarily for delivering capacity from the point where those resources aggregate to greater than 75 MVA to a common point of connection at a voltage of 100 kV or above. • **I5** –Static or dynamic devices (excluding generators) dedicated to supplying or absorbing Reactive Power that are connected at 100 kV or higher, or through a dedicated transformer with a high-side voltage of 100 kV or higher, or through a transformer that is designated in Inclusion I1 unless excluded by application of Exclusion E4. **Exclusions:** • **E1** - Radial systems: A group of contiguous transmission Elements that emanates from a single point of connection of 100 kV or higher and: a) Only serves Load. Or, b) Only includes generation resources, not identified in Inclusions I2, I3, or I4, with an aggregate capacity less than or equal to 75 MVA (gross nameplate rating). Or, c) Where the radial system serves Load and includes generation resources, not identified in Inclusions I2, I3 or I4, with an aggregate capacity of non-retail generation less than or equal to 75 MVA (gross nameplate rating).

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Bulk Electric System **(Continued)**	BES			Note 1 – A normally open switching device between radial systems, as depicted on prints or one-line diagrams for example, does not affect this exclusion. Note 2 – The presence of a contiguous loop, operated at a voltage level of 50 kV or less, between configurations being considered as radial systems, does not affect this exclusion. • **E2** - A generating unit or multiple generating units on the customer's side of the retail meter that serve all or part of the retail Load with electric energy if: (i) the net capacity provided to the BES does not exceed 75 MVA, and (ii) standby, back-up, and maintenance power services are provided to the generating unit or multiple generating units or to the retail Load by a Balancing Authority, or provided pursuant to a binding obligation with a Generator Owner or Generator Operator, or under terms approved by the applicable regulatory authority. • **E3** - Local networks (LN): A group of contiguous transmission Elements operated at less than 300 kV that distribute power to Load rather than transfer bulk power across the interconnected system. LN's emanate from multiple points of connection at 100 kV or higher to improve the level of service to retail customers and not to accommodate bulk power transfer across the interconnected system. The LN is characterized by all of the following: a) Limits on connected generation: The LN and its underlying Elements do not include generation resources identified in Inclusions I2, I3, or I4 and do not have an aggregate capacity of non-retail

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Bulk Electric System **(Continued)**	BES			generation greater than 75 MVA (gross nameplate rating); b) Real Power flows only into the LN and the LN does not transfer energy originating outside the LN for delivery through the LN; and c) Not part of a Flowgate or transfer path: The LN does not contain any part of a permanent Flowgate in the Eastern Interconnection, a major transfer path within the Western Interconnection, or a comparable monitored Facility in the ERCOT or Quebec Interconnections, and is not a monitored Facility included in an Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit (IROL). • **E4** – Reactive Power devices installed for the sole benefit of a retail customer(s). Note - Elements may be included or excluded on a case-by-case basis through the Rules of Procedure exception process.
Bulk-Power System [Archive]		5/9/2013	7/9/2013	A) facilities and control systems necessary for operating an interconnected electric energy transmission network (or any portion thereof); and (B) electric energy from generation facilities needed to maintain transmission system reliability. The term does not include facilities used in the local distribution of electric energy.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Burden [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Operation of the Bulk Electric System that violates or is expected to violate a System Operating Limit or Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit in the Interconnection, or that violates any other NERC, Regional Reliability Organization, or local operating reliability standards or criteria.
Business Practices [Archive]		8/22/2008	Not approved; Modification directed 11/24/2009	Those business rules contained in the Transmission Service Provider's applicable tariff, rules, or procedures; associated Regional Reliability Organization or regional entity business practices; or NAESB Business Practices.
Bus-tie Breaker [Archive]		8/4/2011	10/17/2013 (Becomes effective 1/1/2015)	A circuit breaker that is positioned to connect two individual substation bus configurations.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Capacity Benefit Margin [Archive]	CBM	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The amount of firm transmission transfer capability preserved by the transmission provider for Load-Serving Entities (LSEs), whose loads are located on that Transmission Service Provider's system, to enable access by the LSEs to generation from interconnected systems to meet generation reliability requirements. Preservation of CBM for an LSE allows that entity to reduce its installed generating capacity below that which may otherwise have been necessary without interconnections to meet its generation reliability requirements. The transmission transfer capability preserved as CBM is intended to be used by the LSE only in times of emergency generation deficiencies.
Capacity Benefit Margin Implementation Document [Archive]	CBMID	11/13/2008	11/24/2009	A document that describes the implementation of a Capacity Benefit Margin methodology.
Capacity Emergency [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A capacity emergency exists when a Balancing Authority Area's operating capacity, plus firm purchases from other systems, to the extent available or limited by transfer capability, is inadequate to meet its demand plus its regulating requirements.
Cascading [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The uncontrolled successive loss of system elements triggered by an incident at any location. Cascading results in widespread electric service interruption that cannot be restrained from sequentially spreading beyond an area predetermined by studies.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Cascading Outages [Archive]		11/1/2006 Withdrawn 2/12/2008	FERC Remanded 12/27/2007	~~The uncontrolled successive loss of Bulk Electric System Facilities triggered by an incident (or condition) at any location resulting in the interruption of electric service that cannot be restrained from spreading beyond a pre-determined area.~~
CIP Exceptional Circumstance [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	A situation that involves or threatens to involve one or more of the following, or similar, conditions that impact safety or BES reliability: a risk of injury or death; a natural disaster; civil unrest; an imminent or existing hardware, software, or equipment failure; a Cyber Security Incident requiring emergency assistance; a response by emergency services; the enactment of a mutual assistance agreement; or an impediment of large scale workforce availability.
CIP Senior Manager [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	A single senior management official with overall authority and responsibility for leading and managing implementation of and continuing adherence to the requirements within the NERC CIP Standards, CIP-002 through CIP-011.
Clock Hour [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The 60-minute period ending at :00. All surveys, measurements, and reports are based on Clock Hour periods unless specifically noted.
Cogeneration [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Production of electricity from steam, heat, or other forms of energy produced as a by-product of another process.
Compliance Monitor [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity that monitors, reviews, and ensures compliance of responsible entities with reliability standards.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Composite Confirmed Interchange [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	The energy profile (including non-default ramp) throughout a given time period, based on the aggregate of all Confirmed Interchange occurring in that time period.
Composite Protection System [Archive]		8/14/2014	5/13/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/2016)	The total complement of Protection System(s) that function collectively to protect an Element. Backup protection provided by a different Element's Protection System(s) is excluded.
Confirmed Interchange [Archive]		5/2/2006	3/16/2007	The state where the Interchange Authority has verified the Arranged Interchange.
Confirmed Interchange [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	The state where no party has denied and all required parties have approved the Arranged Interchange.
Congestion Management Report [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A report that the Interchange Distribution Calculator issues when a Reliability Coordinator initiates the Transmission Loading Relief procedure. This report identifies the transactions and native and network load curtailments that must be initiated to achieve the loading relief requested by the initiating Reliability Coordinator.
Consequential Load Loss [Archive]		8/4/2011	10/17/2013 (Becomes effective 1/1/2015)	All Load that is no longer served by the Transmission system as a result of Transmission Facilities being removed from service by a Protection System operation designed to isolate the fault.
Constrained Facility [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A transmission facility (line, transformer, breaker, etc.) that is approaching, is at, or is beyond its System Operating Limit or Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Contingency [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The unexpected failure or outage of a system component, such as a generator, transmission line, circuit breaker, switch or other electrical element.
Contingency Reserve [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The provision of capacity deployed by the Balancing Authority to meet the Disturbance Control Standard (DCS) and other NERC and Regional Reliability Organization contingency requirements.
Contract Path [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An agreed upon electrical path for the continuous flow of electrical power between the parties of an Interchange Transaction.
Control Center [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/13 (Becomes effective 4/1/16)	One or more facilities hosting operating personnel that monitor and control the Bulk Electric System (BES) in real-time to perform the reliability tasks, including their associated data centers, of: 1) a Reliability Coordinator, 2) a Balancing Authority, 3) a Transmission Operator for transmission Facilities at two or more locations, or 4) a Generator Operator for generation Facilities at two or more locations.
Control Performance Standard [Archive]	CPS	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The reliability standard that sets the limits of a Balancing Authority's Area Control Error over a specified time period.
Corrective Action Plan [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	A list of actions and an associated timetable for implementation to remedy a specific problem.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Cranking Path [Archive]		5/2/2006	3/16/2007	A portion of the electric system that can be isolated and then energized to deliver electric power from a generation source to enable the startup of one or more other generating units.
Critical Assets [Archive]		5/2/2006	1/18/2008 (Becomes inactive 3/31/2016)	Facilities, systems, and equipment which, if destroyed, degraded, or otherwise rendered unavailable, would affect the reliability or operability of the Bulk Electric System.
Critical Cyber Assets [Archive]		5/2/2006	1/18/2008 (Becomes inactive 3/31/2016)	Cyber Assets essential to the reliable operation of Critical Assets.
Curtailment [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A reduction in the scheduled capacity or energy delivery of an Interchange Transaction.
Curtailment Threshold [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The minimum Transfer Distribution Factor which, if exceeded, will subject an Interchange Transaction to curtailment to relieve a transmission facility constraint.
Cyber Assets [Archive]		5/2/2006	1/18/2008 (Becomes inactive 3/31/2016)	Programmable electronic devices and communication networks including hardware, software, and data.
Cyber Assets [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	Programmable electronic devices, including the hardware, software, and data in those devices.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Cyber Security Incident [Archive]		5/2/2006	1/18/2008 (Becomes inactive 3/31/2016)	Any malicious act or suspicious event that: • Compromises, or was an attempt to compromise, the Electronic Security Perimeter or Physical Security Perimeter of a Critical Cyber Asset, or, • Disrupts, or was an attempt to disrupt, the operation of a Critical Cyber Asset.
Cyber Security Incident [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	A malicious act or suspicious event that: • Compromises, or was an attempt to compromise, the Electronic Security Perimeter or Physical Security Perimeter or, • Disrupts, or was an attempt to disrupt, the operation of a BES Cyber System.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Delayed Fault Clearing [Archive]		11/1/2006	12/27/2007	Fault clearing consistent with correct operation of a breaker failure protection system and its associated breakers, or of a backup protection system with an intentional time delay.
Demand [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	1. The rate at which electric energy is delivered to or by a system or part of a system, generally expressed in kilowatts or megawatts, at a given instant or averaged over any designated interval of time. 2. The rate at which energy is being used by the customer.
Demand-Side Management [Archive]	DSM	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The term for all activities or programs undertaken by Load-Serving Entity or its customers to influence the amount or timing of electricity they use.
Demand-Side Management [Archive]	DSM	5/6/2014	2/19/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/16)	All activities or programs undertaken by any applicable entity to achieve a reduction in Demand.
Dial-up Connectivity [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	A data communication link that is established when the communication equipment dials a phone number and negotiates a connection with the equipment on the other end of the link.
Direct Control Load Management [Archive]	DCLM	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Demand-Side Management that is under the direct control of the system operator. DCLM may control the electric supply to individual appliances or equipment on customer premises. DCLM as defined here does not include Interruptible Demand.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Dispatch Order [Archive]		08/22/2008	11/24/2009	A set of dispatch rules such that given a specific amount of load to serve, an approximate generation dispatch can be determined. To accomplish this, each generator is ranked by priority.
Dispersed Load by Substations [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Substation load information configured to represent a system for power flow or system dynamics modeling purposes, or both.
Distribution Factor [Archive]	DF	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The portion of an Interchange Transaction, typically expressed in per unit that flows across a transmission facility (Flowgate).
Distribution Provider [Archive]	DP	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Provides and operates the "wires" between the transmission system and the end-use customer. For those end-use customers who are served at transmission voltages, the Transmission Owner also serves as the Distribution Provider. Thus, the Distribution Provider is not defined by a specific voltage, but rather as performing the Distribution function at any voltage.
Disturbance [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	1. An unplanned event that produces an abnormal system condition. 2. Any perturbation to the electric system. 3. The unexpected change in ACE that is caused by the sudden failure of generation or interruption of load.
Disturbance Control Standard [Archive]	DCS	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The reliability standard that sets the time limit following a Disturbance within which a Balancing Authority must return its Area Control Error to within a specified range.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Disturbance Monitoring Equipment [Archive]	DME	8/2/2006	3/16/2007	Devices capable of monitoring and recording system data pertaining to a Disturbance. Such devices include the following categories of recorders[3]: • Sequence of event recorders which record equipment response to the event • Fault recorders, which record actual waveform data replicating the system primary voltages and currents. This may include protective relays. • Dynamic Disturbance Recorders (DDRs), which record incidents that portray power system behavior during dynamic events such as low-frequency (0.1 Hz – 3 Hz) oscillations and abnormal frequency or voltage excursions
Dynamic Interchange Schedule or Dynamic Schedule [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A telemetered reading or value that is updated in real time and used as a schedule in the AGC/ACE equation and the integrated value of which is treated as a schedule for interchange accounting purposes. Commonly used for scheduling jointly owned generation to or from another Balancing Authority Area.
Dynamic Interchange Schedule or Dynamic Schedule [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	A time-varying energy transfer that is updated in Real-time and included in the Scheduled Net Interchange (NIS) term in the same manner as an Interchange Schedule in the affected Balancing Authorities' control ACE equations (or alternate control processes).

[3] Phasor Measurement Units and any other equipment that meets the functional requirements of DMEs may qualify as DMEs.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Dynamic Transfer [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The provision of the real-time monitoring, telemetering, computer software, hardware, communications, engineering, energy accounting (including inadvertent interchange), and administration required to electronically move all or a portion of the real energy services associated with a generator or load out of one Balancing Authority Area into another.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Economic Dispatch [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The allocation of demand to individual generating units on line to effect the most economical production of electricity.
Electronic Access Control or Monitoring Systems [Archive]	EACMS	11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	Cyber Assets that perform electronic access control or electronic access monitoring of the Electronic Security Perimeter(s) or BES Cyber Systems. This includes Intermediate Systems.
Electronic Access Point [Archive]	EAP	11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	A Cyber Asset interface on an Electronic Security Perimeter that allows routable communication between Cyber Assets outside an Electronic Security Perimeter and Cyber Assets inside an Electronic Security Perimeter.
Electrical Energy [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The generation or use of electric power by a device over a period of time, expressed in kilowatthours (kWh), megawatthours (MWh), or gigawatthours (GWh).
Electronic Security Perimeter [Archive]	ESP	5/2/2006	1/18/2008 (Becomes inactive 3/31/2016)	The logical border surrounding a network to which Critical Cyber Assets are connected and for which access is controlled.
Electronic Security Perimeter [Archive]	ESP	11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	The logical border surrounding a network to which BES Cyber Systems are connected using a routable protocol.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Element [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Any electrical device with terminals that may be connected to other electrical devices such as a generator, transformer, circuit breaker, bus section, or transmission line. An element may be comprised of one or more components.
Emergency or BES Emergency [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Any abnormal system condition that requires automatic or immediate manual action to prevent or limit the failure of transmission facilities or generation supply that could adversely affect the reliability of the Bulk Electric System.
Emergency Rating [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The rating as defined by the equipment owner that specifies the level of electrical loading or output, usually expressed in megawatts (MW) or Mvar or other appropriate units, that a system, facility, or element can support, produce, or withstand for a finite period. The rating assumes acceptable loss of equipment life or other physical or safety limitations for the equipment involved.
Emergency Request for Interchange [Archive]	Emergency RFI	10/29/2008	12/17/2009	Request for Interchange to be initiated for Emergency or Energy Emergency conditions.
Energy Emergency [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A condition when a Load-Serving Entity has exhausted all other options and can no longer provide its customers' expected energy requirements.
Energy Emergency [Archive]		11/13/2014		A condition when a Load-Serving Entity or Balancing Authority has exhausted all other resource options and can no longer meet its expected Load obligations.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Equipment Rating [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	The maximum and minimum voltage, current, frequency, real and reactive power flows on individual equipment under steady state, short-circuit and transient conditions, as permitted or assigned by the equipment owner.
External Routable Connectivity [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	The ability to access a BES Cyber System from a Cyber Asset that is outside of its associated Electronic Security Perimeter via a bi-directional routable protocol connection.
Existing Transmission Commitments [Archive]	ETC	08/22/2008	11/24/2009	Committed uses of a Transmission Service Provider's Transmission system considered when determining ATC or AFC.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Facility [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	A set of electrical equipment that operates as a single Bulk Electric System Element (e.g., a line, a generator, a shunt compensator, transformer, etc.)
Facility Rating [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The maximum or minimum voltage, current, frequency, or real or reactive power flow through a facility that does not violate the applicable equipment rating of any equipment comprising the facility.
Fault [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An event occurring on an electric system such as a short circuit, a broken wire, or an intermittent connection.
Fire Risk [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	The likelihood that a fire will ignite or spread in a particular geographic area.
Firm Demand [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	That portion of the Demand that a power supplier is obligated to provide except when system reliability is threatened or during emergency conditions.
Firm Transmission Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The highest quality (priority) service offered to customers under a filed rate schedule that anticipates no planned interruption.
Flashover [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	An electrical discharge through air around or over the surface of insulation, between objects of different potential, caused by placing a voltage across the air space that results in the ionization of the air space.
Flowgate [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A designated point on the transmission system through which the Interchange Distribution Calculator calculates the power flow from Interchange Transactions.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Flowgate [Archive]		08/22/2008	11/24/2009	1.) A portion of the Transmission system through which the Interchange Distribution Calculator calculates the power flow from Interchange Transactions. 2.) A mathematical construct, comprised of one or more monitored transmission Facilities and optionally one or more contingency Facilities, used to analyze the impact of power flows upon the Bulk Electric System.
Flowgate Methodology [Archive]		08/22/2008	11/24/2009	The Flowgate methodology is characterized by identification of key Facilities as Flowgates. Total Flowgate Capabilities are determined based on Facility Ratings and voltage and stability limits. The impacts of Existing Transmission Commitments (ETCs) are determined by simulation. The impacts of ETC, Capacity Benefit Margin (CBM) and Transmission Reliability Margin (TRM) are subtracted from the Total Flowgate Capability, and Postbacks and counterflows are added, to determine the Available Flowgate Capability (AFC) value for that Flowgate. AFCs can be used to determine Available Transfer Capability (ATC).
Forced Outage [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	1. The removal from service availability of a generating unit, transmission line, or other facility for emergency reasons. 2. The condition in which the equipment is unavailable due to unanticipated failure.
Frequency Bias [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A value, usually expressed in megawatts per 0.1 Hertz (MW/0.1 Hz), associated with a Balancing Authority Area that approximates the Balancing Authority Area's response to Interconnection frequency error.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Frequency Bias Setting [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007 (Becomes inactive 3/31/2015)	A value, usually expressed in MW/0.1 Hz, set into a Balancing Authority ACE algorithm that allows the Balancing Authority to contribute its frequency response to the Interconnection.
Frequency Bias Setting [Archive]		2/7/2013	1/16/2014 (Becomes effective 4/1/2015)	A number, either fixed or variable, usually expressed in MW/0.1 Hz, included in a Balancing Authority's Area Control Error equation to account for the Balancing Authority's inverse Frequency Response contribution to the Interconnection, and discourage response withdrawal through secondary control systems.
Frequency Deviation [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A change in Interconnection frequency.
Frequency Error [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The difference between the actual and scheduled frequency. ($F_A - F_S$)
Frequency Regulation [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The ability of a Balancing Authority to help the Interconnection maintain Scheduled Frequency. This assistance can include both turbine governor response and Automatic Generation Control.
Frequency Response [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	(Equipment) The ability of a system or elements of the system to react or respond to a change in system frequency. (System) The sum of the change in demand, plus the change in generation, divided by the change in frequency, expressed in megawatts per 0.1 Hertz (MW/0.1 Hz).

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Frequency Response Measure [Archive]	FRM	2/7/2013	1/16/2014 (Becomes effective 4/1/2015)	The median of all the Frequency Response observations reported annually by Balancing Authorities or Frequency Response Sharing Groups for frequency events specified by the ERO. This will be calculated as MW/0.1Hz.
Frequency Response Obligation [Archive]	FRO	2/7/2013	1/16/2014 (Becomes effective 4/1/2015)	The Balancing Authority's share of the required Frequency Response needed for the reliable operation of an Interconnection. This will be calculated as MW/0.1Hz.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Frequency Response Sharing Group [Archive]	FRSG	2/7/2013	1/16/2014 (Becomes effective 4/1/2015)	A group whose members consist of two or more Balancing Authorities that collectively maintain, allocate, and supply operating resources required to jointly meet the sum of the Frequency Response Obligations of its members.
Generator Operator [Archive]	GOP	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity that operates generating unit(s) and performs the functions of supplying energy and Interconnected Operations Services.
Generator Owner [Archive]	GO	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Entity that owns and maintains generating units.
Generator Shift Factor [Archive]	GSF	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A factor to be applied to a generator's expected change in output to determine the amount of flow contribution that change in output will impose on an identified transmission facility or Flowgate.
Generator-to-Load Distribution Factor [Archive]	GLDF	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The algebraic sum of a Generator Shift Factor and a Load Shift Factor to determine the total impact of an Interchange Transaction on an identified transmission facility or Flowgate.
Generation Capability Import Requirement [Archive]	GCIR	11/13/2008	11/24/2009	The amount of generation capability from external sources identified by a Load-Serving Entity (LSE) or Resource Planner (RP) to meet its generation reliability or resource adequacy requirements as an alternative to internal resources.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Host Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	1. A Balancing Authority that confirms and implements Interchange Transactions for a Purchasing Selling Entity that operates generation or serves customers directly within the Balancing Authority's metered boundaries. 2. The Balancing Authority within whose metered boundaries a jointly owned unit is physically located.
Hourly Value [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Data measured on a Clock Hour basis.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Implemented Interchange [Archive]		5/2/2006	3/16/2007	The state where the Balancing Authority enters the Confirmed Interchange into its Area Control Error equation.
Inadvertent Interchange [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The difference between the Balancing Authority's Net Actual Interchange and Net Scheduled Interchange. $(I_A - I_S)$
Independent Power Producer [Archive]	IPP	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Any entity that owns or operates an electricity generating facility that is not included in an electric utility's rate base. This term includes, but is not limited to, cogenerators and small power producers and all other nonutility electricity producers, such as exempt wholesale generators, who sell electricity.
Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. [Archive]	IEEE	2/7/2006	3/16/2007	

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Interactive Remote Access [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	User-initiated access by a person employing a remote access client or other remote access technology using a routable protocol. Remote access originates from a Cyber Asset that is not an Intermediate System and not located within any of the Responsible Entity's Electronic Security Perimeter(s) or at a defined Electronic Access Point (EAP). Remote access may be initiated from: 1) Cyber Assets used or owned by the Responsible Entity, 2) Cyber Assets used or owned by employees, and 3) Cyber Assets used or owned by vendors, contractors, or consultants. Interactive remote access does not include system-to-system process communications.
Interchange [Archive]		5/2/2006	3/16/2007	Energy transfers that cross Balancing Authority boundaries.
Interchange Authority [Archive]	IA	5/2/2006	3/16/2007	The responsible entity that authorizes implementation of valid and balanced Interchange Schedules between Balancing Authority Areas, and ensures communication of Interchange information for reliability assessment purposes.
Interchange Distribution Calculator [Archive]	IDC	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The mechanism used by Reliability Coordinators in the Eastern Interconnection to calculate the distribution of Interchange Transactions over specific Flowgates. It includes a database of all Interchange Transactions and a matrix of the Distribution Factors for the Eastern Interconnection.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Interchange Schedule [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An agreed-upon Interchange Transaction size (megawatts), start and end time, beginning and ending ramp times and rate, and type required for delivery and receipt of power and energy between the Source and Sink Balancing Authorities involved in the transaction.
Interchange Transaction [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An agreement to transfer energy from a seller to a buyer that crosses one or more Balancing Authority Area boundaries.
Interchange Transaction Tag or Tag [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The details of an Interchange Transaction required for its physical implementation.
Interconnected Operations Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A service (exclusive of basic energy and transmission services) that is required to support the reliable operation of interconnected Bulk Electric Systems.
Interconnection [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007 (Retires 6/30/2016)	When capitalized, any one of the three major electric system networks in North America: Eastern, Western, and ERCOT.
Interconnection [Archive]		8/15/2013	4/16/2015 (Effective 7/1/2016)	When capitalized, any one of the four major electric system networks in North America: Eastern, Western, ERCOT and Quebec.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit [Archive]	IROL	2/8/2005	3/16/2007 Retired 12/27/2007	The value (such as MW, MVar, Amperes, Frequency or Volts) derived from, or a subset of the System Operating Limits, which if exceeded, could expose a widespread area of the Bulk Electric System to instability, uncontrolled separation(s) or cascading outages.
Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit [Archive]	IROL	11/1/2006	12/27/2007	A System Operating Limit that, if violated, could lead to instability, uncontrolled separation, or Cascading outages[4] that adversely impact the reliability of the Bulk Electric System.
Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit T_v [Archive]	IROL T_v	11/1/2006	12/27/2007	The maximum time that an Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit can be violated before the risk to the interconnection or other Reliability Coordinator Area(s) becomes greater than acceptable. Each Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit's T_v shall be less than or equal to 30 minutes.
Intermediate Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A Balancing Authority Area that has connecting facilities in the Scheduling Path between the Sending Balancing Authority Area and Receiving Balancing Authority Area and operating agreements that establish the conditions for the use of such facilities.
Intermediate Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	A Balancing Authority on the scheduling path of an Interchange Transaction other than the Source Balancing Authority and Sink Balancing Authority.

[4] On September 13, 2012, FERC issued an Order approving NERC's request to modify the reference to "Cascading Outages" to "Cascading outages" within the definition of IROL due to the fact that the definition of "Cascading Outages" was previously remanded by FERC.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Intermediate System [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	A Cyber Asset or collection of Cyber Assets performing access control to restrict Interactive Remote Access to only authorized users. The Intermediate System must not be located inside the Electronic Security Perimeter.
Interpersonal Communication [Archive]		11/7/2012	4/16/2015 (Becomes effective 10/1/2015)	Any medium that allows two or more individuals to interact, consult, or exchange information.
Interruptible Load or Interruptible Demand [Archive]		11/1/2006	3/16/2007	Demand that the end-use customer makes available to its Load-Serving Entity via contract or agreement for curtailment.
Joint Control [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Automatic Generation Control of jointly owned units by two or more Balancing Authorities.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Limiting Element [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The element that is 1.)Either operating at its appropriate rating, or 2,) Would be following the limiting contingency. Thus, the Limiting Element establishes a system limit.
Load [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An end-use device or customer that receives power from the electric system.
Load Shift Factor [Archive]	LSF	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A factor to be applied to a load's expected change in demand to determine the amount of flow contribution that change in demand will impose on an identified transmission facility or monitored Flowgate.
Load-Serving Entity [Archive]	LSE	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Secures energy and transmission service (and related Interconnected Operations Services) to serve the electrical demand and energy requirements of its end-use customers.
Long-Term Transmission Planning Horizon [Archive]		8/4/2011	10/17/2013 (Becomes effective 1/1/2015)	Transmission planning period that covers years six through ten or beyond when required to accommodate any known longer lead time projects that may take longer than ten years to complete.
Low Impact BES Cyber System Electronic Access Point [Archive]	LEAP	2/12/2015		A Cyber Asset interface that controls Low Impact External Routable Connectivity. The Cyber Asset containing the LEAP may reside at a location external to the asset or assets containing low impact BES Cyber Systems.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Low Impact External Routable Connectivity [Archive]	LERC	2/12/2015		Direct user-initiated interactive access or a direct device-to-device connection to a low impact BES Cyber System(s) from a Cyber Asset outside the asset containing those low impact BES Cyber System(s) via a bi-directional routable protocol connection. Point-to-point communications between intelligent electronic devices that use routable communication protocols for time-sensitive protection or control functions between Transmission station or substation assets containing low impact BES Cyber Systems are excluded from this definition (examples of this communication include, but are not limited to, IEC 61850 GOOSE or vendor proprietary protocols).
Market Flow [Archive]		11/4/2010	4/21/2011	The total amount of power flowing across a specified Facility or set of Facilities due to a market dispatch of generation internal to the market to serve load internal to the market.
Minimum Vegetation Clearance Distance [Archive]	MVCD	11/3/2011	3/21/2013 (Becomes effective 7/1/14)	The calculated minimum distance stated in feet (meters) to prevent flash-over between conductors and vegetation, for various altitudes and operating voltages.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Misoperation [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	• Any failure of a Protection System element to operate within the specified time when a fault or abnormal condition occurs within a zone of protection. • Any operation for a fault not within a zone of protection (other than operation as backup protection for a fault in an adjacent zone that is not cleared within a specified time for the protection for that zone). • Any unintentional Protection System operation when no fault or other abnormal condition has occurred unrelated to on-site maintenance and testing activity.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Misoperation [Archive]		8/14/2014	5/13/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/2016)	The failure of a Composite Protection System to operate as intended for protection purposes. Any of the following is a Misoperation: **1. Failure to Trip – During Fault** – A failure of a Composite Protection System to operate for a Fault condition for which it is designed. The failure of a Protection System component is not a Misoperation as long as the performance of the Composite Protection System is correct. **2. Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault** – A failure of a Composite Protection System to operate for a non-Fault condition for which it is designed, such as a power swing, undervoltage, overexcitation, or loss of excitation. The failure of a Protection System component is not a Misoperation as long as the performance of the Composite Protection System is correct. **3. Slow Trip – During Fault** – A Composite Protection System operation that is slower than required for a Fault condition if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. (***continued below***)

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Continued… Misoperation [Archive]		8/14/2014	5/13/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/2016)	**4. Slow Trip – Other Than Fault** – A Composite Protection System operation that is slower than required for a non-Fault condition, such as a power swing, undervoltage, overexcitation, or loss of excitation, if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. **5. Unnecessary Trip – During Fault** – An unnecessary Composite Protection System operation for a Fault condition on another Element. **6. Unnecessary Trip – Other Than Fault** – An unnecessary Composite Protection System operation for a non-Fault condition. A Composite Protection System operation that is caused by personnel during on-site maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning activities is not a Misoperation.
Native Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	A Balancing Authority from which a portion of its physically interconnected generation and/or load is transferred from its effective control boundaries to the Attaining Balancing Authority through a Dynamic Transfer.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Native Load [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The end-use customers that the Load-Serving Entity is obligated to serve.
Near-Term Transmission Planning Horizon [Archive]		1/24/2011	11/17/2011	The transmission planning period that covers Year One through five.
Net Actual Interchange [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The algebraic sum of all metered interchange over all interconnections between two physically Adjacent Balancing Authority Areas.
Net Energy for Load [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Net Balancing Authority Area generation, plus energy received from other Balancing Authority Areas, less energy delivered to Balancing Authority Areas through interchange. It includes Balancing Authority Area losses but excludes energy required for storage at energy storage facilities.
Net Interchange Schedule [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The algebraic sum of all Interchange Schedules with each Adjacent Balancing Authority.
Net Scheduled Interchange [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The algebraic sum of all Interchange Schedules across a given path or between Balancing Authorities for a given period or instant in time.
Network Integration Transmission Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Service that allows an electric transmission customer to integrate, plan, economically dispatch and regulate its network reserves in a manner comparable to that in which the Transmission Owner serves Native Load customers.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Non-Consequential Load Loss [Archive]		8/4/2011	10/17/2013 (Becomes effective 1/1/15)	Non-Interruptible Load loss that does not include: (1) Consequential Load Loss, (2) the response of voltage sensitive Load, or (3) Load that is disconnected from the System by end-user equipment.
Non-Firm Transmission Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Transmission service that is reserved on an as-available basis and is subject to curtailment or interruption.
Non-Spinning Reserve [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	1. That generating reserve not connected to the system but capable of serving demand within a specified time. 2. Interruptible load that can be removed from the system in a specified time.
Normal Clearing [Archive]		11/1/2006	12/27/2007	A protection system operates as designed and the fault is cleared in the time normally expected with proper functioning of the installed protection systems.
Normal Rating [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The rating as defined by the equipment owner that specifies the level of electrical loading, usually expressed in megawatts (MW) or other appropriate units that a system, facility, or element can support or withstand through the daily demand cycles without loss of equipment life.
Nuclear Plant Generator Operator [Archive]		5/2/2007	10/16/2008	Any Generator Operator or Generator Owner that is a Nuclear Plant Licensee responsible for operation of a nuclear facility licensed to produce commercial power.
Nuclear Plant Off-site Power Supply (Off-site Power) [Archive]		5/2/2007	10/16/2008	The electric power supply provided from the electric system to the nuclear power plant distribution system as required per the nuclear power plant license.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Nuclear Plant Licensing Requirements [Archive]	NPLRs	5/2/2007	10/16/2008	Requirements included in the design basis of the nuclear plant and statutorily mandated for the operation of the plant, including nuclear power plant licensing requirements for: 1) Off-site power supply to enable safe shutdown of the plant during an electric system or plant event; and 2) Avoiding preventable challenges to nuclear safety as a result of an electric system disturbance, transient, or condition.
Nuclear Plant Interface Requirements [Archive]	NPIRs	5/2/2007	10/16/2008	The requirements based on NPLRs and Bulk Electric System requirements that have been mutually agreed to by the Nuclear Plant Generator Operator and the applicable Transmission Entities.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Off-Peak [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Those hours or other periods defined by NAESB business practices, contract, agreements, or guides as periods of lower electrical demand.
On-Peak [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Those hours or other periods defined by NAESB business practices, contract, agreements, or guides as periods of higher electrical demand.
Open Access Same Time Information Service [Archive]	OASIS	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An electronic posting system that the Transmission Service Provider maintains for transmission access data and that allows all transmission customers to view the data simultaneously.
Open Access Transmission Tariff [Archive]	OATT	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Electronic transmission tariff accepted by the U.S. Federal Energy Regulatory Commission requiring the Transmission Service Provider to furnish to all shippers with non-discriminating service comparable to that provided by Transmission Owners to themselves.
Operating Instruction [Archive]		5/6/2014	4/16/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/2016)	A command by operating personnel responsible for the Real-time operation of the interconnected Bulk Electric System to change or preserve the state, status, output, or input of an Element of the Bulk Electric System or Facility of the Bulk Electric System. (A discussion of general information and of potential options or alternatives to resolve Bulk Electric System operating concerns is not a command and is not considered an Operating Instruction.)

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Operating Plan [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	A document that identifies a group of activities that may be used to achieve some goal. An Operating Plan may contain Operating Procedures and Operating Processes. A company-specific system restoration plan that includes an Operating Procedure for black-starting units, Operating Processes for communicating restoration progress with other entities, etc., is an example of an Operating Plan.
Operating Procedure [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	A document that identifies specific steps or tasks that should be taken by one or more specific operating positions to achieve specific operating goal(s). The steps in an Operating Procedure should be followed in the order in which they are presented, and should be performed by the position(s) identified. A document that lists the specific steps for a system operator to take in removing a specific transmission line from service is an example of an Operating Procedure.
Operating Process [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	A document that identifies general steps for achieving a generic operating goal. An Operating Process includes steps with options that may be selected depending upon Real-time conditions. A guideline for controlling high voltage is an example of an Operating Process.
Operating Reserve [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	That capability above firm system demand required to provide for regulation, load forecasting error, equipment forced and scheduled outages and local area protection. It consists of spinning and non-spinning reserve.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Operating Reserve – Spinning [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The portion of Operating Reserve consisting of: • Generation synchronized to the system and fully available to serve load within the Disturbance Recovery Period following the contingency event; or • Load fully removable from the system within the Disturbance Recovery Period following the contingency event.
Operating Reserve – Supplemental [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The portion of Operating Reserve consisting of: • Generation (synchronized or capable of being synchronized to the system) that is fully available to serve load within the Disturbance Recovery Period following the contingency event; or • Load fully removable from the system within the Disturbance Recovery Period following the contingency event.
Operating Voltage [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	The voltage level by which an electrical system is designated and to which certain operating characteristics of the system are related; also, the effective (root-mean-square) potential difference between any two conductors or between a conductor and the ground. The actual voltage of the circuit may vary somewhat above or below this value.
Operational Planning Analysis [Archive]		10/17/2008	3/17/2011	An analysis of the expected system conditions for the next day's operation. (That analysis may be performed either a day ahead or as much as 12 months ahead.) Expected system conditions include things such as load forecast(s), generation output levels, and known system constraints (transmission facility outages, generator outages, equipment limitations, etc.).

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Operational Planning Analysis [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	An analysis of the expected system conditions for the next day's operation. (That analysis may be performed either a day ahead or as much as 12 months ahead.) Expected system conditions include things such as load forecast(s), generation output levels, Interchange, and known system constraints (transmission facility outages, generator outages, equipment limitations, etc.).
Operational Planning Analysis [Archive]		11/13/2014		An evaluation of projected system conditions to assess anticipated (pre-Contingency) and potential (post-Contingency) conditions for next-day operations. The evaluation shall reflect applicable inputs including, but not limited to, load forecasts; generation output levels; Interchange; known Protection System and Special Protection System status or degradation; Transmission outages; generator outages; Facility Ratings; and identified phase angle and equipment limitations. (Operational Planning Analysis may be provided through internal systems or through third-party services.)
Operations Support Personnel [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/19/2014 (effective 7/1/2016)	Individuals who perform current day or next day outage coordination or assessments, or who determine SOLs, IROLs, or operating nomograms,[1] in direct support of Real-time operations of the Bulk Electric System.
Outage Transfer Distribution Factor [Archive]	OTDF	8/22/2008	11/24/2009	In the post-contingency configuration of a system under study, the electric Power Transfer Distribution Factor (PTDF) with one or more system Facilities removed from service (outaged).

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Overlap Regulation Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A method of providing regulation service in which the Balancing Authority providing the regulation service incorporates another Balancing Authority's actual interchange, frequency response, and schedules into providing Balancing Authority's AGC/ACE equation.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Participation Factors [Archive]		8/22/2008	11/24/2009	A set of dispatch rules such that given a specific amount of load to serve, an approximate generation dispatch can be determined. To accomplish this, generators are assigned a percentage that they will contribute to serve load.
Peak Demand [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	1. The highest hourly integrated Net Energy For Load within a Balancing Authority Area occurring within a given period (e.g., day, month, season, or year). 2. The highest instantaneous demand within the Balancing Authority Area.
Performance-Reset Period [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	The time period that the entity being assessed must operate without any violations to reset the level of non compliance to zero.
Physical Access Control Systems [Archive]	PACS	11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/16)	Cyber Assets that control, alert, or log access to the Physical Security Perimeter(s), exclusive of locally mounted hardware or devices at the Physical Security Perimeter such as motion sensors, electronic lock control mechanisms, and badge readers.
Physical Security Perimeter [Archive]	PSP	5/2/2006	1/18/2008 (Becomes inactive 3/31/16)	The physical, completely enclosed ("six-wall") border surrounding computer rooms, telecommunications rooms, operations centers, and other locations in which Critical Cyber Assets are housed and for which access is controlled.
Physical Security Perimeter [Archive]	PSP	11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/16)	The physical border surrounding locations in which BES Cyber Assets, BES Cyber Systems, or Electronic Access Control or Monitoring Systems reside, and for which access is controlled.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Planning Assessment [Archive]		8/4/2011	10/17/2013 (Becomes effective 1/1/15)	Documented evaluation of future Transmission System performance and Corrective Action Plans to remedy identified deficiencies.
Planning Authority [Archive]	PA	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The responsible entity that coordinates and integrates transmission facility and service plans, resource plans, and protection systems.
Planning Coordinator [Archive]	PC	8/22/2008	11/24/2009	See Planning Authority.
Point of Delivery [Archive]	POD	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A location that the Transmission Service Provider specifies on its transmission system where an Interchange Transaction leaves or a Load-Serving Entity receives its energy.
Point of Receipt [Archive]	POR	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A location that the Transmission Service Provider specifies on its transmission system where an Interchange Transaction enters or a Generator delivers its output.
Point to Point Transmission Service [Archive]	PTP	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The reservation and transmission of capacity and energy on either a firm or non-firm basis from the Point(s) of Receipt to the Point(s) of Delivery.
Postback [Archive]		08/22/2008	Not approved; Modification directed 11/24/09	Positive adjustments to ATC or AFC as defined in Business Practices. Such Business Practices may include processing of redirects and unscheduled service.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Power Transfer Distribution Factor [Archive]	PTDF	08/22/2008	11/24/2009	In the pre-contingency configuration of a system under study, a measure of the responsiveness or change in electrical loadings on transmission system Facilities due to a change in electric power transfer from one area to another, expressed in percent (up to 100%) of the change in power transfer
Pro Forma Tariff [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Usually refers to the standard OATT and/or associated transmission rights mandated by the U.S. Federal Energy Regulatory Commission Order No. 888.
Protected Cyber Assets [Archive]	PCA	11/26/2012	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/16)	One or more Cyber Assets connected using a routable protocol within or on an Electronic Security Perimeter that is not part of the highest impact BES Cyber System within the same Electronic Security Perimeter. The impact rating of Protected Cyber Assets is equal to the highest rated BES Cyber System in the same ESP. A Cyber Asset is not a Protected Cyber Asset if, for 30 consecutive calendar days or less, it is connected either to a Cyber Asset within the ESP or to the network within the ESP, and it is used for data transfer, vulnerability assessment, maintenance, or troubleshooting purposes.
Protected Cyber Assets [Archive]	PCA	2/12/2015		One or more Cyber Assets connected using a routable protocol within or on an Electronic Security Perimeter that is not part of the highest impact BES Cyber System within the same Electronic Security Perimeter. The impact rating of Protected Cyber Assets is equal to the highest rated BES Cyber System in the same ESP.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Protection System [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/17/2007 retired 4/1/2013	Protective relays, associated communication systems, voltage and current sensing devices, station batteries and DC control circuitry.
Protection System [Archive] [Implementation Plan]		11/19/2010	2/3/2012 (Became effective on 4/1/13)	Protection System – • Protective relays which respond to electrical quantities, • Communications systems necessary for correct operation of protective functions • Voltage and current sensing devices providing inputs to protective relays, • Station dc supply associated with protective functions (including station batteries, battery chargers, and non-battery-based dc supply), and • Control circuitry associated with protective functions through the trip coil(s) of the circuit breakers or other interrupting devices.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Protection System Maintenance Program (PRC-005-2) [Archive]	PSMP	11/7/2012	12/19/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2015)	An ongoing program by which Protection System components are kept in working order and proper operation of malfunctioning components is restored. A maintenance program for a specific component includes one or more of the following activities: Verify — Determine that the component is functioning correctly. Monitor — Observe the routine in-service operation of the component. Test — Apply signals to a component to observe functional performance or output behavior, or to diagnose problems. Inspect — Examine for signs of component failure, reduced performance or degradation. Calibrate — Adjust the operating threshold or measurement accuracy of a measuring element to meet the intended performance requirement.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Protection System Maintenance Program (PRC-005-3) [Archive]	PSMP	11/7/2013	1/22/2015 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	An ongoing program by which Protection System and automatic reclosing components are kept in working order and proper operation of malfunctioning components is restored. A maintenance program for a specific component includes one or more of the following activities: Verify — Determine that the component is functioning correctly. Monitor — Observe the routine in-service operation of the component. Test — Apply signals to a component to observe functional performance or output behavior, or to diagnose problems. Inspect — Examine for signs of component failure, reduced performance or degradation. Calibrate — Adjust the operating threshold or measurement accuracy of a measuring element to meet the intended performance requirement.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Protection System Maintenance Program (PRC-005-4) [Archive]	PSMP	11/13/2014		An ongoing program by which Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying Components are kept in working order and proper operation of malfunctioning Components is restored. A maintenance program for a specific Component includes one or more of the following activities: • Verify — Determine that the Component is functioning correctly. • Monitor — Observe the routine in-service operation of the Component. • Test — Apply signals to a Component to observe functional performance or output behavior, or to diagnose problems. • Inspect — Examine for signs of Component failure, reduced performance or degradation. • Calibrate — Adjust the operating threshold or measurement accuracy of a measuring element to meet the intended performance requirement.
Pseudo-Tie [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A telemetered reading or value that is updated in real time and used as a “virtual” tie line flow in the AGC/ACE equation but for which no physical tie or energy metering actually exists. The integrated value is used as a metered MWh value for interchange accounting purposes.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Pseudo-Tie [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	A time-varying energy transfer that is updated in Real-time and included in the Actual Net Interchange term (NIA) in the same manner as a Tie Line in the affected Balancing Authorities' control ACE equations (or alternate control processes).
Purchasing-Selling Entity [Archive]	PSE	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity that purchases or sells, and takes title to, energy, capacity, and Interconnected Operations Services. Purchasing-Selling Entities may be affiliated or unaffiliated merchants and may or may not own generating facilities.
Ramp Rate or Ramp [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	(Schedule) The rate, expressed in megawatts per minute, at which the interchange schedule is attained during the ramp period. (Generator) The rate, expressed in megawatts per minute, that a generator changes its output.
Rated Electrical Operating Conditions [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	The specified or reasonably anticipated conditions under which the electrical system or an individual electrical circuit is intend/designed to operate
Rating [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The operational limits of a transmission system element under a set of specified conditions.
Rated System Path Methodology [Archive]		08/22/2008	11/24/2009	The Rated System Path Methodology is characterized by an initial Total Transfer Capability (TTC), determined via simulation. Capacity Benefit Margin, Transmission Reliability Margin, and Existing Transmission Commitments are subtracted from TTC, and Postbacks and counterflows are added as applicable, to derive Available Transfer Capability. Under the Rated System Path Methodology, TTC results are generally reported as specific transmission path capabilities.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Reactive Power [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The portion of electricity that establishes and sustains the electric and magnetic fields of alternating-current equipment. Reactive power must be supplied to most types of magnetic equipment, such as motors and transformers. It also must supply the reactive losses on transmission facilities. Reactive power is provided by generators, synchronous condensers, or electrostatic equipment such as capacitors and directly influences electric system voltage. It is usually expressed in kilovars (kvar) or megavars (Mvar).
Real Power [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The portion of electricity that supplies energy to the load.
Reallocation [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The total or partial curtailment of Transactions during TLR Level 3a or 5a to allow Transactions using higher priority to be implemented.
Real-time [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	Present time as opposed to future time. (From Interconnection Reliability Operating Limits standard.)
Real-time Assessment [Archive]		10/17/2008	3/17/2011	An examination of existing and expected system conditions, conducted by collecting and reviewing immediately available data

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Real-time Assessment [Archive]		11/13/2014	Revised definition	An evaluation of system conditions using Real-time data to assess existing (pre-Contingency) and potential (post-Contingency) operating conditions. The assessment shall reflect applicable inputs including, but not limited to: load, generation output levels, known Protection System and Special Protection System status or degradation, Transmission outages, generator outages, Interchange, Facility Ratings, and identified phase angle and equipment limitations. (Real-time Assessment may be provided through internal systems or through third-party services.)
Receiving Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The Balancing Authority importing the Interchange.
Regional Reliability Organization [Archive]	RRO	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	1. An entity that ensures that a defined area of the Bulk Electric System is reliable, adequate and secure. 2. A member of the North American Electric Reliability Council. The Regional Reliability Organization can serve as the Compliance Monitor.
Regional Reliability Plan [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The plan that specifies the Reliability Coordinators and Balancing Authorities within the Regional Reliability Organization, and explains how reliability coordination will be accomplished.
Regulating Reserve [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An amount of reserve responsive to Automatic Generation Control, which is sufficient to provide normal regulating margin.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Regulation Reserve Sharing Group [Archive]		8/15/2013	4/16/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/2016)	A group whose members consist of two or more Balancing Authorities that collectively maintain, allocate, and supply the Regulating Reserve required for all member Balancing Authorities to use in meeting applicable regulating standards.
Regulation Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The process whereby one Balancing Authority contracts to provide corrective response to all or a portion of the ACE of another Balancing Authority. The Balancing Authority providing the response assumes the obligation of meeting all applicable control criteria as specified by NERC for itself and the Balancing Authority for which it is providing the Regulation Service.
Reliability Adjustment Arranged Interchange [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	A request to modify a Confirmed Interchange or Implemented Interchange for reliability purposes.
Reliability Adjustment RFI [Archive]		10/29/2008	12/17/2009	Request to modify an Implemented Interchange Schedule for reliability purposes.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Reliability Coordinator [Archive]	RC	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity that is the highest level of authority who is responsible for the reliable operation of the Bulk Electric System, has the Wide Area view of the Bulk Electric System, and has the operating tools, processes and procedures, including the authority to prevent or mitigate emergency operating situations in both next-day analysis and real-time operations. The Reliability Coordinator has the purview that is broad enough to enable the calculation of Interconnection Reliability Operating Limits, which may be based on the operating parameters of transmission systems beyond any Transmission Operator's vision.
Reliability Coordinator Area [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The collection of generation, transmission, and loads within the boundaries of the Reliability Coordinator. Its boundary coincides with one or more Balancing Authority Areas.
Reliability Coordinator Information System [Archive]	RCIS	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The system that Reliability Coordinators use to post messages and share operating information in real time.
Reliability Directive [Archive]		8/16/2012		A communication initiated by a Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority where action by the recipient is necessary to address an Emergency or Adverse Reliability Impact.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Reliability Standard [Archive]		5/9/2013	7/9/2013	A requirement, approved by the United States Federal Energy Regulatory Commission under this Section 215 of the Federal Power Act, or approved or recognized by an applicable governmental authority in other jurisdictions, to provide for reliable operation [Reliable Operation] of the bulk-power system [Bulk-Power System]. The term includes requirements for the operation of existing bulk-power system [Bulk-Power System] facilities, including cybersecurity protection, and the design of planned additions or modifications to such facilities to the extent necessary to provide for reliable operation [Reliable Operation] of the bulk-power system [Bulk-Power System], but the term does not include any requirement to enlarge such facilities or to construct new transmission capacity or generation capacity.
Reliable Operation [Archive]		5/9/2013	7/9/2013	Operating the elements of the bulk-power system [Bulk-Power System] within equipment and electric system thermal, voltage, and stability limits so that instability, uncontrolled separation, or cascading failures of such system will not occur as a result of a sudden disturbance, including a cybersecurity incident, or unanticipated failure of system elements.
Remedial Action Scheme [Archive]	RAS	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	See "Special Protection System"

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Remedial Action Scheme [Archive]	RAS	11/13/2014		A scheme designed to detect predetermined System conditions and automatically take corrective actions that may include, but are not limited to, adjusting or tripping generation (MW and Mvar), tripping load, or reconfiguring a System(s). RAS accomplish objectives such as: • Meet requirements identified in the NERC Reliability Standards; • Maintain Bulk Electric System (BES) stability; • Maintain acceptable BES voltages; • Maintain acceptable BES power flows; • Limit the impact of Cascading or extreme events. The following do not individually constitute a RAS: a. Protection Systems installed for the purpose of detecting Faults on BES Elements and isolating the faulted Elements b. Schemes for automatic underfrequency load shedding (UFLS) and automatic undervoltage load shedding (UVLS) comprised of only distributed relays c. Out-of-step tripping and power swing blocking d. Automatic reclosing schemes e. Schemes applied on an Element for non-Fault conditions, such as, but not limited to, generator loss-of-field, transformer top-oil temperature, overvoltage, or overload to protect the Element against damage by removing it from service

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Continued Remedial Action Scheme [Archive]				f. Controllers that switch or regulate one or more of the following: series or shunt reactive devices, flexible alternating current transmission system (FACTS) devices, phase-shifting transformers, variable-frequency transformers, or tap-changing transformers; and, that are located at and monitor quantities solely at the same station as the Element being switched or regulated g. FACTS controllers that remotely switch static shunt reactive devices located at other stations to regulate the output of a single FACTS device h. Schemes or controllers that remotely switch shunt reactors and shunt capacitors for voltage regulation that would otherwise be manually switched i. Schemes that automatically de-energize a line for a non-Fault operation when one end of the line is open j. Schemes that provide anti-islanding protection (e.g., protect load from effects of being isolated with generation that may not be capable of maintaining acceptable frequency and voltage) k. Automatic sequences that proceed when manually initiated solely by a System Operator l. Modulation of HVdc or FACTS via supplementary controls, such as angle damping or frequency damping applied to damp local or inter-area oscillations m. Sub-synchronous resonance (SSR) protection schemes that directly detect sub-synchronous quantities (e.g., currents or torsional oscillations)

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Continued Remedial Action Scheme [Archive]				n. Generator controls such as, but not limited to, automatic generation control (AGC), generation excitation [e.g. automatic voltage regulation (AVR) and power system stabilizers (PSS)], fast valving, and speed governing
Removable Media [Archive]		2/12/2015		Storage media that (i) are not Cyber Assets, (ii) are capable of transferring executable code, (iii) can be used to store, copy, move, or access data, and (iv) are directly connected for 30 consecutive calendar days or less to a BES Cyber Asset, a network within an ESP, or a Protected Cyber Asset. Examples include, but are not limited to, floppy disks, compact disks, USB flash drives, external hard drives, and other flash memory cards/drives that contain nonvolatile memory.
Reportable Cyber Security Incident [Archive]		11/26/2012	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/16)	A Cyber Security Incident that has compromised or disrupted one or more reliability tasks of a functional entity.
Reportable Disturbance [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Any event that causes an ACE change greater than or equal to 80% of a Balancing Authority's or reserve sharing group's most severe contingency. The definition of a reportable disturbance is specified by each Regional Reliability Organization. This definition may not be retroactively adjusted in response to observed performance.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Reporting ACE [Archive]		8/15/2013	4/16/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/2016)	The scan rate values of a Balancing Authority's Area Control Error (ACE) measured in MW, which includes the difference between the Balancing Authority's Net Actual Interchange and its Net Scheduled Interchange, plus its Frequency Bias obligation, plus any known meter error. In the Western Interconnection, Reporting ACE includes Automatic Time Error Correction (ATEC). Reporting ACE is calculated as follows: $\text{Reporting ACE} = (NI_A - NI_S) - 10B\,(F_A - F_S) - I_{ME}$ Reporting ACE is calculated in the Western Interconnection as follows: $\text{Reporting ACE} = (NI_A - NI_S) - 10B\,(F_A - F_S) - I_{ME} + I_{ATEC}$ Where: **NI_A (Actual Net Interchange)** is the algebraic sum of actual megawatt transfers across all Tie Lines and includes Pseudo-Ties. Balancing Authorities directly connected via asynchronous ties to another Interconnection may include or exclude megawatt transfers on those Tie lines in their actual interchange, provided they are implemented in the same manner for Net Interchange Schedule. **NI_S (Scheduled Net Interchange)** is the algebraic sum of all scheduled megawatt transfers, including Dynamic Schedules, with adjacent Balancing Authorities, and taking into account the effects of schedule ramps. Balancing Authorities directly connected via asynchronous ties to another Interconnection may include or exclude megawatt transfers on those Tie Lines in their scheduled Interchange, provided they are implemented in the same manner for Net

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Reporting ACE **(Continued)**				Interchange Actual. **B (Frequency Bias Setting)** is the Frequency Bias Setting (in negative MW/0.1 Hz) for the Balancing Authority. **10** is the constant factor that converts the frequency bias setting units to MW/Hz. **F_A (Actual Frequency)** is the measured frequency in Hz. **F_S (Scheduled Frequency)** is 60.0 Hz, except during a time correction. **I_{ME} (Interchange Meter Error)** is the meter error correction factor and represents the difference between the integrated hourly average of the net interchange actual (NIA) and the cumulative hourly net Interchange energy measurement (in megawatt-hours). **I_{ATEC} (Automatic Time Error Correction)** is the addition of a component to the ACE equation for the Western Interconnection that modifies the control point for the purpose of continuously paying back Primary Inadvertent Interchange to correct accumulated time error. Automatic Time Error Correction is only applicable in the Western Interconnection. $I_{ATEC} = \frac{PII_{accum}^{on/off\ peak}}{(1-Y)*H}$ when operating in Automatic Time Error Correction control mode. **I_{ATEC}** shall be zero when operating in any other AGC mode. • Y = B / BS. • H = Number of hours used to payback Primary Inadvertent Interchange energy. The value of H is set to 3. • BS = Frequency Bias for the Interconnection (MW / 0.1 Hz).

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Reporting ACE **(Continued)**				• Primary Inadvertent Interchange (PII_{hourly}) is (1-Y) * (II_{actual} - B * ΔTE/6) • II_{actual} is the hourly Inadvertent Interchange for the last hour. • ΔTE is the hourly change in system Time Error as distributed by the Interconnection Time Monitor. Where: $\Delta TE = TE_{end\ hour} - TE_{begin\ hour} - TD_{adj} - (t)*(TE_{offset})$ • TD_{adj} is the Reliability Coordinator adjustment for differences with Interconnection Time Monitor control center clocks. • t is the number of minutes of Manual Time Error Correction that occurred during the hour. • TE_{offset} is 0.000 or +0.020 or -0.020. • PII_{accum} is the Balancing Authority's accumulated PII_{hourly} in MWh. An On-Peak and Off-Peak accumulation accounting is required. Where: $PII_{accum}^{on/off\ peak}$ = last period's $PII_{accum}^{on/off\ peak}$ + PII_{hourly} All NERC Interconnections with multiple Balancing Authorities operate using the principles of Tie-line Bias (TLB) Control and require the use of an ACE equation similar to the Reporting ACE defined above. Any modification(s) to this specified Reporting ACE equation that is(are) implemented for all BAs on an Interconnection and is(are) consistent with the following four principles will provide a valid alternative Reporting ACE equation

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Reporting ACE **(Continued)**				consistent with the measures included in this standard. 1. All portions of the Interconnection are included in one area or another so that the sum of all area generation, loads and losses is the same as total system generation, load and losses. 2. The algebraic sum of all area Net Interchange Schedules and all Net Interchange actual values is equal to zero at all times. 3. The use of a common Scheduled Frequency FS for all areas at all times. 4. The absence of metering or computational errors. (The inclusion and use of the IME term to account for known metering or computational errors.)
Request for Interchange [Archive]	RFI	5/2/2006	3/16/2007	A collection of data as defined in the NAESB RFI Datasheet, to be submitted to the Interchange Authority for the purpose of implementing bilateral Interchange between a Source and Sink Balancing Authority.
Request for Interchange [Archive]	RFI	2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	A collection of data as defined in the NAESB Business Practice Standards submitted for the purpose of implementing bilateral Interchange between Balancing Authorities or an energy transfer within a single Balancing Authority.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Reserve Sharing Group [Archive]	RSG	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A group whose members consist of two or more Balancing Authorities that collectively maintain, allocate, and supply operating reserves required for each Balancing Authority's use in recovering from contingencies within the group. Scheduling energy from an Adjacent Balancing Authority to aid recovery need not constitute reserve sharing provided the transaction is ramped in over a period the supplying party could reasonably be expected to load generation in (e.g., ten minutes). If the transaction is ramped in quicker (e.g., between zero and ten minutes) then, for the purposes of Disturbance Control Performance, the Areas become a Reserve Sharing Group.
Reserve Sharing Group Reporting ACE [Archive]		8/15/2013	4/16/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/2016)	At any given time of measurement for the applicable Reserve Sharing Group, the algebraic sum of the Reporting ACEs (or equivalent as calculated at such time of measurement) of the Balancing Authorities participating in the Reserve Sharing Group at the time of measurement.
Resource Planner [Archive]	RP	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity that develops a long-term (generally one year and beyond) plan for the resource adequacy of specific loads (customer demand and energy requirements) within a Planning Authority Area.
Response Rate [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The Ramp Rate that a generating unit can achieve under normal operating conditions expressed in megawatts per minute (MW/Min).
Right-of-Way [Archive]	ROW	2/7/2006	3/16/2007	A corridor of land on which electric lines may be located. The Transmission Owner may own the land in fee, own an easement, or have certain franchise, prescription, or license rights to construct and maintain lines.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Right-of-Way [Archive]	ROW	11/3/2011	3/21/2013 (Becomes inactive 6/30/2014)	The corridor of land under a transmission line(s) needed to operate the line(s). The width of the corridor is established by engineering or construction standards as documented in either construction documents, pre-2007 vegetation maintenance records, or by the blowout standard in effect when the line was built. The ROW width in no case exceeds the Transmission Owner's legal rights but may be less based on the aforementioned criteria.
Right-of-Way [Archive]	ROW	5/9/12	3/21/2013 (Becomes effective 7/1/2014)	The corridor of land under a transmission line(s) needed to operate the line(s). The width of the corridor is established by engineering or construction standards as documented in either construction documents, pre-2007 vegetation maintenance records, or by the blowout standard in effect when the line was built. The ROW width in no case exceeds the applicable Transmission Owner's or applicable Generator Owner's legal rights but may be less based on the aforementioned criteria.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Scenario [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	Possible event.
Schedule [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	(Verb) To set up a plan or arrangement for an Interchange Transaction. (Noun) An Interchange Schedule.
Scheduled Frequency [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	60.0 Hertz, except during a time correction.
Scheduling Entity [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An entity responsible for approving and implementing Interchange Schedules.
Scheduling Path [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The Transmission Service arrangements reserved by the Purchasing-Selling Entity for a Transaction.
Sending Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The Balancing Authority exporting the Interchange.
Sink Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The Balancing Authority in which the load (sink) is located for an Interchange Transaction. (This will also be a Receiving Balancing Authority for the resulting Interchange Schedule.)
Sink Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	The Balancing Authority in which the load (sink) is located for an Interchange Transaction and any resulting Interchange Schedule.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Source Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The Balancing Authority in which the generation (source) is located for an Interchange Transaction. (This will also be a Sending Balancing Authority for the resulting Interchange Schedule.)
Source Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	The Balancing Authority in which the generation (source) is located for an Interchange Transaction and for any resulting Interchange Schedule.
Special Protection System (Remedial Action Scheme) [Archive]	SPS	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An automatic protection system designed to detect abnormal or predetermined system conditions, and take corrective actions other than and/or in addition to the isolation of faulted components to maintain system reliability. Such action may include changes in demand, generation (MW and Mvar), or system configuration to maintain system stability, acceptable voltage, or power flows. An SPS does not include (a) underfrequency or undervoltage load shedding or (b) fault conditions that must be isolated or (c) out-of-step relaying (not designed as an integral part of an SPS). Also called Remedial Action Scheme.
Spinning Reserve [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Unloaded generation that is synchronized and ready to serve additional demand.
Stability [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The ability of an electric system to maintain a state of equilibrium during normal and abnormal conditions or disturbances.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Stability Limit [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The maximum power flow possible through some particular point in the system while maintaining stability in the entire system or the part of the system to which the stability limit refers.
Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition [Archive]	SCADA	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A system of remote control and telemetry used to monitor and control the transmission system.
Supplemental Regulation Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A method of providing regulation service in which the Balancing Authority providing the regulation service receives a signal representing all or a portion of the other Balancing Authority's ACE.
Surge [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A transient variation of current, voltage, or power flow in an electric circuit or across an electric system.
Sustained Outage [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	The deenergized condition of a transmission line resulting from a fault or disturbance following an unsuccessful automatic reclosing sequence and/or unsuccessful manual reclosing procedure.
System [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A combination of generation, transmission, and distribution components.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
System Operating Limit [Archive]	SOL	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The value (such as MW, MVar, Amperes, Frequency or Volts) that satisfies the most limiting of the prescribed operating criteria for a specified system configuration to ensure operation within acceptable reliability criteria. System Operating Limits are based upon certain operating criteria. These include, but are not limited to: • Facility Ratings (Applicable pre- and post-Contingency equipment or facility ratings) • Transient Stability Ratings (Applicable pre- and post-Contingency Stability Limits) • Voltage Stability Ratings (Applicable pre- and post-Contingency Voltage Stability) • System Voltage Limits (Applicable pre- and post-Contingency Voltage Limits)
System Operator [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An individual at a control center (Balancing Authority, Transmission Operator, Generator Operator, Reliability Coordinator) whose responsibility it is to monitor and control that electric system in real time.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
System Operator [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/19/2014 (effective 7/1/2016)	An individual at a Control Center of a Balancing Authority, Transmission Operator, or Reliability Coordinator, who operates or directs the operation of the Bulk Electric System (BES) in Real-time.
Telemetering [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The process by which measurable electrical quantities from substations and generating stations are instantaneously transmitted to the control center, and by which operating commands from the control center are transmitted to the substations and generating stations.
Thermal Rating [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The maximum amount of electrical current that a transmission line or electrical facility can conduct over a specified time period before it sustains permanent damage by overheating or before it sags to the point that it violates public safety requirements.
Tie Line [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A circuit connecting two Balancing Authority Areas.
Tie Line Bias [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A mode of Automatic Generation Control that allows the Balancing Authority to 1.) maintain its Interchange Schedule and 2.) respond to Interconnection frequency error.
Time Error [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The difference between the Interconnection time measured at the Balancing Authority(ies) and the time specified by the National Institute of Standards and Technology. Time error is caused by the accumulation of Frequency Error over a given period.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Time Error Correction [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An offset to the Interconnection's scheduled frequency to return the Interconnection's Time Error to a predetermined value.
TLR (Transmission Loading Relief)[5] Log [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Report required to be filed after every TLR Level 2 or higher in a specified format. The NERC IDC prepares the report for review by the issuing Reliability Coordinator. After approval by the issuing Reliability Coordinator, the report is electronically filed in a public area of the NERC Web site.
Total Flowgate Capability [Archive]	TFC	08/22/2008	11/24/2009	The maximum flow capability on a Flowgate, is not to exceed its thermal rating, or in the case of a flowgate used to represent a specific operating constraint (such as a voltage or stability limit), is not to exceed the associated System Operating Limit.
Total Internal Demand [Archive]		5/6/2014	2/19/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/2016)	The Demand of a metered system, which includes the Firm Demand, plus any controllable and dispatchable DSM Load and the Load due to the energy losses incurred within the boundary of the metered system.
Total Transfer Capability [Archive]	TTC	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The amount of electric power that can be moved or transferred reliably from one area to another area of the interconnected transmission systems by way of all transmission lines (or paths) between those areas under specified system conditions.
Transaction [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	See Interchange Transaction.

[5] NERC added the spelled out term for TLR Log for clarification purposes.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Transfer Capability [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The measure of the ability of interconnected electric systems to move or transfer power *in a reliable manner* from one area to another over all transmission lines (or paths) between those areas under specified system conditions. The units of transfer capability are in terms of electric power, generally expressed in megawatts (MW). The transfer capability from "Area A" to "Area B" is *not g*enerally equal to the transfer capability from "Area B" to "Area A."
Transfer Distribution Factor [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	See Distribution Factor.
Transient Cyber Asset [Archive]		2/12/2015		A Cyber Asset that (i) is capable of transmitting or transferring executable code, (ii) is not included in a BES Cyber System, (iii) is not a Protected Cyber Asset (PCA), and (iv) is directly connected (e.g., using Ethernet, serial, Universal Serial Bus, or wireless, including near field or Bluetooth communication) for 30 consecutive calendar days or less to a BES Cyber Asset, a network within an ESP, or a PCA. Examples include, but are not limited to, Cyber Assets used for data transfer, vulnerability assessment, maintenance, or troubleshooting purposes.
Transmission [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An interconnected group of lines and associated equipment for the movement or transfer of electric energy between points of supply and points at which it is transformed for delivery to customers or is delivered to other electric systems.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Transmission Constraint [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A limitation on one or more transmission elements that may be reached during normal or contingency system operations.
Transmission Customer [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	1. Any eligible customer (or its designated agent) that can or does execute a transmission service agreement or can or does receive transmission service. 2. Any of the following responsible entities: Generator Owner, Load-Serving Entity, or Purchasing-Selling Entity.
Transmission Line [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	A system of structures, wires, insulators and associated hardware that carry electric energy from one point to another in an electric power system. Lines are operated at relatively high voltages varying from 69 kV up to 765 kV, and are capable of transmitting large quantities of electricity over long distances.
Transmission Operator [Archive]	TOP	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity responsible for the reliability of its "local" transmission system, and that operates or directs the operations of the transmission facilities.
Transmission Operator Area [Archive]		08/22/2008	11/24/2009	The collection of Transmission assets over which the Transmission Operator is responsible for operating.
Transmission Owner [Archive]	TO	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity that owns and maintains transmission facilities.
Transmission Planner [Archive]	TP	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity that develops a long-term (generally one year and beyond) plan for the reliability (adequacy) of the interconnected bulk electric transmission systems within its portion of the Planning Authority Area.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Transmission Reliability Margin [Archive]	TRM	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The amount of transmission transfer capability necessary to provide reasonable assurance that the interconnected transmission network will be secure. TRM accounts for the inherent uncertainty in system conditions and the need for operating flexibility to ensure reliable system operation as system conditions change.
Transmission Reliability Margin Implementation Document [Archive]	TRMID	08/22/2008	11/24/2009	A document that describes the implementation of a Transmission Reliability Margin methodology, and provides information related to a Transmission Operator's calculation of TRM.
Transmission Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Services provided to the Transmission Customer by the Transmission Service Provider to move energy from a Point of Receipt to a Point of Delivery.
Transmission Service Provider [Archive]	TSP	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity that administers the transmission tariff and provides Transmission Service to Transmission Customers under applicable transmission service agreements.
Undervoltage Load Shedding Program [Archive]	UVLS Program	11/13/2014		An automatic load shedding program, consisting of distributed relays and controls, used to mitigate undervoltage conditions impacting the Bulk Electric System (BES), leading to voltage instability, voltage collapse, or Cascading. Centrally controlled undervoltage-based load shedding is not included.
Vegetation [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	All plant material, growing or not, living or dead.
Vegetation Inspection [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	The systematic examination of a transmission corridor to document vegetation conditions.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Vegetation Inspection [Archive]		11/3/2011	3/21/2013 (Becomes inactive 6/30/2014)	The systematic examination of vegetation conditions on a Right-of-Way and those vegetation conditions under the Transmission Owner's control that are likely to pose a hazard to the line(s) prior to the next planned maintenance or inspection. This may be combined with a general line inspection.
Vegetation Inspection [Archive]		5/9/12	3/21/2013 (Becomes effective 7/1/2014)	The systematic examination of vegetation conditions on a Right-of-Way and those vegetation conditions under the applicable Transmission Owner's or applicable Generator Owner's control that are likely to pose a hazard to the line(s) prior to the next planned maintenance or inspection. This may be combined with a general line inspection.
Wide Area [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entire Reliability Coordinator Area as well as the critical flow and status information from adjacent Reliability Coordinator Areas as determined by detailed system studies to allow the calculation of Interconnected Reliability Operating Limits.
Year One [Archive]		1/24/2011	11/17/2011	The first twelve month period that a Planning Coordinator or a Transmission Planner is responsible for assessing. For an assessment started in a given calendar year, Year One includes the forecasted peak Load period for one of the following two calendar years. For example, if a Planning Assessment was started in 2011, then Year One includes the forecasted peak Load period for either 2012 or 2013.

ERCOT Regional Definitions

The following terms were developed as regional definitions for the ERCOT region:

ERCOT Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Frequency Measurable Event [Archive]	FME	8/15/2013	1/16/2014 (Becomes effective 4/1/14)	An event that results in a Frequency Deviation, identified at the BA's sole discretion, and meeting one of the following conditions: i) a Frequency Deviation that has a pre-perturbation [the 16-second period of time before t(0)] average frequency to post-perturbation [the 32-second period of time starting 20 seconds after t(0)] average frequency absolute deviation greater than 100 mHz (the 100 mHz value may be adjusted by the BA to capture 30 to 40 events per year). Or ii) a cumulative change in generating unit/generating facility, DC tie and/or firm load pre-perturbation megawatt value to post-perturbation megawatt value absolute deviation greater than 550 MW (the 550 MW value may be adjusted by the BA to capture 30 to 40 events per year).
Governor [Archive]		8/15/2013	1/16/2014 (Becomes effective	The electronic, digital or mechanical device that implements Primary Frequency Response of generating units/generating facilities or other system elements.

ERCOT Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
			4/1/14)	
Primary Frequency Response [Archive]	PFR	8/15/2013	1/16/2014 (Becomes effective 4/1/14)	The immediate proportional increase or decrease in real power output provided by generating units/generating facilities and the natural real power dampening response provided by Load in response to system Frequency Deviations. This response is in the direction that stabilizes frequency.

NPCC Regional Definitions

The following definitions were developed for use in NPCC Regional Standards.

NPCC Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Current Zero Time [Archive]		11/04/2010	10/20/2011	The time of the final current zero on the last phase to interrupt.
Generating Plant [Archive]		11/04/2010	10/20/2011	One or more generators at a single physical location whereby any single contingency can affect all the generators at that location.

Reliability*First* Regional Definitions

The following definitions were developed for use in Reliability*First* Regional Standards.

RFC Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Resource Adequacy [Archive]		08/05/2009	03/17/2011	The ability of supply-side and demand-side resources to meet the aggregate electrical demand (including losses)
Net Internal Demand [Archive]		08/05/2009	03/17/2011	Total of all end-use customer demand and electric system losses within specified metered boundaries, less Direct Control Management and Interruptible Demand
Peak Period [Archive]		08/05/2009	03/17/2011	A period consisting of two (2) or more calendar months but less than seven (7) calendar months, which includes the period during which the responsible entity's annual peak demand is expected to occur
Wind Generating Station [Archive]		11/03/2011		A collection of wind turbines electrically connected together and injecting energy into the grid at one point, sometimes known as a "Wind Farm."
Year One [Archive]		08/05/2009	03/17/2011	The planning year that begins with the upcoming annual Peak Period

WECC Regional Definitions

The following definitions were developed for use in WECC Regional Standards.

WECC Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Area Control Error† [Archive]	ACE	3/12/2007	6/8/2007 (Becomes inactive 3/31/14)	Means the instantaneous difference between net actual and scheduled interchange, taking into account the effects of Frequency Bias including correction for meter error.
Automatic Generation Control‡ [Archive]	AGC	3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means equipment that automatically adjusts a Control Area's generation from a central location to maintain its interchange schedule plus Frequency Bias.
Automatic Time Error Correction [Archive]		3/26/2008	5/21/2009 (Becomes inactive 3/31/14)	A frequency control automatic action that a Balancing Authority uses to offset its frequency contribution to support the Interconnection's scheduled frequency.
Automatic Time Error Correction [Archive]		12/19/2012	10/16/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2014)	The addition of a component to the ACE equation that modifies the control point for the purpose of continuously paying back Primary Inadvertent Interchange to correct accumulated time error.
Average Generation‡ [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means the total MWh generated within the Balancing Authority Operator's Balancing Authority Area during the prior year divided by 8760 hours (8784 hours if the prior year had 366 days).
Business Day‡ [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means any day other than Saturday, Sunday, or a legal public holiday as designated in section 6103 of title 5, U.S. Code.

WECC Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Commercial Operation [Archive]		10/29/2008	4/21/2011	Achievement of this designation indicates that the Generator Operator or Transmission Operator of the synchronous generator or synchronous condenser has received all approvals necessary for operation after completion of initial start-up testing.
Contributing Schedule [Archive]		2/10/2009	3/17/2011	A Schedule not on the Qualified Transfer Path between a Source Balancing Authority and a Sink Balancing Authority that contributes unscheduled flow across the Qualified Transfer Path.
Dependability-Based Misoperation [Archive]		10/29/2008	4/21/2011	Is the absence of a Protection System or RAS operation when intended. Dependability is a component of reliability and is the measure of a device's certainty to operate when required.
Disturbance[‡] [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means (i) any perturbation to the electric system, or (ii) the unexpected change in ACE that is caused by the sudden loss of generation or interruption of load.

WECC Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Extraordinary Contingency[†] [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Shall have the meaning set out in Excuse of Performance, section B.4.c. language in section B.4.c: *means any act of God, actions by a non-affiliated third party, labor disturbance, act of the public enemy, war, insurrection, riot, fire, storm or flood, earthquake, explosion, accident to or breakage, failure or malfunction of machinery or equipment, or any other cause beyond the Reliability Entity's reasonable control; provided that prudent industry standards (e.g. maintenance, design, operation) have been employed; and provided further that no act or cause shall be considered an Extraordinary Contingency if such act or cause results in any contingency contemplated in any WECC Reliability Standard (e.g., the "Most Severe Single Contingency" as defined in the WECC Reliability Criteria or any lesser contingency).*
Frequency Bias[†] [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means a value, usually given in megawatts per 0.1 Hertz, associated with a Control Area that relates the difference between scheduled and actual frequency to the amount of generation required to correct the difference.
Functionally Equivalent Protection System [Archive]	FEPS	10/29/2008	4/21/2011	A Protection System that provides performance as follows: • Each Protection System can detect the same faults within the zone of protection and provide the clearing times and coordination needed to comply with all Reliability Standards. • Each Protection System may have different components and operating characteristics.
Functionally Equivalent RAS [Archive]	FERAS	10/29/2008	4/21/2011	A Remedial Action Scheme ("RAS") that provides the same performance as follows: • Each RAS can detect the same conditions and provide

WECC Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
				mitigation to comply with all Reliability Standards. • Each RAS may have different components and operating characteristics.
Generating Unit Capability[‡] [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means the MVA nameplate rating of a generator.
Non-spinning Reserve[‡] [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means that Operating Reserve not connected to the system but capable of serving demand within a specified time, or interruptible load that can be removed from the system in a specified time.
Normal Path Rating[‡] [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Is the maximum path rating in MW that has been demonstrated to WECC through study results or actual operation, whichever is greater. For a path with transfer capability limits that vary seasonally, it is the maximum of all the seasonal values.
Operating Reserve[‡] [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means that capability above firm system demand required to provide for regulation, load-forecasting error, equipment forced and scheduled outages and local area protection. Operating Reserve consists of Spinning Reserve and Nonspinning Reserve.
Operating Transfer Capability Limit[‡] [Archive]	OTC	3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means the maximum value of the most critical system operating parameter(s) which meets: (a) precontingency criteria as determined by equipment loading capability and acceptable voltage conditions, (b) transient criteria as determined by equipment loading capability and acceptable voltage conditions, (c) transient performance criteria, and (d) post-contingency loading and voltage criteria.

WECC Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Primary Inadvertent Interchange [Archive]		3/26/2008	5/21/2009	The component of area (n) inadvertent interchange caused by the regulating deficiencies of the area (n).
Qualified Controllable Device [Archive]		2/10/2009	3/17/2011	A controllable device installed in the Interconnection for controlling energy flow and the WECC Operating Committee has approved using the device for controlling the USF on the Qualified Transfer Paths.
Qualified Transfer Path [Archive]		2/10/2009	3/17/2011	A transfer path designated by the WECC Operating Committee as being qualified for WECC unscheduled flow mitigation.
Qualified Transfer Path Curtailment Event [Archive]		2/10/2009	3/17/2011	Each hour that a Transmission Operator calls for Step 4 or higher for one or more consecutive hours (See Attachment 1 IRO-006-WECC-1) during which the curtailment tool is functional.
Relief Requirement [Archive]		2/10/2009	3/17/2011 (Becomes inactive 6/30/2014)	The expected amount of the unscheduled flow reduction on the Qualified Transfer Path that would result by curtailing each Sink Balancing Authority’s Contributing Schedules by the percentages listed in the columns of WECC Unscheduled Flow Mitigation Summary of Actions Table in Attachment 1 WECC IRO-006-WECC-1.
Relief Requirement [Archive]		2/7/2013	6/13/2014 (Becomes effective 7/1/2014)	The expected amount of the unscheduled flow reduction on the Qualified Transfer Path that would result by curtailing each Sink Balancing Authority’s Contributing Schedules by the percentages determined in the WECC unscheduled flow mitigation guideline.
Secondary Inadvertent		3/26/2008	5/21/2009	The component of area (n) inadvertent interchange caused by

WECC Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Interchange [Archive]				the regulating deficiencies of area (i).
Security-Based Misoperation [Archive]		10/29/2008	4/21/2011	A Misoperation caused by the incorrect operation of a Protection System or RAS. Security is a component of reliability and is the measure of a device's certainty not to operate falsely.
Spinning Reserve[†] [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means unloaded generation which is synchronized and ready to serve additional demand. It consists of Regulating reserve and Contingency reserve (as each are described in Sections B.a.i and ii).
Transfer Distribution Factor [Archive]	TDF	2/10/2009	3/17/2011	The percentage of USF that flows across a Qualified Transfer Path when an Interchange Transaction (Contributing Schedule) is implemented. [See the WECC Unscheduled Flow Mitigation Summary of Actions Table (Attachment 1 WECC IRO-006-WECC-1).]
WECC Table 2[†] [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means the table maintained by the WECC identifying those transfer paths monitored by the WECC regional Reliability coordinators. As of the date set out therein, the transmission paths identified in Table 2 are as listed in Attachment A to this Standard.

Endnotes

[†] FERC approved the WECC Tier One Reliability Standards in the Order Approving Regional Reliability Standards for the Western Interconnection and Directing Modifications, 119 FERC ¶ 61,260 (June 8, 2007). In that Order, FERC directed WECC to address the inconsistencies between the regional definitions and the NERC Glossary in developing permanent replacement standards. The replacement standards designed to address the shortcomings were filed with FERC in 2009.

Exhibit B

Informational Summary of Each Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

BAL-001-2- To control Interconnection frequency within defined limits.

Applicability:

- Balancing Authority
    - A Balancing Authority receiving Overlap Regulation Service is not subject to Control Performance Standard 1 (CPS1) or Balancing Authority ACE Limit (BAAL) compliance evaluation.
    - A Balancing Authority that is a member of a Regulation Reserve Sharing Group is the Responsible Entity only in periods during which the Balancing Authority is not in active status under the applicable agreement or the governing rules for the Regulation Reserve Sharing Group.
- Regulation Reserve Sharing Group

Reliability Standard BAL-001-2 includes two requirements.

On April 2, 2014, NERC submitted a petition for approval of BAL-001-2 to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on April 16, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

COM-001-2- To establish Interpersonal Communication capabilities necessary to maintain reliability.

Applicability:

- Transmission Operator
- Balancing Authority
- Reliability Coordinator
- Distribution Provider
- Generator Operator

Reliability Standard COM-001-2 includes eleven requirements.

On May 14, 2014, NERC submitted a petition for approval of COM-001-2 to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on April 16, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

COM-002-4- To improve communications for the issuance of Operating Instructions with predefined communications protocols to reduce the possibility of miscommunication that could lead to action or inaction harmful to the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES).

Applicability:

- Balancing Authority
- Distribution Provider
- Reliability Coordinator
- Transmission Operator
- Generator Operator

Reliability Standard COM-002-4 includes seven requirements.

On May 14, 2014, NERC submitted a petition for approval of COM-002-4 to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on April 16, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

PRC-001-1.1(ii)- To ensure system protection is coordinated among operating entities.

Applicability:

- Balancing Authorities
- Transmission Operators
- Generator Operators

Reliability Standard PRC-001-1.1(ii) includes six requirements.

On March 13, 2015, NERC submitted a petition for approval of PRC-001-1.1(ii) to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on May 29, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

PRC-004-2.1(i)a- Ensure all transmission and generation Protection System Misoperations affecting the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES) are analyzed and mitigated.

Applicability:

- Transmission Owner
- Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System
- Generator Owner

Reliability Standard PRC-004-2.1(i)a includes three requirements.

On February 6, 2015, NERC submitted a petition for approval of PRC-004-2.1(i)a to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on May 29, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

PRC-004-3- Identify and correct the causes of Misoperations of Protection Systems for Bulk Electric System (BES) Elements.

Applicability:

- Transmission Owner
- Generator Owner
- Distribution Provider
- Protection Systems for BES Elements, with the following exclusions:
  - Non-protective functions that are embedded within a Protection System
  - Protective functions intended to operate as a control function during switching
  - Special Protection Systems (SPS)
  - Remedial Action Schemes (RAS)
- Underfrequency load shedding (UFLS) that is intended to trip one or more BES Elements

Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 includes six requirements and an attached process flow chart.

On September 15, 2014, NERC submitted a petition for approval of PRC-004-3 to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on May 13, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

PRC-004-4- Identify and correct the causes of Misoperations of Protection Systems for Bulk Electric System (BES) Elements.

Applicability:

- Transmission Owner
- Generator Owner
- Distribution Provider
- Protection Systems for BES Elements, with the following exclusions:
    - Non-protective functions that are embedded within a Protection System
    - Protective functions intended to operate as a control function during switching
    - Special Protection Systems (SPS)
    - Remedial Action Schemes (RAS)
    - Protection Systems of individual dispersed power producing resources identified under Inclusion I4 of the BES definition where the Misoperations affected an aggregate nameplate rating of less than or equal to 75 MVA of BES Facilities.
- Underfrequency load shedding (UFLS) that is intended to trip one or more BES Elements

Reliability Standard PRC-004-4 includes six requirements and an attached process flow chart.

On February 6, 2015, NERC submitted a petition for approval of PRC-004-4 to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on May 29, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

PRC-005-2(i)- To document and implement programs for the maintenance of all Protection Systems affecting the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES) so that these Protection Systems are kept in working order.

Applicability:

- Transmission Owner
- Generator Owner
- Distribution Provider
- Protection Systems that are installed for the purpose of detecting Faults on BES Elements (lines, buses, transformers, etc.)
- Protection Systems used for underfrequency load-shedding systems installed per ERO underfrequency load-shedding requirements.
- Protection Systems used for undervoltage load-shedding systems installed to prevent system voltage collapse or voltage instability for BES reliability.
- Protection Systems installed as a Special Protection System (SPS) for BES reliability.
- Protection Systems for the following BES generator Facilities for generators not identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:
    - Protection Systems that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or auxiliary tripping relays.
    - Protection Systems for generator step-up transformers for generators that are part of the BES.
    - Protection Systems for station service or excitation transformers connected to the generator bus of generators which are part of the BES, that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or tripping auxiliary relays.
- Protection Systems for the following BES generator Facilities for dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:
    - Protection Systems for Facilities used in aggregating dispersed BES generation from the point where those resources aggregate to greater than 75 MVA to a common point of connection at 100 kV or above.

Reliability Standard PRC-005-2(i) includes five requirements and several associated tables.

On February 6, 2015, NERC submitted a petition for approval of PRC-005-2(i) to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on May 29, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

PRC-005-3(i)- To document and implement programs for the maintenance of all Protection Systems and Automatic Reclosing affecting the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES) so that they are kept in working order.

Applicability:

- Transmission Owner
- Generator Owner
- Distribution Provider
- Protection Systems that are installed for the purpose of detecting Faults on BES Elements (lines, buses, transformers, etc.)
- Protection Systems used for underfrequency load-shedding systems installed per ERO underfrequency load-shedding requirements.
- Protection Systems used for undervoltage load-shedding systems installed to prevent system voltage collapse or voltage instability for BES reliability.
- Protection Systems installed as a Special Protection System (SPS) for BES reliability.
- Protection Systems for the following BES generator Facilities for generators not identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:
    - Protection Systems that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or auxiliary tripping relays.
    - Protection Systems for generator step-up transformers for generators that are part of the BES.
    - Protection Systems for station service or excitation transformers connected to the generator bus of generators which are part of the BES, that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or tripping auxiliary relays.
- Protection Systems for the following BES generator Facilities for dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:
    - Protection Systems for Facilities used in aggregating dispersed BES generation from the point where those resources aggregate to greater than 75 MVA to a common point of connection at 100 kV or above.
- Automatic Reclosing[1], including:
    - Automatic Reclosing applied on the terminals of Elements connected to the BES bus located at generating plant substations where the total installed gross generating plant capacity is greater than the gross capacity of the largest BES generating unit within the Balancing Authority Area.
    - Automatic Reclosing applied on the terminals of all BES Elements at substations one bus away from generating plants specified in Section 4.2.7.1 [of Applicability Section of standard] when the substation is less than 10 circuit-miles from the generating plant substation.

[1] Automatic Reclosing addressed in Section 4.2.7.1 and 4.2.7.2 [of Applicability Section of standard] may be excluded if the equipment owner can demonstrate that a close-in three-phase fault present for twice the normal clearing time (capturing a minimum trip-close-trip time delay) does not result in a total loss of gross generation in the Interconnection exceeding the gross capacity of the largest BES generating unit within the Balancing Authority Area where the Automatic Reclosing is applied.

- o Automatic Reclosing applied as an integral part of an SPS specified in Section 4.2.4 [of Applicability Section of standard].

Reliability Standard PRC-005-3(i) includes five requirements and several associated tables.

On February 6, 2015, NERC submitted a petition for approval of PRC-005-3(i) to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on May 29, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

PRC-019-2- To verify coordination of generating unit Facility or synchronous condenser voltage regulating controls, limit functions, equipment capabilities and Protection System settings.

Applicability:

- Generator Owner
- Transmission Owner that owns synchronous condenser(s)
- Individual generating unit greater than 20 MVA (gross nameplate rating) directly connected to the Bulk Electric System.
- Individual synchronous condenser greater than 20 MVA (gross nameplate rating) directly connected to the Bulk Electric System.
- Generating plant/ Facility consisting of one or more units that are connected to the Bulk Electric System at a common bus with total generation greater than 75 MVA (gross aggregate nameplate rating).
    - This includes individual generating units of the dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition where voltage regulating control for the facility is performed solely at the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resources.
- Any generator, regardless of size, that is a blackstart unit material to and designated as part of a Transmission Operator’s restoration plan.

Reliability Standard PRC-019-2 includes two requirements and three associated diagrams.

On March 13, 2015, NERC submitted a petition for approval of PRC-019-2 to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (“FERC”), and on May 29, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

PRC-024-2- Ensure Generator Owners set their generator protective relays such that generating units remain connected during defined frequency and voltage excursions.

Applicability:

- Generator Owner

Reliability Standard PRC-024-2 includes four requirements and several associated tables and diagrams.

On March 13, 2015, NERC submitted a petition for approval of PRC-024-2 to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (“FERC”), and on May 29, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

VAR-002-4- To ensure generators provide reactive support and voltage control, within generating Facility capabilities, in order to protect equipment and maintain reliable operation of the Interconnection.

Applicability:

- Generator Operator
- Generator Owner

Reliability Standard VAR-002-4 includes six requirements.

On February 6, 2015, NERC submitted a petition for approval of VAR-002-4 to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on May 29, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

Exhibit C: List of Currently Effective NERC Reliability Standards

EXHIBIT C

Resource and Demand Balancing (BAL)	
BAL-001-1	Real Power Balancing Control Performance
BAL-001-TRE-1	Primary Frequency Response in the ERCOT Region
BAL-002-1	Disturbance Control Performance
BAL-002-WECC-2	Contingency Reserve
BAL-003-1	Frequency Response and Frequency Bias Setting
BAL-004-0	Time Error Correction
BAL-004-WECC-02	Automatic Time Error Correction (ATEC)
BAL-005-0.2b	Automatic Generation Control
BAL-006-2	Inadvertent Interchange
BAL-502-RFC-02	Planning Resource Adequacy Analysis, Assessment and Documentation
Communications (COM)	
COM-001-1.1	Telecommunications
COM-002-2	Communications and Coordination
Critical Infrastructure Protection (CIP)	
CIP-002-3	Cyber Security — Critical Cyber Asset Identification
CIP-003-3	Cyber Security — Security Management Controls
CIP-004-3a	Cyber Security — Personnel & Training
CIP-005-3a	Cyber Security — Electronic Security Perimeter(s)
CIP-006-3c	Cyber Security — Physical Security of Critical Cyber Assets
CIP-007-3a	Cyber Security — Systems Security Management
CIP-008-3	Cyber Security — Incident Reporting and Response Planning
CIP-009-3	Cyber Security — Recovery Plans for Critical Cyber Assets
Emergency Preparedness and Operations (EOP)	
EOP-001-2.1b	Emergency Operations Planning
EOP-002-3.1	Capacity and Energy Emergencies
EOP-003-2	Load Shedding Plans

EOP-004-2	Event Reporting
EOP-005-2	System Restoration from Blackstart Resources
EOP-006-2	System Restoration Coordination
EOP-008-1	Loss of Control Center Functionality
EOP-010-1	Geomagnetic Disturbance Operations
Facilities Design, Connections, and Maintenance (FAC)	
FAC-001-1	Facility Connection Requirements
FAC-002-1	Coordination of Plans For New Generation, Transmission, and End-User Facilities
FAC-003-3	Transmission Vegetation Management
FAC-008-3	Facility Ratings
FAC-010-2.1	System Operating Limits Methodology for the Planning Horizon
FAC-011-2	System Operating Limits Methodology for the Operations Horizon
FAC-013-2	Assessment of Transfer Capability for the Near-Term Transmission Planning Horizon
FAC-014-2	Establish and Communicate System Operating Limits
FAC-501-WECC-1	Transmission Maintenance
Interchange Scheduling and Coordination (INT)	
INT-004-3.1	Dynamic Transfers
INT-006-4	Evaluation of Interchange Transactions
INT-009-2.1	Implementation of Interchange
INT-010-2.1	Interchange Initiation and Modification for Reliability
INT-011-1.1	Intra-Balancing Authority Transaction Identification
Interconnection Reliability Operations and Coordination (IRO)	
IRO-001-1.1	Reliability Coordination — Responsibilities and Authorities
IRO-002-2	Reliability Coordination — Facilities
IRO-003-2	Reliability Coordination — Wide-Area View
IRO-004-2	Reliability Coordination — Operations Planning
IRO-005-3.1a	Reliability Coordination — Current Day Operations
IRO-006-5	Reliability Coordination — Transmission Loading Relief (TLR)

IRO-006-EAST-1	Transmission Loading Relief Procedure for the Eastern Interconnection
IRO-006-TRE-1	IROL and SOL Mitigation in the ERCOT Region
IRO-006-WECC-2	Qualified Transfer Path Unscheduled Flow (USF) Relief
IRO-008-1	Reliability Coordinator Operational Analyses and Real-time Assessments
IRO-009-1	Reliability Coordinator Actions to Operate Within IROLs
IRO-010-1a	Reliability Coordinator Data Specification and Collection
IRO-014-1	Procedures, Processes, or Plans to Support Coordination Between Reliability Coordinators
IRO-015-1	Notifications and Information Exchange Between Reliability Coordinators
IRO-016-1	Coordination of Real-time Activities Between Reliability Coordinators
Modeling, Data, and Analysis (MOD)	
MOD-001-1a	Available Transmission System Capability
MOD-004-1	Capacity Benefit Margin
MOD-008-1	Transmission Reliability Margin Calculation Methodology
MOD-010-0	Steady-State Data for Modeling and Simulation of the Interconnected Transmission System
MOD-012-0	Dynamics Data for Modeling and Simulation of the Interconnected Transmission System
MOD-016-1.1	Documentation of Data Reporting Requirements for Actual and Forecast Demands, Net Energy for Load, and Controllable Demand-Side Management
MOD-017-0.1	Aggregated Actual and Forecast Demands and Net Energy for Load
MOD-018-0	Treatment of Nonmember Demand Data and How Uncertainties are Addressed in the Forecasts of Demand and Net Energy for Load
MOD-019-0.1	Reporting of Interruptible Demands and Direct Control Load Management
MOD-020-0	Providing Interruptible Demands and Direct Control Load Management Data to System Operators and Reliability Coordinators
MOD-021-1	Documentation of the Accounting Methodology for the Effects of Demand-Side Management in Demand and Energy Forecasts
MOD-026-1	Verification of Models and Data for Generator Excitation Control System or Plant Volt/Var Control Functions

MOD-027-1	Verification of Models and Data for Turbine/Governor and Load Control or Active Power/Frequency Control Functions
MOD-028-2	Area Interchange Methodology
MOD-029-1a	Rated System Path Methodology
MOD-030-2	Flowgate Methodology
MOD-032-1	Data for Power System Modeling and Analysis
Nuclear (NUC)	
NUC-001-2.1	Nuclear Plant Interface Coordination
Personnel Performance, Training, and Qualifications (PER)	
PER-001-0.2	Operating Personnel Responsibility and Authority
PER-003-1	Operating Personnel Credentials
PER-004-2	Reliability Coordination — Staffing
PER-005-1	System Personnel Training
Protection and Control (PRC)	
PRC-001-1.1(ii)	System Protection Coordination
PRC-002-NPCC-01	Disturbance Monitoring
PRC-004-2.1(i)a	Analysis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection System Misoperations
PRC-004-WECC-1	Protection System and Remedial Action Scheme Misoperation
PRC-005-1.1b	Transmission and Generation Protection System Maintenance and Testing
PRC-005-2(i)	Protection System Maintenance
PRC-006-1	Automatic Underfrequency Load Shedding
PRC-006-NPCC-1	Automatic Underfrequency Load Shedding
PRC-006-SERC-01	Automatic Underfrequency Load Shedding Requirements
PRC-008-0	Implementation and Documentation of Underfrequency Load Shedding Equipment Maintenance Program
PRC-010-0	Technical Assessment of the Design and Effectiveness of Undervoltage Load Shedding Program
PRC-011-0	Undervoltage Load Shedding System Maintenance and Testing
PRC-015-0	Special Protection System Data and Documentation
PRC-016-0.1	Special Protection System Misoperations

PRC-017-0	Special Protection System Maintenance and Testing
PRC-018-1	Disturbance Monitoring Equipment Installation and Data Reporting
PRC-021-1	Under-Voltage Load Shedding Program Data
PRC-022-1	Under-Voltage Load Shedding Program Performance
PRC-023-2	Transmission Relay Loadability
PRC-023-3	Transmission Relay Loadability
PRC-025-1	Generator Relay Loadability
Transmission Operations (TOP)	
TOP-001-1a	Reliability Responsibilities and Authorities
TOP-002-2.1b	Normal Operations Planning
TOP-003-1	Planned Outage Coordination
TOP-004-2	Transmission Operations
TOP-005-2a	Operational Reliability Information
TOP-006-2	Monitoring System Conditions
TOP-007-0	Reporting System Operating Limit (SOL) and Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit (IROL) Violations
TOP-007-WECC-1a	System Operating Limits
TOP-008-1	Response to Transmission Limit Violations
Transmission Planning (TPL)	
TPL-001-0.1	System Performance Under Normal (No Contingency) Conditions (Category A)
TPL-001-4	Transmission System Planning Performance Requirements
TPL-002-0b	System Performance Following Loss of a Single Bulk Electric System Element (Category B)
TPL-003-0b	System Performance Following Loss of Two or More Bulk Electric System Elements (Category C)
TPL-004-0a	System Performance Following Extreme Events Resulting in the Loss of Two or More Bulk Electric System Elements (Category D)
Voltage and Reactive (VAR)	
VAR-001-4	Voltage and Reactive Control
VAR-002-4	Generator Operation for Maintaining Network Voltage Schedules

BEFORE THE
NOVA SCOTIA UTILITY AND REVIEW BOARD
OF THE PROVINCE OF NOVA SCOTIA

North American Electric	**)**
Reliability Corporation	**)**

SECOND QUARTER 2015 APPLICATION FOR APPROVAL OF RELIABILITY STANDARDS OF THE NORTH AMERICAN ELECTRIC RELIABILITY CORPORATION

Gerald W. Cauley
President and Chief Executive Officer
North American Electric Reliability Corporation
3353 Peachtree Road, N.E.
Suite 600, North Tower
Atlanta, GA 30326
(404) 446-2560
(404) 446-2595– facsimile

Charles A. Berardesco
Senior Vice President and General Counsel
Holly A. Hawkins
Associate General Counsel
Andrew C. Wills
Associate Counsel
North American Electric Reliability Corporation
1325 G Street, N.W., Suite 600
Washington, D.C. 20005
(202) 400-3000
(202) 644-8099– facsimile
charles.berardesco@nerc.net
holly.hawkins@nerc.net
andrew.wills@nerc.net

Counsel for the North American Electric Reliability Corporation

August 27, 2015

TABLE OF CONTENTS

EXHIBITS

Exhibit A –

1.) Reliability Standards Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015;

2.) Reliability Standards Filed for Approval[1]; and

3.) Updated *Glossary of Terms Used in NERC Reliability Standards*

Exhibit B – Informational Summary of Each Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

Exhibit C – List of Currently Effective NERC Reliability Standards

[1] NERC notes that it recently filed an errata petition with the Commission seeking to revise COM-001-2, approved by the Commission during the second quarter and included in Exhibit A(2). Namely, the errata petition sought to revise a minor formatting error in that standard to improve clarity and consistency. Because the Commission has not acted on this petition as of the date of this order, NERC provides the citation for informational purposes only. *Errata to Petitions of the North American Electric Reliability Corporation for Approval of Reliability Standards BAL-003-1, COM-001-2, VAR-001-4, and Implementation Plan for Reliability Standard PRC-004-4,* Docket Nos. RM13-11-000, RM14-13-000, RD14-11-000 and RD15-3-000 (filed Aug. 25, 2015).

BEFORE THE
NOVA SCOTIA UTILITY AND REVIEW BOARD
OF THE PROVINCE OF NOVA SCOTIA

North American Electric	**)**
Reliability Corporation	**)**

SECOND QUARTER 2015 APPLICATION
FOR APPROVAL OF RELIABILITY STANDARDS OF THE
NORTH AMERICAN ELECTRIC RELIABILITY CORPORATION

The North American Electric Reliability Corporation ("NERC") hereby submits to the Nova Scotia Utility and Review Board ("NSUARB") an application for approval of the NERC Reliability Standards and an updated *Glossary of Terms Used in NERC Reliability Standards* ("NERC Glossary" or "Glossary") approved by the United States Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC" or the "Commission") during the second quarter of 2015. This filing covers the time period from April 1, 2015 through June 30, 2015. NERC requests that, as specified herein, these Reliability Standards and the associated NERC Glossary be made mandatory and enforceable for users, owners, and operators of the Bulk-Power System within the Province of Nova Scotia.

In support of this request, NERC submits the following information: (1) Reliability Standards approved by FERC in the second quarter of 2015 and the associated updated NERC Glossary (*see* **Exhibit A**); (2) an informational summary of each Reliability Standard applicable to Nova Scotia that was approved by FERC in the second quarter of 2015, including each standard's purpose, applicability, and filing and approval dates (*see* **Exhibit B**); and (3) an updated list of the currently effective NERC Reliability Standards as approved by FERC (*see* **Exhibit C**).

I. NOTICES AND COMMUNICATIONS

Notices and communications regarding this application may be addressed to:

Gerald W. Cauley
President and Chief Executive Officer
North American Electric Reliability Corporation
3353 Peachtree Road, N.E.
Suite 600, North Tower
Atlanta, GA 30326
(404) 446-2560
(404) 446-2595– facsimile

Charles A. Berardesco
Senior Vice President and General Counsel
Holly A. Hawkins
Associate General Counsel
Andrew C. Wills
Associate Counsel
North American Electric Reliability Corporation
1325 G Street, N.W., Suite 600
Washington, D.C. 20005
(202) 400-3000
(202) 644-8099– facsimile
charles.berardesco@nerc.net
holly.hawkins@nerc.net
andrew.wills@nerc.net

II. REQUEST FOR APPROVAL OF RELIABILITY STANDARDS

A. Background: NERC Quarterly Filing of Proposed Reliability Standards

Pursuant to Section 215 of the Federal Power Act[2], NERC has been certified by the Commission as the Electric Reliability Organization in the United States.[3] The Reliability Standards contained in **Exhibit A** have been approved by the Commission as mandatory and enforceable for users, owners, and operators of the Bulk-Power System within the United States. Some or all of NERC's Reliability Standards are also mandatory in the Canadian provinces of Alberta, British Columbia, Manitoba, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Ontario, Québec, and Saskatchewan.

---

[2] 16 U.S.C. § 824o(f) (2012) (entrusting FERC with the duties of approving and enforcing rules in the U.S. to ensure the reliability of the Nation's bulk power system, and with the duties of certifying an Electric Reliability Organization to develop mandatory and enforceable Reliability Standards, subject to FERC review and approval).

[3] *N. Am. Elec. Reliability Corp.*, 116 FERC ¶ 61,062 ("ERO Certification Order"), *order on reh'g & compliance*, 117 FERC ¶ 61,126 (2006), *aff'd sub nom. Alcoa, Inc. v. FERC*, 564 F.3d 1342 (D.C. Cir. 2009).

NERC entered into a Memorandum of Understanding ("MOU") with the NSUARB[4], and a separate MOU with Nova Scotia Power Incorporated ("NSPI") and the Northeast Power Coordinating Council, Inc. ("NPCC")[5], to provide reliability services to Nova Scotia. These MOUs became effective on December 22, 2006 and May 11, 2010, respectively. The December 22, 2006 MOU memorializes the relationship between NERC and the NSUARB formed to improve the reliability of the North American Bulk-Power System. The May 11, 2010 MOU sets forth the mutual understandings of NERC, NSPI, and NPCC regarding the approval and implementation of NERC Reliability Standards and NPCC Regional Reliability Criteria in Nova Scotia and other related matters.

On June 30, 2010, NERC submitted its first set of Reliability Standards and the NERC Glossary to the NSUARB, and on July 20, 2011, NSUARB issued a decision approving these documents. [6] In that decision, the NSUARB approved a "quarterly review" process for considering new and amended NERC Reliability Standards and criteria[7] and ordered that "applications will not be processed by the Board until [FERC] has approved or remanded the standards in the United States."[8] The NSUARB Decision also stated that NSUARB approval is not required for VRFs and VSLs associated with proposed Reliability Standards, but the NSUARB noted that it will accept VRFs and VSLs as guidance.[9]

---

4 *See* Memorandum of Understanding between Nova Scotia Utility and Review Board and North American Electric Reliability Corporation (signed Dec. 22, 2006).

5 *See* Memorandum of Understanding between Nova Scotia Power Incorporated and the Northeast Power Coordinating Council, Inc. and the North American Electric Reliability Corporation (signed May 11, 2010).

6 *In the Matter of an Application by North American Electric Reliability Corporation for Approval of its Reliability Standards, and an application by Northeast Power Coordinating Council, Inc. for Approval of its Regional Reliability Criteria*, NSUARB-NERC-R-10 (July 20, 2011) ("NSUARB Decision").

7 *Id.* at P 30.

8 *Id*.

9 *Id*. at P 33.

Based on the NSUARB Decision, NERC applications to the NSUARB only request approval for those Reliability Standards and Glossary definitions approved by FERC during the previous quarter. NERC does not seek formal approval of VRFs and VSLs associated with the Reliability Standards submitted in its quarterly applications. Rather, for informational purposes and for guidance, NERC provides a link below to the FERC-approved VRFs and VSLs associated with NERC Reliability Standards.[10] NERC does not include in its applications the full developmental record for the standards, which consists of the draft standards, comments received, responses to the comments by the drafting teams, and the full voting record, because the record for each standard may consist of several thousand pages. NERC will make the full developmental records available to the NSUARB or other interested parties upon request.

B. Overview of NERC Reliability Standards Development Process

NERC Reliability Standards define the requirements for reliably planning and operating the North American Bulk-Power System. These standards are developed by industry stakeholders using a balanced, open, fair, and inclusive process managed by the NERC Standards Committee. The Standards Committee is facilitated by NERC staff and comprised of representatives from ten electricity stakeholder segments. Stakeholders, through the balloting process, have approved the standards provided in **Exhibit A**, and the standards have been adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees.

NERC develops Reliability Standards and associated definitions in accordance with Section 300 (Reliability Standards Development) and Appendix 3A (Standards Processes

---

[10] NERC's VRF Matrix and VSL Matrix are available at: http://www.nerc.com/pa/Stand/Pages/AllReliabilityStandards.aspx?jurisdiction=United States. *See* left-hand side of webpage for downloadable documents.

Manual) of its Rules of Procedure.[11] NERC's Reliability Standards development process has been approved by the American National Standards Institute as being open, inclusive, balanced, and fair. The NERC Glossary, most recently updated May 19, 2015, contains each term that is defined for use in one or more of NERC's continent-wide or regional Reliability Standards approved by the NERC Board of Trustees, and it is submitted with this application for informational purposes.

C. Description of Proposed Definitions and Reliability Standards, Second Quarter 2015

As explained below, the following four FERC orders were issued in the second quarter of 2015 approving NERC Reliability Standards and related NERC Glossary terms: (1) an order approving Reliability Standard BAL-001-2 and four associated definitions, issued on April 16, 2015;[12] (2) an order approving Reliability Standards COM-001-2 and COM-002-4 and three new definitions, issued on April 16, 2015;[13] (3) an order approving Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 and two new definitions, issued on May 13, 2015;[14] (4) a letter order approving eight Dispersed Generation Resources Reliability Standards, issued on May 29, 2015.[15]

The chart below shows the U.S. effective dates of the Reliability Standards that were approved by FERC during the previous quarter. Please note that Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 is not included in this chart because a revised version of this standard, PRC-004-4, was subsequently developed and submitted to the Commission to account for Dispersed Generation Resources. Thus, PRC-004-3 was superseded by PRC-004-4 and will not go into effect.

---

11 The NERC *Rules of Procedure* are available at: http://www.nerc.com/AboutNERC/Pages/Rules-of-Procedure.aspx.

12 *N. Am. Elec. Reliability Corp.*, 151 FERC ¶ 61, 048 (2015).

13 *N. Am. Elec. Reliability Corp.*, 151 FERC ¶ 61, 039 (2015).

14 *N. Am. Elec. Reliability Corp.*, 151 FERC ¶ 61, 129 (2015).

15 *N. Am. Elec. Reliability Corp.*, 151 FERC ¶ 61, 186 (2015).

Reliability Standard	Effective Date
Resource and Demand Balancing (BAL) Standard	
BAL-001-2*	7/1/2016
Communications (COM) Standards	
COM-001-2*	10/1/2015
COM-002-4*	7/1/2016
Protection and Control (PRC) Standards	
PRC-001-1.1(ii)	5/29/2015
PRC-004-2.1(i)a	5/29/2015
PRC-004-3*	Never becomes effective**
PRC-004-4*	7/1/2016
PRC-005-2(i)	5/29/2015
PRC-005-3(i)*	4/1/2016
PRC-019-2*	7/1/2016
PRC-024-2*	7/1/2016
Voltage and Reactive (VAR) Standard	
VAR-002-4	5/29/2015

* At the time of this filing, all standards marked with an asterisk are not yet effective, but have been approved by FERC and have a future mandatory effective date.
** As mentioned in the Second Quarter 2015 Application for Approval of Reliability Standards, PRC-004-3 will never become effective, as PRC-004-4 becomes effective on the effective date for PRC-004-3 and retires PRC-004-3 in the process.

1. <u>BAL-001-2</u>

On April 16, 2015, FERC approved Reliability Standard BAL-001-2 (Real Power Balancing Control Performance), four new definitions to be added to the NERC Glossary, and the retirement of currently effective Reliability Standard BAL-001-1. Reliability Standard BAL-001-2 is designed to ensure that applicable entities maintain system frequency within narrow bounds around a scheduled value, and improves reliability by adding a frequency component to the measurement of a Balancing Authority's Area Control Error. The approved definitions of the terms "Regulation Reserve Sharing Group," "Reserve Sharing Group ACE," "Reporting ACE" and "Interconnection" are now included in the updated Glossary in **Exhibit A**.

2. COM-001-2 and COM-002-4

On April 16, 2015, FERC approved Reliability Standards COM-001-2 (Communications)[16] and COM-002-4 (Operating Personnel Communications Protocols), three new definitions to be added to the NERC Glossary, and the retirement of the currently effective Reliability Standards COM-001-1.1, EOP-008-1 (Requirement R1), and COM-002-2. The approved definitons of the terms "Operation Instruction," "Interpersonal Communication," and "Alternative Interpersonal Communication" are now included in the updated Glossary in **Exhibit A**. Reliability Standards COM-001-2 and COM-002-4 replace and improve upon the currently effective COM-001-1.1 and COM-002-2 to establish requirements for communication capabilities and communications protocols necessary to maintain reliability.

Reliability Standard COM-001-2 establishes a clear set of requirements for what communications capabilities various functional entities must maintain for reliable communications, thereby improving the existing standard. Reliability Standard COM-002-4 requires use of the same protocols regardless of the current operating condition and requires entities to have or create a set of documented communications protocols that include certain minimum mandatory protocols. The revisions in COM-002-4 improve communications surrounding the issuance of Operating Instructions by employing predefined communications protocols by reducing the possibility of miscommunication that could lead to action or inaction harmful to the reliability of the Bulk Electric System.

---

[16] As explained in Footnote 1 above, NERC notes that it filed an errata petition with the Commission on August 25, 2015, seeking to revise a minor formatting inconsistency. Because the Commission has not approved the errata petition as of the date of this application, NERC highlights this filing for informational purposes only. The full text of the errata petition, which explains the revisions in detail, can be found online at: http://www.nerc.com/FilingsOrders/us/NERC%20Filings%20to%20FERC%20DL/Errata%20to%20Proposed%20Reliability%20Standards.pdf.

3. PRC-004-3

On May 13, 2015, FERC approved Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 (Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction), one new definition and one revised definition to be included in the NERC Glossary, and the retirement of Reliability Standards PRC-004-2.1a and PRC-003-1. The approved new definition of "Composite Protection System" and the approved revised definition of the term "Misoperation" are now included in the updated Glossary in **Exhibit A**. Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 requires Transmission Owners, Generator Owners, and Distribution Providers to identify and correct causes of misoperations of certain protection systems. Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 addresses an existing reliability gap by applying the standard to underfrequency load shedding that is intended to trip one or more Bulk Electric System Elements.

Less than a month after the Commission approved Reliability Standard PRC-004-3, it issued an order on a suite of Dispersed Generation Resources Reliability Standards which included a later version of this standard, PRC-004-4. Because the implementation plan for PRC-004-4 anticipates that PRC-004-4 will become effective on the effective date for PRC-004-3 and will immediately retire PRC-004-3, Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 will never become enforceable in the United States. Rather, PRC-004-4, described below, will become effective immediately upon the effective date for PRC-004-3.

4. Dispersed Generations Resources Reliability Standards

On May 29, 2015, FERC approved the following Reliability Standards:

- PRC-001-1.1(ii) – System Protection Coordination;

- PRC-004-2.1(i)a – Anaylsis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection System Misoperations;
- PRC-004-4 – Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction;
- PRC-005-2(i) – Protection System Maintenance;
- PRC-005-3(i) – Protection System and Aunomatic Reclosing Maintenance;
- PRC-019-2 – Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Protective Regulating Controls, and Protection;
- PRC-024-2 – Generator Frequency and Voltage Protection Relay Settings; and
- VAR-002-4 – Generator Operation for Maintaing Network Voltage Schedules.

The Dispersed Generations Resources standards revisions highlight how the unique operating characteristics of dispersed power producing resources impact the applicability of NERC Reliability Standards and implement changes to account for these differences.

III. CONCLUSION

NERC respectfully requests that the NSUARB approve the Reliability Standards and NERC Glossary definitions as specified herein.

Respectfully submitted,

/s/ *Andrew C. Wills*

Charles A. Berardesco
Senior Vice President and General Counsel
Holly A. Hawkins
Associate General Counsel
Andrew C. Wills
Associate Counsel
North American Electric Reliability Corporation
1325 G Street, N.W., Suite 600
Washington, D.C. 20005
(202) 400-3000
(202) 644-8099– facsimile
charles.berardesco@nerc.net
holly.hawkins@nerc.net
andrew.wills@nerc.net

Counsel for the North American Electric Reliability Corporation

Exhibit A (1): Reliability Standards Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

Reliability Standard	Effective Date
Resource and Demand Balancing (BAL) Standard	
BAL-001-2*	7/1/2016
Communications (COM) Standards	
COM-001-2*	10/1/2015
COM-002-4*	7/1/2016
Protection and Control (PRC) Standards	
PRC-001-1.1(ii)	5/29/2015
PRC-004-2.1(i)a	5/29/2015
PRC-004-3*	Never becomes effective**
PRC-004-4	7/1/2016
PRC-005-2(i)	5/29/2016
PRC-005-3(i)*	4/1/2016
PRC-019-2*	7/1/2016
PRC-024-2*	7/1/2016
Voltage and Reactive (VAR) Standard	
VAR-002-4	5/29/2015

* At the time of this filing, all standards marked with an asterisk are not yet effective, but have been approved by FERC and have a future mandatory effective date.

** As mentioned in the Second Quarter 2015 Application for Approval of Reliability Standards, PRC-004-3 will never become effective, as PRC-004-4 becomes effective on the effective date for PRC-004-3 and retires PRC-004-3 in the process.

Exhibit A (2): PDF Copies of Reliability Standards Filed for Approval

Reliability Standard BAL-001-2

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Real Power Balancing Control Performance**
2. **Number:** **BAL-001-2**
3. **Purpose:** To control Interconnection frequency within defined limits.
4. **Applicability:**

   4.1. Balancing Authority

   4.1.1 A Balancing Authority receiving Overlap Regulation Service is not subject to Control Performance Standard 1 (CPS1) or Balancing Authority ACE Limit (BAAL) compliance evaluation.

   4.1.2 A Balancing Authority that is a member of a Regulation Reserve Sharing Group is the Responsible Entity only in periods during which the Balancing Authority is not in active status under the applicable agreement or the governing rules for the Regulation Reserve Sharing Group.

   4.2. Regulation Reserve Sharing Group

5. **(Proposed) Effective Date:**

   5.1. First day of the first calendar quarter that is twelve months beyond the date that this standard is approved by applicable regulatory authorities, or in those jurisdictions where regulatory approval is not required, the standard becomes effective the first day of the first calendar quarter that is twelve months beyond the date this standard is approved by the NERC Board of Trustees, or as otherwise made effective pursuant to the laws applicable to such ERO governmental authorities.

B. Requirements

R1. The Responsible Entity shall operate such that the Control Performance Standard 1 (CPS1), calculated in accordance with Attachment 1, is greater than or equal to 100 percent for the applicable Interconnection in which it operates for each preceding 12 consecutive calendar month period, evaluated monthly. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

R2. Each Balancing Authority shall operate such that its clock-minute average of Reporting ACE does not exceed its clock-minute Balancing Authority ACE Limit (BAAL) for more than 30 consecutive clock-minutes, calculated in accordance with Attachment 2, for the applicable Interconnection in which the Balancing Authority operates.*[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

C. Measures

M1. The Responsible Entity shall provide evidence, upon request, such as dated calculation output from spreadsheets, system logs, software programs, or other evidence (either in hard copy or electronic format) to demonstrate compliance with Requirement R1.

M2. Each Balancing Authority shall provide evidence, upon request, such as dated calculation output from spreadsheets, system logs, software programs, or other evidence (either in hard copy or electronic format) to demonstrate compliance with Requirement R2.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Data Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full-time period since the last audit.

The Responsible Entity shall retain data or evidence to show compliance for the current year, plus three previous calendar years unless, directed by its Compliance Enforcement Authority, to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation. Data required for the calculation of Regulation Reserve Sharing Group Reporting Ace, or Reporting ACE, CPS1, and BAAL shall be retained in digital format at the same scan rate at which the Reporting ACE is calculated for the current year, plus three previous calendar years.

If a Responsible Entity is found noncompliant, it shall keep information related to the noncompliance until found compliant, or for the time period specified above, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit records and all subsequent requested and submitted records.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

Compliance Audits

Self-Certifications

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaints

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None.

2. Violation Severity Levels

R #	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	The CPS 1 value of the Responsible Entity, for the preceding 12 consecutive calendar month period, is less than 100 percent but greater than or equal to 95 percent for the applicable Interconnection.	The CPS 1 value of the Responsible Entity, for the preceding 12 consecutive calendar month period, is less than 95 percent, but greater than or equal to 90 percent for the applicable Interconnection.	The CPS 1 value of the Responsible Entity, for the preceding 12 consecutive calendar month period, is less than 90 percent, but greater than or equal to 85 percent for the applicable Interconnection.	The CPS 1 value of the Responsible Entity, for the preceding 12 consecutive calendar month period, is less than 85 percent for the applicable Interconnection.
R2	The Balancing Authority exceeded its clock-minute BAAL for more than 30 consecutive clock minutes but for 45 consecutive clock-minutes or less for the applicable Interconnection.	The Balancing Authority exceeded its clock-minute BAAL for greater than 45 consecutive clock minutes but for 60 consecutive clock-minutes or less for the applicable Interconnection.	The Balancing Authority exceeded its clock-minute BAAL for greater than 60 consecutive clock minutes but for 75 consecutive clock-minutes or less for the applicable Interconnection.	The Balancing Authority exceeded its clock-minute BAAL for greater than 75 consecutive clock-minutes for the applicable Interconnection.

E. Regional Variances

None.

F. Associated Documents

BAL-001-2, Real Power Balancing Control Performance Standard Background Document

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	February 8, 2005	BOT Approval	New
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Implementation Date	New
0	August 8, 2005	Removed "Proposed" from Effective Date	Errata
0	July 24, 2007	Corrected R3 to reference M1 and M2 instead of R1 and R2	Errata
0a	December 19, 2007	Added Appendix 2 – Interpretation of R1 approved by BOT on October 23, 2007	Revised
0a	January 16, 2008	In Section A.2., Added "a" to end of standard number In Section F, corrected automatic numbering from "2" to "1" and removed "approved" and added parenthesis to "(October 23, 2007)"	Errata
0	January 23, 2008	Reversed errata change from July 24, 2007	Errata
0.1a	October 29, 2008	Board approved errata changes; updated version number to "0.1a"	Errata
0.1a	May 13, 2009	Approved by FERC	
1		Inclusion of BAAL and WECC Variance and exclusion of CPS2	Revision
1	December 19, 2012	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
2	August 15, 2013	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	
2	April 16, 2015	FERC Order issued approving BAL-001-2	

Attachment 1
Equations Supporting Requirement R1 and Measure M1

CPS1 is calculated as follows:

$$CPS1 = (2 - CF) * 100\%$$

The frequency-related compliance factor (CF), is a ratio of the accumulating clock-minute compliance parameters for the most recent preceding 12 consecutive calendar months, divided by the square of the target frequency bound:

$$CF = \frac{CF_{12\text{-month}}}{(\varepsilon 1_I)^2}$$

Where $\varepsilon 1_I$ is the constant derived from a targeted frequency bound for each Interconnection as follows:

- Eastern Interconnection $\varepsilon 1_I$ = 0.018 Hz
- Western Interconnection $\varepsilon 1_I$ = 0.0228 Hz
- ERCOT Interconnection $\varepsilon 1_I$ = 0.030 Hz
- Quebec Interconnection $\varepsilon 1_I$ = 0.021 Hz

The rating index $CF_{12\text{-month}}$ is derived from the most recent preceding 12 consecutive calendar months of data. The accumulating clock-minute compliance parameters are derived from the one-minute averages of Reporting ACE, Frequency Error, and Frequency Bias Settings.
A clock-minute average is the average of the reporting Balancing Authority's valid measured variable (i.e., for Reporting ACE (RACE) and for Frequency Error) for each sampling cycle during a given clock-minute.

$$\left(\frac{RACE}{-10B}\right)_{\text{clock-minute}} = \frac{\left(\frac{\sum RACE_{\text{sampling cycles in clock-minute}}}{n_{\text{sampling cycles in clock-minute}}}\right)}{-10B}$$

And,

$$\Delta F_{\text{clock-minute}} = \frac{\sum \Delta F_{\text{samplingcyclesin clock-minute}}}{n_{\text{samplingcyclesin clock-minute}}}$$

The Balancing Authority's clock-minute compliance factor ($CF_{\text{clock-minute}}$) calculation is:

$$CF_{\text{clock-minute}} = \left[\left(\frac{RACE}{-10B} \right)_{\text{clock-minute}} * \Delta F_{\text{clock-minute}} \right]$$

Normally, 60 clock-minute averages of the reporting Balancing Authority's Reporting ACE and Frequency Error will be used to compute the hourly average compliance factor ($CF_{\text{clock-hour}}$).

$$CF_{\text{clock-hour}} = \frac{\sum CF_{\text{clock-minute}}}{n_{\text{clock-minute samples in hour}}}$$

The reporting Balancing Authority shall be able to recalculate and store each of the respective clock-hour averages ($CF_{\text{clock-hour average-month}}$) and the data samples for each 24-hour period (one for each clock-hour; i.e., hour ending (HE) 0100, HE 0200, ..., HE 2400). To calculate the monthly compliance factor (CF_{month}):

$$\text{CF}_{\text{clock-hour average-month}} = \frac{\sum_{\text{days-in-month}} [(\text{CF}_{\text{clock-hour}})(n_{\text{one-minute samples in clock-hour}})]}{\sum_{\text{days-in month}} [n_{\text{one-minute samples in clock-hour}}]}$$

$$\text{CF}_{\text{month}} = \frac{\sum_{\text{hours-in-day}} [(\text{CF}_{\text{clock-hour average-month}})(n_{\text{one-minute samples in clock-hour averages}})]}{\sum_{\text{hours-in day}} [n_{\text{one-minute samples in clock-hour averages}}]}$$

To calculate the 12-month compliance factor ($CF_{\text{12 month}}$):

$$\text{CF}_{\text{12-month}} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{12} (CF_{\text{month-i}})(n_{(\text{one-minute samples in month})-i})]}{\sum_{i=1}^{12} [n_{(\text{one-minute samples in month})-i}]}$$

To ensure that the average Reporting ACE and Frequency Error calculated for any one-minute interval is representative of that time interval, it is necessary that at least 50 percent of both the Reporting ACE and Frequency Error sample data during the one-minute interval is valid. If the recording of Reporting ACE or Frequency Error is interrupted such that less than 50 percent of the one-minute sample period data is available or valid, then that one-minute interval is excluded from the CPS1 calculation.

A Balancing Authority providing Overlap Regulation Service to another Balancing Authority calculates its CPS1 performance after combining its Reporting ACE and Frequency Bias

Settings with the Reporting ACE and Frequency Bias Settings of the Balancing Authority receiving the Regulation Service.

Attachment 2

Equations Supporting Requirement R2 and Measure M2

When actual frequency is equal to Scheduled Frequency, $BAAL_{High}$ and $BAAL_{Low}$ do not apply.

When actual frequency is less than Scheduled Frequency, $BAAL_{High}$ does not apply, and $BAAL_{Low}$ is calculated as:

$$BAAL_{Low} = \left(-10B_i \times \left(FTL_{Low} - F_S\right)\right) \times \frac{\left(FTL_{Low} - F_S\right)}{\left(F_A - F_S\right)}$$

When actual frequency is greater than Scheduled Frequency, $BAAL_{Low}$ does not apply and the $BAAL_{High}$ is calculated as:

$$BAAL_{High} = \left(-10B_i \times \left(FTL_{High} - F_S\right)\right) \times \frac{\left(FTL_{High} - F_S\right)}{\left(F_A - F_S\right)}$$

Where**:**

$BAAL_{Low}$ is the Low Balancing Authority ACE Limit (MW)

$BAAL_{High}$ is the High Balancing Authority ACE Limit (MW)

10 is a constant to convert the Frequency Bias Setting from MW/0.1 Hz to MW/Hz

B_i is the Frequency Bias Setting for a Balancing Authority (expressed as MW/0.1 Hz)

F_A is the measured frequency in Hz.

F_S is the scheduled frequency in Hz.

FTL_{Low} is the Low Frequency Trigger Limit (calculated as F_S - $3\varepsilon 1_I$ Hz)

FTL_{High} is the High Frequency Trigger Limit (calculated as F_S + $3\varepsilon 1_I$ Hz)

Where $\varepsilon 1_I$ is the constant derived from a targeted frequency bound for each Interconnection as follows:

- Eastern Interconnection $\varepsilon 1_I$ = 0.018 Hz
- Western Interconnection $\varepsilon 1_I$ = 0.0228 Hz
- ERCOT Interconnection $\varepsilon 1_I$ = 0.030 Hz
- Quebec Interconnection $\varepsilon 1_I$ = 0.021 Hz

To ensure that the average actual frequency calculated for any one-minute interval is representative of that time interval, it is necessary that at least 50% of the actual frequency sample data during that one-minute interval is valid. If the recording of actual frequency is interrupted such that less than 50 percent of the one-minute sample period data is available or valid, then that one-minute interval is excluded from the BAAL calculation and the 30-minute clock would be reset to zero.

A Balancing Authority providing Overlap Regulation Service to another Balancing Authority calculates its BAAL performance after combining its Frequency Bias Setting with the Frequency Bias Setting of the Balancing Authority receiving Overlap Regulation Service.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard BAL-001-2 — Real Power Balancing Control Performance

<u>United States</u>

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
BAL-001-2	All	07/01/2016	

Reliability Standard COM-001-2

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Communications**
2. **Number:** COM-001-2
3. **Purpose:** To establish Interpersonal Communication capabilities necessary to maintain reliability.
4. **Applicability:**
   - **4.1.** Transmission Operator
   - **4.2.** Balancing Authority
   - **4.3.** Reliability Coordinator
   - **4.4.** Distribution Provider
   - **4.5.** Generator Operator
5. **Effective Date:** The first day of the second calendar quarter beyond the date that this standard is approved by applicable regulatory authorities, or in those jurisdictions where regulatory approval is not required, the standard becomes effective on the first day of the first calendar quarter beyond the date this standard is approved by the NERC Board of Trustees, or as otherwise made effective pursuant to the laws applicable to such ERO governmental authorities.

B. Requirements

R1. Each Reliability Coordinator shall have Interpersonal Communication capability with the following entities (unless the Reliability Coordinator detects a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in which case Requirement R10 shall apply): *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

1.1. All Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities within its Reliability Coordinator Area.

1.2. Each adjacent Reliability Coordinator within the same Interconnection.

R2. Each Reliability Coordinator shall designate an Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with the following entities: *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

2.1. All Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities within its Reliability Coordinator Area.

2.2. Each adjacent Reliability Coordinator within the same Interconnection.

R3. Each Transmission Operator shall have Interpersonal Communication capability with the following entities (unless the Transmission Operator detects a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in which case Requirement R10 shall apply): *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

3.1. Its Reliability Coordinator.

3.2. Each Balancing Authority within its Transmission Operator Area.

- **3.3.** Each Distribution Provider within its Transmission Operator Area.
- **3.4.** Each Generator Operator within its Transmission Operator Area.
- **3.5.** Each adjacent Transmission Operator synchronously connected.
- **3.6.** Each adjacent Transmission Operator asynchronously connected.

R4. Each Transmission Operator shall designate an Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with the following entities: *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

- **4.1.** Its Reliability Coordinator.
- **4.2.** Each Balancing Authority within its Transmission Operator Area.
- **4.3.** Each adjacent Transmission Operator synchronously connected.
- **4.4.** Each adjacent Transmission Operator asynchronously connected.

R5. Each Balancing Authority shall have Interpersonal Communication capability with the following entities (unless the Balancing Authority detects a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in which case Requirement R10 shall apply): *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

- **5.1.** Its Reliability Coordinator.
- **5.2.** Each Transmission Operator that operates Facilities within its Balancing Authority Area.
- **5.3.** Each Distribution Provider within its Balancing Authority Area.
- **5.4.** Each Generator Operator that operates Facilities within its Balancing Authority Area.
- **5.5.** Each Adjacent Balancing Authority.

R6. Each Balancing Authority shall designate an Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with the following entities: *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

- **1.1.** Its Reliability Coordinator.
- **1.2.** Each Transmission Operator that operates Facilities within its Balancing Authority Area.
- **1.3.** Each Adjacent Balancing Authority.

R7. Each Distribution Provider shall have Interpersonal Communication capability with the following entities (unless the Distribution Provider detects a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in which case Requirement R11 shall apply): *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

- **7.1.** Its Balancing Authority.
- **7.2.** Its Transmission Operator.

R8. Each Generator Operator shall have Interpersonal Communication capability with the following entities (unless the Generator Operator detects a failure of its Interpersonal

Communication capability in which case Requirement R11 shall apply): *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

8.1. Its Balancing Authority.

8.2. Its Transmission Operator.

R9. Each Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, and Balancing Authority shall test its Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability at least once each calendar month. If the test is unsuccessful, the responsible entity shall initiate action to repair or designate a replacement Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability within 2 hours. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Real-time Operations, Same-day Operations]*

R10. Each Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, and Balancing Authority shall notify entities as identified in Requirements R1, R3, and R5, respectively within 60 minutes of the detection of a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability that lasts 30 minutes or longer. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

R11. Each Distribution Provider and Generator Operator that detects a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability shall consult each entity affected by the failure, as identified in Requirement R7 for a Distribution Provider or Requirement R8 for a Generator Operator, to determine a mutually agreeable action for the restoration of its Interpersonal Communication capability. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

C. Measures

M1. Each Reliability Coordinator shall have and provide upon request evidence that it has Interpersonal Communication capability with all Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities within its Reliability Coordinator Area and with each adjacent Reliability Coordinator within the same Interconnection, which could include, but is not limited to:

- physical assets, or
- dated evidence, such as, equipment specifications and installation documentation, test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R1.)

M2. Each Reliability Coordinator shall have and provide upon request evidence that it designated an Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with all Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities within its Reliability Coordinator Area and with each adjacent Reliability Coordinator within the same Interconnection, which could include, but is not limited to:

- physical assets, or
- dated evidence, such as, equipment specifications and installation documentation, test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R2.)

M3. Each Transmission Operator shall have and provide upon request evidence that it has Interpersonal Communication capability with its Reliability Coordinator, each Balancing Authority, Distribution Provider, and Generator Operator within its Transmission Operator Area, and each adjacent Transmission Operator asynchronously or synchronously connected, which could include, but is not limited to:

- physical assets, or
- dated evidence, such as, equipment specifications and installation documentation, test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communication. (R3.)

M4. Each Transmission Operator shall have and provide upon request evidence that it designated an Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with its Reliability Coordinator, each Balancing Authority within its Transmission Operator Area, and each adjacent Transmission Operator asynchronously and synchronously connected, which could include, but is not limited to:

- physical assets, or
- dated evidence, such as, equipment specifications and installation documentation, test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R4.)

M5. Each Balancing Authority shall have and provide upon request evidence that it has Interpersonal Communication capability with its Reliability Coordinator, each Transmission Operator and Generator Operator that operates Facilities within its Balancing Authority Area, each Distribution Provider within its Balancing Authority Area, and each adjacent Balancing Authority, which could include, but is not limited to:

- physical assets, or
- dated evidence, such as, equipment specifications and installation documentation, test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R5.)

M6. Each Balancing Authority shall have and provide upon request evidence that it designated an Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with its Reliability Coordinator, each Transmission Operator that operates Facilities within its Balancing Authority Area, and each adjacent Balancing Authority, which could include, but is not limited to:

- physical assets, or
- dated evidence, such as, equipment specifications and installation documentation, test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R6.)

M7. Each Distribution Provider shall have and provide upon request evidence that it has Interpersonal Communication capability with its Transmission Operator and its Balancing Authority, which could include, but is not limited to:

- physical assets, or
- dated evidence, such as, equipment specifications and installation documentation, test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R7.)

M8. Each Generator Operator shall have and provide upon request evidence that it has Interpersonal Communication capability with its Balancing Authority and its Transmission Operator, which could include, but is not limited to:

- physical assets, or
- dated evidence, such as, equipment specifications and installation documentation, test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R8.)

M9. Each Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, and Balancing Authority shall have and provide upon request evidence that it tested, at least once each calendar month, its Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability designated in Requirements R2, R4, or R6. If the test was unsuccessful, the entity shall have and provide upon request evidence that it initiated action to repair or designated a replacement Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability within 2 hours. Evidence could include, but is not limited to: dated and time-stamped test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R9.)

M10. Each Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, and Balancing Authority shall have and provide upon request evidence that it notified entities as identified in Requirements R1, R3, and R5, respectively within 60 minutes of the detection of a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability that lasted 30 minutes or longer. Evidence could include, but is not limited to: dated and time-stamped test records, operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R10.)

M11. Each Distribution Provider and Generator Operator that detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability shall have and provide upon request evidence that it consulted with each entity affected by the failure, as identified in Requirement R7 for a Distribution Provider or Requirement R8 for a Generator Operator, to determine mutually agreeable action to restore the Interpersonal Communication capability. Evidence could include, but is not limited to: dated operator logs, voice recordings, transcripts of voice recordings, or electronic communications. (R11.)

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

The Regional Entity shall serve as the Compliance Enforcement Authority (CEA) unless the applicable entity is owned, operated, or controlled by the Regional Entity. In such cases, the ERO or a Regional Entity approved by FERC or other applicable governmental authority shall serve as the CEA.

1.2. Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Processes

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.3. Data Retention

The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, Balancing Authority, Distribution Provider, and Generator Operator shall keep data or evidence to show compliance as identified below unless directed by its Compliance Enforcement Authority to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation:

- The Reliability Coordinator for Requirements R1, R2, R9, and R10, Measures M1, M2, M9, and M10 shall retain written documentation for the most recent twelve calendar months and voice recordings for the most recent 90 calendar days.
- The Transmission Operator for Requirements R3, R4, R9, and R10, Measures M3, M4, M9, and M10 shall retain written documentation for the most recent twelve calendar months and voice recordings for the most recent 90 calendar days.
- The Balancing Authority forRequirements R5, R6, R9, and R10, Measures M5, M6, M9, and M10 shall retain written documentation for the most recent twelve calendar months and voice recordings for the most recent 90 calendar days.
- The Distribution Provider for Requirements R7 and R11, Measures M7 and M11 shall retain written documentation for the most recent twelve calendar months and voice recordings for the most recent 90 calendar days.
- The Generator Operator for Requirements R8 and R11, Measures M8 and M11 shall retain written documentation for the most recent twelve calendar months and voice recordings for the most recent 90 calendar days.

If a Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, Balancing Authority, Distribution Provider, or Generator Operator is found non-compliant, it shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is complete and approved or for the time specified above, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None.

2. Violation Severity Levels

R#	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	N/A	N/A	The Reliability Coordinator failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with one of the entities listed in Requirement R1, Parts 1.1 or 1.2, except when the Reliability Coordinator detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R10.	The Reliability Coordinator failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with two or more of the entities listed in Requirement R1, Parts 1.1 or 1.2, except when the Reliability Coordinator detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R10.
R2	N/A	N/A	The Reliability Coordinator failed to designate Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with one of the entities listed in Requirement R2, Parts 2.1 or 2.2.	The Reliability Coordinator failed to designate Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with two or more of the entities listed in Requirement R2, Parts 2.1 or 2.2.
R3	N/A	N/A	The Transmission Operator failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with one of the entities listed in Requirement R3, Parts 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, or 3.6, except when the Transmission Operator detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R10.	The Transmission Operator failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with two or more of the entities listed in Requirement R3, Parts 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, or 3.6, except when the Transmission Operator detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R10.
R4	N/A	N/A	The Transmission Operator failed to designate Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with one of the entities listed in Requirement R4, Parts 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, or 4.4.	The Transmission Operator failed to designate Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with two or more of the entities listed in Requirement R4, Parts 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, or 4.4.

R#	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R5	N/A	N/A	The Balancing Authority failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with one of the entities listed in Requirement R5, Parts 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, or 5.5, except when the Balancing Authority detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R10.	The Balancing Authority failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with two or more of the entities listed in Requirement R5, Parts 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, or 5.5, except when the Balancing Authority detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R10.
R6	N/A	N/A	The Balancing Authority failed to designate Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with one of the entities listed in Requirement R6, Parts 6.1, 6.2, or 6.3.	The Balancing Authority failed to designate Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability with two or more of the entities listed in Requirement R6, Parts 6.1, 6.2, or 6.3.
R7	N/A	N/A	The Distribution Provider failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with one of the entities listed in Requirement R7, Parts 7.1 or 7.2, except when the Distribution Provider detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R11.	The Distribution Provider failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with two or more of the entities listed in Requirement R7, Parts 7.1 or 7.2, except when the Distribution Provider detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R11.

R#	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R8	N/A	N/A	The Generator Operator failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with one of the entities listed in Requirement R8, Parts 8.1 or 8.2, except when a Generator Operator detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R11.	The Generator Operator failed to have Interpersonal Communication capability with two or more of the entities listed in Requirement R8, Parts 8.1 or 8.2, except when a Generator Operator detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in accordance with Requirement R11.
R9	The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority tested the Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability but failed to initiate action to repair or designate a replacement Alternative Interpersonal Communication in more than 2 hours and less than or equal to 4 hours upon an unsuccessful test.	The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority tested the Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability but failed to initiate action to repair or designate a replacement Alternative Interpersonal Communication in more than 4 hours and less than or equal to 6 hours upon an unsuccessful test.	The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority tested the Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability but failed to initiate action to repair or designate a replacement Alternative Interpersonal Communication in more than 6 hours and less than or equal to 8 hours upon an unsuccessful test.	The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority failed to test the Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability once each calendar month. OR The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority tested the Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability but failed to initiate action to repair or designate a replacement Alternative Interpersonal Communication in more than 8 hours upon an unsuccessful test.
R10	The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority failed to notify the entities identified in Requirements R1, R3, and R5, respectively upon the detection of a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in more than 60 minutes but less than or equal to 70 minutes.	The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority failed to notify the entities identified in Requirements R1, R3, and R5, respectively upon the detection of a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in more than 70 minutes but less than or equal to 80 minutes.	The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority failed to notify the entities identified in Requirements R1, R3, and R5, respectively upon the detection of a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in more than 80 minutes but less than or equal to 90 minutes.	The Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority failed to notify the entities identified in Requirements R1, R3, and R5, respectively upon the detection of a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability in more than 90 minutes.

R#	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R11	N/A	N/A	N/A	The Distribution Provider or Generator Operator that detected a failure of its Interpersonal Communication capability failed to consult with each entity affected by the failure, as identified in Requirement R7 for a Distribution Provider or Requirement R8 for a Generator Operator, to determine a mutually agreeable action for the restoration of the Interpersonal Communication capability.

E. Regional Differences

None identified.

F. Associated Documents

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Date	New
0	August 8, 2005	Removed “Proposed” from Effective Date	Errata
1	November 1, 2006	Adopted by Board of Trustees	Revised
1	April 4, 2007	Regulatory Approval — Effective Date	New
1	April 6, 2007	Requirement 1, added the word “for” between “facilities” and “the exchange.”	Errata
1.1	October 29, 2008	BOT adopted errata changes; updated version number to “1.1”	Errata
2	November 7, 2012	Adopted by Board of Trustees	Revised in accordance with SAR for Project 2006-06, Reliability Coordination (RC SDT). Replaced R1 with R1-R8; R2 replaced by R9; R3 included within new R1; R4 remains enforce pending Project 2007-02; R5 redundant with EOP-008-0, retiring R5 as redundant with EOP-008-0, R1; retiring R6, relates to ERO procedures; R10 & R11, new.
2	April 16, 2015	FERC Order issued approving COM-001-2	

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard COM-001-2 — Communications

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
COM-001-2	All	10/01/2015	

Reliability Standard COM-002-4

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** Operating Personnel Communications Protocols

2. **Number:** COM-002-4

3. **Purpose:** To improve communications for the issuance of Operating Instructions with predefined communications protocols to reduce the possibility of miscommunication that could lead to action or inaction harmful to the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES).

4. **Applicability:**

   4.1. Functional Entities

   4.1.1 Balancing Authority

   4.1.2 Distribution Provider

   4.1.3 Reliability Coordinator

   4.1.4 Transmission Operator

   4.1.5 Generator Operator

5. **Effective Date:** The standard shall become effective on the first day of the first calendar quarter that is twelve (12) months after the date that the standard is approved by an applicable governmental authority or as otherwise provided for in a jurisdiction where approval by an applicable governmental authority is required for a standard to go into effect. Where approval by an applicable governmental authority is not required, the standard shall become effective on the first day of the first calendar quarter that is twelve (12) months after the date the standard is adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees or as otherwise provided for in that jurisdiction.

B. Requirements

R1. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator shall develop documented communications protocols for its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions. The protocols shall, at a minimum: *[Violation Risk Factor: Low][Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*

1.1. Require its operating personnel that issue and receive an oral or written Operating Instruction to use the English language, unless agreed to otherwise. An alternate language may be used for internal operations.

1.2. Require its operating personnel that issue an oral two-party, person-to-person Operating Instruction to take one of the following actions:

- Confirm the receiver's response if the repeated information is correct.
- Reissue the Operating Instruction if the repeated information is incorrect or if requested by the receiver.

- Take an alternative action if a response is not received or if the Operating Instruction was not understood by the receiver.

1.3. Require its operating personnel that receive an oral two-party, person-to-person Operating Instruction to take one of the following actions:

- Repeat, not necessarily verbatim, the Operating Instruction and receive confirmation from the issuer that the response was correct.
- Request that the issuer reissue the Operating Instruction.

1.4. Require its operating personnel that issue a written or oral single-party to multiple-party burst Operating Instruction to confirm or verify that the Operating Instruction was received by at least one receiver of the Operating Instruction.

1.5. Specify the instances that require time identification when issuing an oral or written Operating Instruction and the format for that time identification.

1.6. Specify the nomenclature for Transmission interface Elements and Transmission interface Facilities when issuing an oral or written Operating Instruction.

R2. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator shall conduct initial training for each of its operating personnel responsible for the Real-time operation of the interconnected Bulk Electric System on the documented communications protocols developed in Requirement R1 prior to that individual operator issuing an Operating Instruction. *[Violation Risk Factor: Low][Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*

R3. Each Distribution Provider and Generator Operator shall conduct initial training for each of its operating personnel who can receive an oral two-party, person-to-person Operating Instruction prior to that individual operator receiving an oral two-party, person-to-person Operating Instruction to either: *[Violation Risk Factor: Low][Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*

- Repeat, not necessarily verbatim, the Operating Instruction and receive confirmation from the issuer that the response was correct, or

- Request that the issuer reissue the Operating Instruction.

R4. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator shall at least once every twelve (12) calendar months: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

4.1. Assess adherence to the documented communications protocols in Requirement R1 by its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions, provide feedback to those operating personnel and take corrective action, as deemed appropriate by the entity, to address deviations from the documented protocols.

4.2. Assess the effectiveness of its documented communications protocols in Requirement R1 for its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions and modify its documented communication protocols, as necessary.

R5. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator that issues an oral two-party, person-to-person Operating Instruction during an Emergency, excluding written or oral single-party to multiple-party burst Operating Instructions, shall either: *[Violation Risk Factor: High][Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

- Confirm the receiver's response if the repeated information is correct (in accordance with Requirement R6).
- Reissue the Operating Instruction if the repeated information is incorrect or if requested by the receiver, or
- Take an alternative action if a response is not received or if the Operating Instruction was not understood by the receiver.

R6. Each Balancing Authority, Distribution Provider, Generator Operator, and Transmission Operator that receives an oral two-party, person-to-person Operating Instruction during an Emergency, excluding written or oral single-party to multiple-party burst Operating Instructions, shall either: *[Violation Risk Factor: High][Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

- Repeat, not necessarily verbatim, the Operating Instruction and receive confirmation from the issuer that the response was correct, or
- Request that the issuer reissue the Operating Instruction.

R7. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator that issues a written or oral single-party to multiple-party burst Operating Instruction during an Emergency shall confirm or verify that the Operating Instruction was received by at least one receiver of the Operating Instruction. *[Violation Risk Factor: High][Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

C. Measures

M1. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator shall provide its documented communications protocols developed for Requirement R1.

M2. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator shall provide its initial training records related to its documented communications protocols developed for Requirement R1 such as attendance logs, agendas, learning objectives, or course materials in fulfillment of Requirement R2.

M3. Each Distribution Provider and Generator Operator shall provide its initial training records for its operating personnel such as attendance logs, agendas, learning objectives, or course materials in fulfillment of Requirement R3.

M4. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator shall provide evidence of its assessments, including spreadsheets, logs or other evidence of feedback, findings of effectiveness and any changes made to its documented communications protocols developed for Requirement R1 in fulfillment of

Requirement R4. The entity shall provide, as part of its assessment, evidence of any corrective actions taken where an operating personnel's non-adherence to the protocols developed in Requirement R1 is the sole or partial cause of an Emergency and for all other instances where the entity determined that it was appropriate to take a corrective action to address deviations from the documented protocols developed in Requirement R1.

M5. Each Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, and Balancing Authority that issued an oral two-party, person-to-person Operating Instruction during an Emergency, excluding oral single-party to multiple-party burst Operating Instructions, shall have evidence that the issuer either: 1) confirmed that the response from the recipient of the Operating Instruction was correct; 2) reissued the Operating Instruction if the repeated information was incorrect or if requested by the receiver; or 3) took an alternative action if a response was not received or if the Operating Instruction was not understood by the receiver. Such evidence could include, but is not limited to, dated and time-stamped voice recordings, or dated and time-stamped transcripts of voice recordings, or dated operator logs in fulfillment of Requirement R5.

M6. Each Balancing Authority, Distribution Provider, Generator Operator, and Transmission Operator that was the recipient of an oral two-party, person-to-person Operating Instruction during an Emergency, excluding oral single-party to multiple-party burst Operating Instructions, shall have evidence to show that the recipient either repeated, not necessarily verbatim, the Operating Instruction and received confirmation from the issuer that the response was correct, or requested that the issuer reissue the Operating Instruction in fulfillment of Requirement R6. Such evidence may include, but is not limited to, dated and time-stamped voice recordings (if the entity has such recordings), dated operator logs, an attestation from the issuer of the Operating Instruction, memos or transcripts.

M7. Each Balancing Authority, Reliability Coordinator and Transmission Operator that issued a written or oral single or multiple-party burst Operating Instruction during an Emergency shall provide evidence that the Operating Instruction was received by at least one receiver. Such evidence may include, but is not limited to, dated and time-stamped voice recordings (if the entity has such recordings), dated operator logs, electronic records, memos or transcripts.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Data Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

Each Balancing Authority, Distribution Provider, Generator Operator, Reliability Coordinator, and Transmission Operator shall each keep data or evidence for each applicable Requirement for the current calendar year and one previous calendar year, with the exception of voice recordings which shall be retained for a minimum of 90 calendar days, unless directed by its Compliance Enforcement Authority to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation.

If a Balancing Authority, Distribution Provider, Generator Operator, Reliability Coordinator, or Transmission Operator is found non-compliant, it shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is complete and approved or for the time period specified above, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.3. Additional Compliance Information

None

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	Long-term Planning	Low	The responsible entity did not specify the instances that require time identification when issuing an oral or written Operating Instruction and the format for that time identification, as required in Requirement R1, Part 1.5 OR The responsible entity did not specify the nomenclature for Transmission interface Elements and Transmission interface Facilities when issuing an oral or written Operating Instruction, as required in Requirement R1, Part 1.6.	The responsible entity did not require the issuer and receiver of an oral or written Operating Instruction to use the English language, unless agreed to otherwise, as required in Requirement R1, Part 1.1. An alternate language may be used for internal operations.	The responsible entity did not include Requirement R1, Part 1.4 in its documented communication protocols.	The responsible entity did not include Requirement R1, Part 1.2 in its documented communications protocols OR The responsible entity did not include Requirement R1, Part 1.3 in its documented communications protocols OR The responsible entity did not develop any documented communications protocols as required in Requirement R1.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R2	Long-term Planning	Low	N/A	N/A	An individual operator responsible for the Real-time operation of the interconnected Bulk Electric System at the responsible entity issued an Operating Instruction, prior to being trained on the documented communications protocols developed in Requirement R1.	An individual operator responsible for the Real-time operation of the interconnected Bulk Electric System at the responsible entity issued an Operating Instruction during an Emergency prior to being trained on the documented communications protocols developed in Requirement R1.
R3	Long-term Planning	Low	N/A	N/A	An individual operator at the responsible entity received an Operating Instruction prior to being trained.	An individual operator at the responsible entity received an Operating Instruction during an Emergency prior to being trained.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R4	Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity assessed adherence to the documented communications protocols in Requirements R1 by its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions and provided feedback to those operating personnel and took corrective action, as appropriate AND The responsible entity assessed the effectiveness of its documented communications protocols in Requirement R1 for its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions and modified its documented communication	The responsible entity assessed adherence to the documented communications protocols in Requirement R1 by its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions, but did not provide feedback to those operating personnel OR The responsible entity assessed adherence to the documented communications protocols in Requirements R1 by its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions and provided feedback to those operating personnel but did not take corrective action, as appropriate OR The responsible entity assessed the effectiveness of its documented communications protocols	The responsible entity did not assess adherence to the documented communications protocols in Requirements R1 by its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions OR The responsible entity did not assess the effectiveness of its documented communications protocols in Requirement R1 for its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions.	The responsible entity did not assess adherence to the documented communications protocols in Requirements R1 by its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions AND The responsible entity did not assess the effectiveness of its documented communications protocols in Requirement R1 for its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
			protocols, as necessary AND The responsible entity exceeded twelve (12) calendar months between assessments.	in Requirement R1 for its operating personnel that issue and receive Operating Instructions, but did not modify its documented communication protocols, as necessary.		

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R5	Real-time Operations	High	N/A	The responsible entity that issued an Operating Instruction during an Emergency did not take one of the following actions: • Confirmed the receiver's response if the repeated information was correct (in accordance with Requirement R6). • Reissued the Operating Instruction if the repeated information was incorrect or if requested by the receiver. • Took an alternative action if a response was not received or if the Operating Instruction was not understood by the receiver.	N/A	The responsible entity that issued an Operating Instruction during an Emergency did not take one of the following actions: • Confirmed the receiver's response if the repeated information was correct (in accordance with Requirement R6). • Reissued the Operating Instruction if the repeated information was incorrect or if requested by the receiver. • Took an alternative action if a response was not received or if the Operating Instruction was not understood by the receiver. AND Instability, uncontrolled separation, or cascading failures occurred as a result.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R6	Real-time Operations	High	N/A	The responsible entity did not repeat, not necessarily verbatim, the Operating Instruction during an Emergency and receive confirmation from the issuer that the response was correct, or request that the issuer reissue the Operating Instruction when receiving an Operating Instruction.	N/A	The responsible entity did not repeat, not necessarily verbatim, the Operating Instruction during an Emergency and receive confirmation from the issuer that the response was correct, or request that the issuer reissue the Operating Instruction when receiving an Operating Instruction AND Instability, uncontrolled separation, or cascading failures occurred as a result.
R7	Real-time Operations	High	N/A	The responsible entity that that issued a written or oral single-party to multiple-party burst Operating Instruction during an Emergency did not confirm or verify that the Operating Instruction was received by at least one receiver of the Operating Instruction.	N/A	The responsible entity that that issued a written or oral single-party to multiple-party burst Operating Instruction during an Emergency did not confirm or verify that the Operating Instruction was received by at least one receiver of the Operating Instruction AND Instability, uncontrolled separation, or cascading failures occurred as a result.

E. Regional Variances

None

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Date	New
0	August 8, 2005	Removed "Proposed" from Effective Date	Errata
1	February 7, 2006	Adopted by Board of Trustees	Added measures and compliance elements
2	November 1, 2006	Adopted by Board of Trustees	Revised in accordance with SAR for Project 2006-06, Reliability Coordination (RC SDT). Retired R1, R1.1, M1, M2 and updated the compliance monitoring information. Replaced R2 with new R1, R2 and R3.
2a	February 9, 2012	Interpretation of R2 adopted by Board of Trustees	Project 2009-22
3	November 7, 2012	Adopted by Board of Trustees	
4	May 6, 2014	Adopted by Board of Trustees	
4	April 16, 2015	FERC Order issued approving COM-002-4	

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard COM-002-4 — Operating Personnel Communications Protocols

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
COM-002-4	All	07/01/2016	

Reliability Standard PRC-001-1.1(ii)

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **System Protection Coordination**
2. **Number:** PRC-001-1.1(ii)
3. **Purpose:**

   To ensure system protection is coordinated among operating entities.

4. **Applicability**

   4.1. Balancing Authorities

   4.2. Transmission Operators

   4.3. Generator Operators

5. **Effective Date:**

   See the Implementation Plan for PRC-001-1.1(ii).

B. Requirements

R1. Each Transmission Operator, Balancing Authority, and Generator Operator shall be familiar with the purpose and limitations of Protection System schemes applied in its area.

R2. Each Generator Operator and Transmission Operator shall notify reliability entities of relay or equipment failures as follows:

R2.1. If a protective relay or equipment failure reduces system reliability, the Generator Operator shall notify its Transmission Operator and Host Balancing Authority. The Generator Operator shall take corrective action as soon as possible.

R2.2. If a protective relay or equipment failure reduces system reliability, the Transmission Operator shall notify its Reliability Coordinator and affected Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities. The Transmission Operator shall take corrective action as soon as possible.

R3. A Generator Operator or Transmission Operator shall coordinate new protective systems and changes as follows.

R3.1. Each Generator Operator shall coordinate all new protective systems and all protective system changes with its Transmission Operator and Host Balancing Authority.

- Requirement R3.1 is not applicable to the individual generating units of dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition.

R3.2. Each Transmission Operator shall coordinate all new protective systems and all protective system changes with neighboring Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities.

R4. Each Transmission Operator shall coordinate Protection Systems on major transmission lines and interconnections with neighboring Generator Operators, Transmission Operators, and Balancing Authorities.

R5. A Generator Operator or Transmission Operator shall coordinate changes in generation, transmission, load or operating conditions that could require changes in the Protection Systems of others:

R5.1. Each Generator Operator shall notify its Transmission Operator in advance of changes in generation or operating conditions that could require changes in the Transmission Operator's Protection Systems.

R5.2. Each Transmission Operator shall notify neighboring Transmission Operators in advance of changes in generation, transmission, load, or operating conditions that could require changes in the other Transmission Operators' Protection Systems.

R6. Each Transmission Operator and Balancing Authority shall monitor the status of each Special Protection System in their area, and shall notify affected Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities of each change in status.

C. Measures

M1. Each Generator Operator and Transmission Operator shall have and provide upon request evidence that could include but is not limited to, revised fault analysis study, letters of agreement on settings, notifications of changes, or other equivalent evidence that will be used to confirm that there was coordination of new protective systems or changes as noted in Requirements 3, 3.1, and 3.2.

M2. Each Transmission Operator and Balancing Authority shall have and provide upon request evidence that could include but is not limited to, documentation, electronic logs, computer printouts, or computer demonstration or other equivalent evidence that will be used to confirm that it monitors the Special Protection Systems in its area. (Requirement 6 Part 1)

M3. Each Transmission Operator and Balancing Authority shall have and provide upon request evidence that could include but is not limited to, operator logs, phone records, electronic-notifications or other equivalent evidence that will be used to confirm that it notified affected Transmission Operator and Balancing Authorities of changes in status of one of its Special Protection Systems. (Requirement 6 Part 2)

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Monitoring Responsibility

Regional Reliability Organizations shall be responsible for compliance monitoring.

1.2. Compliance Monitoring and Reset Time Frame

One or more of the following methods will be used to assess compliance:

- Self-certification (Conducted annually with submission according to schedule.)
- Spot Check Audits (Conducted anytime with up to 30 days notice given to prepare.)
- Periodic Audit (Conducted once every three years according to schedule.)
- Triggered Investigations (Notification of an investigation must be made within 60 days of an event or complaint of noncompliance. The entity will have up to 30 days to prepare for the investigation. An entity may request an extension of the preparation period and the extension will be considered by the Compliance Monitor on a case-by-case basis.)

The Performance-Reset Period shall be 12 months from the last finding of non-compliance.

1.3. Data Retention

Each Generator Operator and Transmission Operator shall have current, in-force documents available as evidence of compliance for Measure 1.

Each Transmission Operator and Balancing Authority shall keep 90 days of historical data (evidence) for Measures 2 and 3.

If an entity is found non-compliant the entity shall keep information related to the noncompliance until found compliant or for two years plus the current year, whichever is longer.

Evidence used as part of a triggered investigation shall be retained by the entity being investigated for one year from the date that the investigation is closed, as determined by the Compliance Monitor,

The Compliance Monitor shall keep the last periodic audit report and all requested and submitted subsequent compliance records.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None.

2. Levels of Non-Compliance for Generator Operators:

2.1. Level 1: Not applicable.

2.2. Level 2: Not applicable.

2.3. Level 3: Not applicable.

2.4. Level 4: Failed to provide evidence of coordination when installing new protective systems and all protective system changes with its Transmission Operator and Host Balancing Authority as specified in R3.1.

3. Levels of Non-Compliance for Transmission Operators:

3.1. Level 1: Not applicable.

3.2. Level 2: Not applicable.

3.3. **Level 3**: Not applicable.

3.4. **Level 4:** There shall be a separate Level 4 non-compliance, for every one of the following requirements that is in violation:

3.4.1 Failed to provide evidence of coordination when installing new protective systems and all protective system changes with neighboring Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities as specified in R3.2.

3.4.2 Did not monitor the status of each Special Protection System, or did not notify affected Transmission Operators, Balancing Authorities of changes in special protection status as specified in R6.

4. Levels of Non-Compliance for Balancing Authorities:

4.1. **Level 1:** Not applicable.

4.2. **Level 2**: Not applicable.

4.3. **Level 3**: Not applicable.

4.4. **Level 4:** Did not monitor the status of each Special Protection System, or did not notify affected Transmission Operators, Balancing Authorities of changes in special protection status as specified in R6.

E. Regional Differences

None identified.

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Date	New
0	August 8, 2005	Removed “Proposed” from Effective Date	Errata
0	August 25, 2005	Fixed Standard number in Introduction from PRC-001-1 to PRC-001-0	Errata
1	November 1, 2006	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Revised
1.1	April 11, 2012	Errata adopted by the Standards Committee; (Capitalized “Protection System” in accordance with Implementation Plan for Project 2007-17 approval of revised definition of “Protection System”)	Errata associated with Project 2007-17
1.1	September 9, 2013	Informational filing submitted to reflect the revised definition of Protection System in accordance with the Implementation Plan for the revised term.	

1.1(i)	November 13, 2014	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Replaced references to Special Protection System and SPS with Remedial Action Scheme and RAS
1.1(ii)	February 12, 2015	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Standard revised in Project 2014-01: Applicability revised to clarify application of requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
2	May 9, 2012	Adopted by Board of Trustees	Deleted Requirements R2, R5, and R6.
1.1(ii)	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving PRC-001-1.1(ii)	Modifications to adjust the applicability to owners of dispersed generation resources.

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for the Applicability Exclusion in Requirement R3.1

Coordination of new or changes to protective systems associated with dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition are typically performed on the interconnecting facilities. New or changes to protective systems associated with these facilities should be coordinated with the TOP as these protective systems typically must be closely coordinated with the transmission protective systems to ensure the overall protection systems operates as designed. While the protective systems implemented on the individual generating units of dispersed power producing resources at these dispersed power producing facilities (i.e. individual wind turbines or solar panels/inverters) may in some cases need to be coordinated with other protective systems within the same dispersed power producing facility, new or changes to these protective systems do not need to be coordinated with the transmission protective systems, as this coordination would not provide reliability benefits to the BES.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-001-1.1(ii) — System Protection Coordination

<u>United States</u>

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-001-1.1(ii)	All	05/29/2015	

Reliability Standard PRC-004-2.1(i)a

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** Analysis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection System Misoperations
2. **Number:** PRC-004-2.1(i)a
3. **Purpose:** Ensure all transmission and generation Protection System Misoperations affecting the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES) are analyzed and mitigated.
4. **Applicability**
   - **4.1.** Transmission Owner.
   - **4.2.** Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System.
   - **4.3.** Generator Owner.
5. **Effective Date:** See the Implementation Plan for this Standard.

B. Requirements

R1. The Transmission Owner and any Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System shall each analyze its transmission Protection System Misoperations and shall develop and implement a Corrective Action Plan to avoid future Misoperations of a similar nature according to the Regional Entity's procedures.

R2. The Generator Owner shall analyze its generator and generator interconnection Facility Protection System Misoperations, and shall develop and implement a Corrective Action Plan to avoid future Misoperations of a similar nature according to the Regional Entity's procedures.

- For Misoperations occurring on the Protection Systems of individual dispersed power producing resources identified under Inclusion I4 of the BES definition where the Misoperations affected an aggregate nameplate rating of less than or equal to 75 MVA of BES facilities, this requirement does not apply.

R3. The Transmission Owner, any Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System, and the Generator Owner shall each provide to its Regional Entity, documentation of its Misoperations analyses and Corrective Action Plans according to the Regional Entity's procedures.

- For Misoperations occurring on the Protection Systems of individual dispersed power producing resources identified under Inclusion I4 of the BES definition where the Misoperations affected an aggregate nameplate rating of less than or equal to 75 MVA of BES facilities, this requirement does not apply.

C. Measures

M1. The Transmission Owner, and any Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System shall each have evidence it analyzed its Protection System Misoperations and developed and implemented Corrective Action Plans to avoid future Misoperations of a similar nature according to the Regional Entity's procedures.

M2. The Generator Owner shall have evidence it analyzed its Protection System Misoperations and developed and implemented Corrective Action Plans to avoid future Misoperations of a similar nature according to the Regional Entity's procedures.

M3. Each Transmission Owner, and any Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System, and each Generator Owner shall have evidence it provided documentation of its Protection System Misoperations, analyses and Corrective Action Plans according to the Regional Entity's procedures.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Compliance Monitoring Period and Reset Time Frame

Not applicable.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Processes:

Compliance Audits

Self-Certifications

Spot Checking

Compliance Violation Investigations

Self-Reporting

Complaints

1.4. Data Retention

The Transmission Owner, and Distribution Provider that own a transmission Protection System and the Generator Owner that owns a generation or generator interconnection Facility Protection System shall each retain data on its Protection System Misoperations and each accompanying Corrective Action Plan until the Corrective Action Plan has been executed or for 12 months, whichever is later.

The Compliance Monitor shall retain any audit data for three years.

1.5. Additional Compliance Information

The Transmission Owner, and any Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System and the Generator Owner shall demonstrate compliance through self-certification or audit (periodic, as part of targeted monitoring or initiated by complaint or event), as determined by the Compliance Monitor.

2. Violation Severity Levels (no changes)

E. Regional Differences

None identified.

F. Associated Documents

None.

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Date	New
1	December 1, 2005	1. Changed incorrect use of certain hyphens (-) to “en dash” (–) and “em dash (—).” 2. Added “periods” to items where appropriate. Changed “Timeframe” to “Time Frame” in item D, 1.2.	01/20/06
2		Modified to address Order No. 693 Directives contained in paragraph 1469.	Revised
2	August 5, 2010	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
1a	February 17, 2011	Added Appendix 1 - Interpretation regarding applicability of standard to protection of radially connected transformers	Project 2009-17 interpretation
1a	February 17, 2011	Adopted by the Board of Trustees	
1a	September 26, 2011	FERC Order issued approving the interpretation of R1 and R3 (FERC’s Order is effective as of September 26, 2011)	
2a	September 26, 2011	Appended FERC-approved interpretation of R1 and R3 to version 2	
2.1a		Errata change: Edited R2 to add “…and generator interconnection Facility…”	Revision under Project 2010-07
2.1a	February 9, 2012	Errata change adopted by the Board of Trustees	
2.1a	September 19, 2013	FERC Order issued approving PRC-004-2.1a (approval becomes effective November 25, 2013).	
2.1(i)a	November 13, 2014	Adopted by the Board of Trustees	Applicability revised in Project 2014-01 to clarify application of Requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
2.1(i)a	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving PRC-004-2.1(i)a	

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for Introduction:

The only revisions made to this version of PRC-004-2.1(i)a are revisions to Requirements R2 and R3 to clarify applicability of the Requirements of the standard at generator Facilities. These applicability revisions are intended to clarify and provide for consistent application of the Requirements to BES generator Facilities included in the BES through Inclusion I4 – Dispersed Power Producing Resources.

Rationale for Applicability:

Misoperations occurring on the Protection Systems of individual generation resources identified under Inclusion I4 of the BES definition do not have a material impact on BES reliability when considered individually; however, the aggregate capability of these resources may impact BES reliability if a number of Protection Systems on the individual power producing resources incorrectly operated or failed to operate as designed during a system event. To recognize the potential for the Protection Systems of individual power producing resources to affect the reliability of the BES, Requirement R2 and Requirement R3 reflect the threshold consistent with the revised BES definition. See paragraph 20 of FERC Order Approving Revised Definition in Docket No. RD14-2-000. The intent of Requirement R2 and Requirement R3 is to exclude from the standard requirements these Protection Systems for “common-mode failure” type scenarios affecting less than or equal to 75 MVA aggregated nameplate generating capability at these dispersed generating facilities.

Appendix 1[1]

Requirement Number and Text of Requirement
R1. The Transmission Owner and any Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System shall each analyze its transmission Protection System Misoperations and shall develop and implement a Corrective Action Plan to avoid future Misoperations of a similar nature according to the Regional Reliability Organization's procedures developed for Reliability Standard PRC-003 Requirement 1. **R3**. The Transmission Owner, any Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System, and the Generator Owner shall each provide to its Regional Reliability Organization, documentation of its Misoperations analyses and Corrective Action Plans according to the Regional Reliability Organization's procedures developed for PRC-003 R1.
Question:
Is protection for a radially-connected transformer protection system energized from the BES considered a transmission Protection System subject to this standard?
Response:
The request for interpretation of PRC-004-1 Requirements R1 and R3 focuses on the applicability of the term "transmission Protection System." The NERC Glossary of Terms Used in Reliability Standards contains a definition of "Protection System" but does not contain a definition of transmission Protection System. In these two standards, use of the phrase transmission Protection System indicates that the requirements using this phrase are applicable to any Protection System that is installed for the purpose of detecting faults on transmission elements (lines, buses, transformers, etc.) identified as being included in the Bulk Electric System (BES) and trips an interrupting device that interrupts current supplied directly from the BES. A Protection System for a radially connected transformer energized from the BES would be considered a transmission Protection System and subject to these standards only if the protection trips an interrupting device that interrupts current supplied directly from the BES and the transformer is a BES element.

[1] When the request for interpretation was made, it was for a previous version of the standard. Although the interpretation references a previous version of the standard, because it is still applicable in this case, it is appended to this version of the standard.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-004-2.1(i)a — Analysis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection System Misoperations

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-004-2.1(i)a	All	05/29/2015	

Reliability Standard PRC-004-3

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction**

2. **Number:** PRC-004-3

3. **Purpose:** Identify and correct the causes of Misoperations of Protection Systems for Bulk Electric System (BES) Elements.

4. **Applicability:**

   4.1. Functional Entities:

   4.1.1 Transmission Owner

   4.1.2 Generator Owner

   4.1.3 Distribution Provider

   4.2. Facilities:

   4.2.1 Protection Systems for BES Elements, with the following exclusions:

   4.2.1.1 Non-protective functions that are embedded within a Protection System.

   4.2.1.2 Protective functions intended to operate as a control function during switching.[1]

   4.2.1.3 Special Protection Systems (SPS).

   4.2.1.4 Remedial Action Schemes (RAS).

   4.2.2 Underfrequency load shedding (UFLS) that is intended to trip one or more BES Elements.

5. **Background**:

   A key factor for BES reliability is the correct performance of Protection Systems. The monitoring of Protection System events for BES Elements, as well as identifying and correcting the causes of Misoperations, will improve Protection System performance. This Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 – Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction is a revision of PRC-004-2.1a – Analysis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection System Misoperations. The Reliability Standard PRC-003-1 – Regional Procedure for Analysis of Misoperations of Transmission and Generation Protection Systems requires Regional Entities to establish procedures for analysis of Misoperations. In the FERC Order No. 693, the Commission identified PRC-003-0 as a "fill-in-the-blank" standard. The Order stated that because the regional procedures had not been submitted, the Commission proposed not to approve or remand PRC-003-0. Because PRC-003-0 (now PRC-003-1) is not enforceable, there is not a mandatory requirement for Regional Entity procedures to support the Requirements of PRC-004-2.1a. This is a potential reliability gap;

[1] For additional information and examples, see the "Non-Protective Functions" and "Control Functions" sections in the Application Guidelines.

consequently, PRC-004-3 combines the reliability intent of the two legacy standards PRC-003-1 and PRC-004-2.1a.

This project includes revising the existing definition of Misoperation, which reads:

Misoperation

- Any failure of a Protection System element to operate within the specified time when a fault or abnormal condition occurs within a zone of protection.
- Any operation for a fault not within a zone of protection (other than operation as backup protection for a fault in an adjacent zone that is not cleared within a specified time for the protection for that zone).
- Any unintentional Protection System operation when no fault or other abnormal condition has occurred unrelated to on-site maintenance and testing activity.

In general, this definition needed more specificity and clarity. The terms “specified time” and “abnormal condition” are ambiguous. In the third bullet, more clarification is needed as to whether an unintentional Protection System operation for an atypical, yet explainable, condition is a Misoperation.

The SAR for this project also included clarifying reporting requirements. Misoperation data, as currently collected and reported, is not optimal to establish consistent metrics for measuring Protection System performance. As such, the data reporting obligation for this standard is being removed and is being developed under the NERC Rules of Procedure, Section 1600 – Request for Data or Information (“data request”). As a result of the data request, NERC will analyze the data to: develop meaningful metrics; identify trends in Protection System performance that negatively impact reliability; identify remediation techniques; and publicize lessons learned for the industry. The removal of the data collection obligation from the standard does not result in a reduction of reliability. The standard and data request have been developed in a manner such that evidence used for compliance with the standard and data request are intended to be independent of each other.

The proposed Requirements of the revised Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 meet the following objectives:

- Review all Protection System operations on the BES to identify those that are Misoperations of Protection Systems for Facilities that are part of the BES.
- Analyze Misoperations of Protection Systems for Facilities that are part of the BES to identify the cause(s).
- Develop and implement Corrective Action Plans to address the cause(s) of Misoperations of Protection Systems for Facilities that are part of the BES.

Misoperations associated with Special Protection Schemes (SPS) and Remedial Action Schemes (RAS) are not addressed in this standard due to their inherent complexities. NERC plans to handle SPS and RAS in the second phase of this project.

The Western Electric Coordinating Council (WECC) Regional Reliability Standard PRC-004-WECC-1 – Protection System and Remedial Action Scheme Misoperation relates to the reporting of Misoperations of Protection Systems and RAS for a limited set of WECC Paths. The WECC region plans to conduct work to harmonize the regional standard with this continent-wide proposed standard and the second phase of this project concerning SPS and RAS.

Undervoltage load shedding (UVLS) has not been included in this standard's applicability because Misoperations of UVLS relays are currently addressed by Reliability Standard PRC-022-1 – Under-Voltage Load Shedding Program Performance, Requirement R1.5. Underfrequency load shedding (UFLS) was added to PRC-004-3 to close a gap in reliability as Misoperations of UFLS relays are not covered by a Reliability Standard currently.

6. Effective Dates:

The standard shall become effective on the first day of the first calendar quarter that is twelve (12) months after the date that the standard is approved by an applicable governmental authority or as otherwise provided for in a jurisdiction where approval by an applicable governmental authority is required for a standard to go into effect. Where approval by an applicable governmental authority is not required, the standard shall become effective on the first day of the first calendar quarter that is twelve (12) months after the date the standard is adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees or as otherwise provided for in that jurisdiction.

B. Requirements and Measures

R1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that owns a BES interrupting device that operated under the circumstances in Parts 1.1 through 1.3 shall, within 120 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation, identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*

1.1 The BES interrupting device operation was caused by a Protection System or by manual intervention in response to a Protection System failure to operate; and

1.2 The BES interrupting device owner owns all or part of the Composite Protection System; and

1.3 The BES interrupting device owner identified that its Protection System component(s) caused the BES interrupting device(s) operation or was caused by manual intervention in response to its Protection System failure to operate.

M1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it identified the Misoperation of its Protection System component(s), if any, that meet the circumstances in Requirement R1, Parts 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3 within the allotted time period. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R1, including Parts 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): reports, databases, spreadsheets, emails, facsimiles, lists, logs, records, declarations, analyses of sequence of events, relay targets, Disturbance Monitoring Equipment (DME) records, test results, or transmittals.

R2. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that owns a BES interrupting device that operated shall, within 120 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation, provide notification as described in Parts 2.1 and 2.2. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*

2.1 For a BES interrupting device operation by a Composite Protection System or by manual intervention in response to a Protection System failure to operate, notification of the operation shall be provided to the other owner(s) that share Misoperation identification responsibility for the Composite Protection System under the following circumstances:

2.1.1 The BES interrupting device owner shares the Composite Protection System ownership with any other owner; and

2.1.2 The BES interrupting device owner has determined that a Misoperation occurred or cannot rule out a Misoperation; and

2.1.3 The BES interrupting device owner has determined that its Protection System component(s) did not cause the BES interrupting device(s) operation or cannot determine whether its Protection System components caused the BES interrupting device(s) operation.

2.2 For a BES interrupting device operation by a Protection System component intended to operate as backup protection for a condition on another entity's BES Element, notification of the operation shall be provided to the other Protection System owner(s) for which that backup protection was provided.

M2. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates notification to the other owner(s), within the allotted time period for either Requirement R2, Part 2.1, including subparts 2.1.1, 2.1.2, and 2.1.3 and Requirement R2, Part 2.2. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R2, including Parts 2.1 and 2.2 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): emails, facsimiles, or transmittals.

R3. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that receives notification, pursuant to Requirement R2 shall, within the later of 60 calendar days of notification or 120 calendar days of the BES interrupting device(s) operation, identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*

M3. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation within the allotted time period. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R3 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): reports, databases, spreadsheets, emails, facsimiles, lists, logs, records, declarations, analyses of sequence of events, relay targets, Disturbance Monitoring Equipment (DME) records, test results, or transmittals.

R4. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that has not determined the cause(s) of a Misoperation, for a Misoperation identified in accordance with Requirement R1 or R3, shall perform investigative action(s) to determine the cause(s) of the Misoperation at least once every two full calendar quarters after the Misoperation was first identified, until one of the following completes the investigation: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*

- The identification of the cause(s) of the Misoperation; or
- A declaration that no cause was identified.

M4. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it performed at least one investigative action according to Requirement R4 every two full calendar quarters until a cause is identified or a declaration is made. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R4 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): reports, databases, spreadsheets, emails, facsimiles, lists, logs, records, declarations, analyses of sequence of events, relay targets, Disturbance Monitoring Equipment (DME) records, test results, or transmittals.

R5. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that owns the Protection System component(s) that caused the Misoperation shall, within 60 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation: [*Violation Risk Factor: Medium*] [*Time Horizon: Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning*]

- Develop a Corrective Action Plan (CAP) for the identified Protection System component(s), and an evaluation of the CAP's applicability to the entity's other Protection Systems including other locations; or
- Explain in a declaration why corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability, and that no further corrective actions will be taken.

M5. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it developed a CAP and an evaluation of the CAP's applicability to other Protection Systems and locations, or a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R5 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): CAP and evaluation, or declaration.

R6. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall implement each CAP developed in Requirement R5, and update each CAP if actions or timetables change, until completed. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning]*

M6. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it implemented each CAP, including updating actions or timetables. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R6 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): records that document the implementation of each CAP and the completion of actions for each CAP including revision history of each CAP. Evidence may also include work management program records, work orders, and maintenance records.

C. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, “Compliance Enforcement Authority” (CEA) means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Evidence Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the CEA may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall keep data or evidence to show compliance as identified below unless directed by its CEA to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation.

> The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall retain evidence of Requirements R1, R2, R3, and R4, Measures M1, M2, M3, and M4 for a minimum of 12 calendar months following the completion of each Requirement.
>
> The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall retain evidence of Requirement R5, Measure M5, including any supporting analysis per Requirements R1, R2, R3, and R4, for a minimum of 12 calendar months following completion of each CAP, completion of each evaluation, and completion of each declaration.
>
> The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall retain evidence of Requirement R6, Measure M6 for a minimum of 12 calendar months following completion of each CAP.

If a Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, or Distribution Provider is found non-compliant, it shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is complete and approved, or for the time specified above, whichever is longer.

The CEA shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None.

D. Table of Compliance Elements

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 120 calendar days and less than or equal to 150 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 150 calendar days and less than or equal to 165 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 165 calendar days and less than or equal to 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation. OR The responsible entity failed to identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R2	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 120 calendar days and less than or equal to 150 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 150 calendar days and less than or equal to 165 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 165 calendar days and less than or equal to 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation. OR The responsible entity failed to notify one or more of the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R3	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was less than or equal to 30 calendar days late.	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was greater than 30 calendar days and less than or equal to 45 calendar days late.	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was greater than 45 calendar days and less than or equal to 60 calendar days late.	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was greater than 60 calendar days late. OR The responsible entity failed to identify whether or not a Misoperation of its Protection System component(s) occurred in accordance with Requirement R3.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R4	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was less than or equal to one calendar quarter late.	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was greater than one calendar quarter and less than or equal to two calendar quarters late.	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was greater than two calendar quarters and less than or equal to three calendar quarters late.	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was more than three calendar quarters late. OR The responsible entity failed to perform investigative action(s) in accordance with Requirement R4.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R5	Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning	Medium	The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 60 calendar days and less than or equal to 70 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR (See next page)	The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 70 calendar days and less than or equal to 80 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR (See next page)	The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 80 calendar days and less than or equal to 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR (See next page)	The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR The responsible entity failed to develop a CAP or explain in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5. OR (See next page)

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R5	(Continued)		The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 60 calendar days and less than or equal to 70 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.	The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 70 calendar days and less than or equal to 80 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.	The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 80 calendar days and less than or equal to 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.	The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR The responsible entity failed to develop an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5.
R6	Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning	Medium	The responsible entity implemented, but failed to update a CAP, when actions or timetables changed, in accordance with Requirement R6.	N/A	N/A	The responsible entity failed to implement a CAP in accordance with Requirement R6.

E. Regional Variances

None.

F. Interpretations

None.

G. Associated Documents

NERC System Protection and Controls Subcommittee of the NERC Planning Committee, Assessment of Standards: PRC-003-1 – Regional Procedure for Analysis of Misoperations of Transmission and Generation Protection Systems, PRC-004-1 – Analysis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection Misoperations, PRC-016-1 – Special Protection System Misoperations, May 22, 2009.[2]

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Date	New
1	December 1, 2005	1. Changed incorrect use of certain hyphens (-) to "en dash" (–) and "em dash (—)." 2. Added "periods" to items where appropriate. Changed "Timeframe" to "Time Frame" in item D, 1.2.	01/20/06
2		Modified to address Order No. 693 Directives contained in paragraph 1469.	Revised
2	August 5, 2010	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
1a	February 17, 2011	Added Appendix 1 - Interpretation regarding applicability of standard to protection of radially connected transformers	Project 2009-17 interpretation

2 http://www.nerc.com/comm/PC/System%20Protection%20and%20Control%20Subcommittee%20SPCS%20DL/PRC-003-004-016%20Report.pdf

1a	February 17, 2011	Adopted by the Board of Trustees	
1a	September 26, 2011	FERC Order issued approving the interpretation of R1 and R3 (FERC's Order is effective as of September 26, 2011)	
2a	September 26, 2011	Appended FERC-approved interpretation of R1 and R3 to version 2	
2.1a		Errata change: Edited R2 to add "…and generator interconnection Facility…"	Revision under Project 2010-07
2.1a	February 9, 2012	Errata change adopted by the Board of Trustees	
2.1a	September 19, 2013	FERC Order issued approving PRC-004-2.1a (approval becomes effective November 25, 2013).	
3	August 14, 2014	Adopted by Board of Trustees	Revision under Project 2010-05.1
3	May 13, 2015	FERC letter order issued approving PRC-004-3	

Guidelines and Technical Basis

Introduction

This standard addresses the reliability issues identified in the letter[3] from Gerry Cauley, NERC President and CEO, dated January 7, 2011.

> "Nearly all major system failures, excluding perhaps those caused by severe weather, have misoperations of relays or automatic controls as a factor contributing to the propagation of the failure. …Relays can misoperate, either operate when not needed or fail to operate when needed, for a number of reasons. First, the device could experience an internal failure – but this is rare. Most commonly, relays fail to operate correctly due to incorrect settings, improper coordination (of timing and set points) with other devices, ineffective maintenance and testing, or failure of communications channels or power supplies. Preventable errors can be introduced by field personnel and their supervisors or more programmatically by the organization."

The standard also addresses the findings in the *2011 Risk Assessment of Reliability Performance*[4]; July 2011.

> "…a number of multiple outage events were initiated by protection system Misoperations. These events, which go beyond their design expectations and operating procedures, represent a tangible threat to reliability. A deeper review of the root causes of dependent and common mode events, which include three or more automatic outages, is a high priority for NERC and the industry."

The *State of Reliability 2014*[5] report continued to identify Protection System Misoperations as a significant contributor to automatic transmission outage severity. The report recommended completion of the development of PRC-004-3 as part of the solution to address Protection System Misoperations.

Definitions

The Misoperation definition is based on the IEEE/PSRC Working Group I3 "Transmission Protective Relay System Performance Measuring Methodology[6]." Misoperations of a Protection System include failure to operate, slowness in operating, or operating when not required either during a Fault or non-Fault condition.

---

[3] http://www.nerc.com/pa/Stand/Project%20201005%20Protection%20System%20Misoperations%20DL/20110209130708-Cauley%20letter.pdf

[4] "2011 Risk Assessment of Reliability Performance." NERC. http://www.nerc.com/files/2011_RARPR_FINAL.pdf. July 2011. Pg. 3.

[5] "State of Reliability 2014." NERC. May 2014. Pg. 18 of 106. http://www.nerc.com/pa/RAPA/PA/Performance%20Analysis%20DL/2014_SOR_Final.pdf.

[6] "Transmission Protective Relay System Performance Measuring Methodology." Working Group I3 of Power System Relaying Committee of IEEE Power Engineering Society. 1999.

For reference, a “Protection System” is defined in the *Glossary of Terms Used in NERC Reliability Standards* (“NERC Glossary”) as:

- Protective relays which respond to electrical quantities,
- Communications systems necessary for correct operation of protective functions,
- Voltage and current sensing devices providing inputs to protective relays,
- Station dc supply associated with protective functions (including station batteries, battery chargers, and non-battery-based dc supply), and
- Control circuitry associated with protective functions through the trip coil(s) of the circuit breakers or other interrupting devices.

A BES interrupting device is a BES Element, typically a circuit breaker or circuit switcher that has the capability to interrupt fault current. Although BES interrupting device mechanisms are not part of a Protection System, the standard uses the operation of a BES interrupting device by a Protection System to initiate the review for Misoperation.

The following two definitions are being proposed for inclusion in the NERC Glossary:

> **Composite Protection System –** *The total complement of Protection System(s) that function collectively to protect an Element. Backup protection provided by a different Element’s Protection System(s) is excluded.*

The Composite Protection System definition is based on the principle that an Element’s multiple layers of protection are intended to function collectively. This definition has been introduced in this standard and incorporated into the proposed definition of Misoperation to clarify that the overall performance of an Element’s total complement of protection should be considered while evaluating an operation.

Composite Protection System – Line Example

The Composite Protection System of the Alpha-Beta line (Circuit #123) is comprised of current differential, permissive overreaching transfer trip (POTT), step distance (classic zone 1, zone 2, and zone 3), instantaneous-overcurrent, time-overcurrent, out-of-step, and overvoltage protection. The protection is housed at the Alpha and Beta substations, and includes the associated relays, communications systems, voltage and current sensing devices, DC supplies, and control circuitry.

Composite Protection System – Transformer Example

The Composite Protection System of the Alpha transformer (#2) is comprised of internal differential, overall differential, instantaneous-overcurrent, and time-overcurrent protection. The protection is housed at the Alpha substation, and includes the associated relays, voltage and current sensing devices, DC supplies, and control circuitry.

Composite Protection System – Generator Example

The Composite Protection System of the Beta generator (#3) is comprised of generator differential, overall differential, overcurrent, stator ground, reverse power, volts per hertz, loss-of-field, and undervoltage protection. The protection is housed at the Beta generating plant and at the Beta substation, and includes the associated relays, voltage and current sensing devices, DC supplies, and control circuitry.

Composite Protection System – Breaker Failure Example

Breaker failure protection provides backup protection for the breaker, and therefore is part of the breaker's Composite Protection System. Considering breaker failure protection to be part of another Element's Composite Protection System could lead to an incorrect conclusion that a breaker failure operation automatically satisfies the "Slow Trip" criteria of the Misoperation definition.

- An example of a correct operation of the breaker's Composite Protection System is when the breaker failure relaying tripped because the line relaying operated, but the breaker failed to clear the Fault. The breaker failure relaying operated because of a failed trip coil. The failed trip coil caused a Misoperation of the line's Composite Protection System.
- An example of a correct operation of the breaker's Composite Protection System is when the breaker failure relaying tripped because the line relaying operated, but the breaker failed to clear the Fault. Only the breaker failure relaying operated because of a failed breaker mechanism. This was not a Misoperation because the breaker mechanism is not part of the breaker's Composite Protection System.
- An example of an "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" is when the breaker failure relaying tripped at the same time as the line relaying during a Fault. The Misoperation was due to the breaker failure timer being set to zero.

Misoperation – *The failure a Composite Protection System to operate as intended for protection purposes. Any of the following is a Misoperation:*

1. **Failure to Trip – During Fault –** *A failure of a Composite Protection System to operate for a Fault condition for which it is designed. The failure of a Protection System component is not a Misoperation as long as the performance of the Composite Protection System is correct.*
2. ***Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault* –** *A failure of a Composite Protection System to operate for a non-Fault condition for which it is designed, such as a power swing, undervoltage, overexcitation, or loss of excitation. The failure of a Protection System component is not a Misoperation as long as the performance of the Composite Protection System is correct.*

3. ***Slow Trip – During Fault*** *– A Composite Protection System operation that is slower than required for a Fault condition if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System.*
4. ***Slow Trip – Other Than Fault*** *– A Composite Protection System operation that is slower than required for a non-Fault condition, such as a power swing, undervoltage, overexcitation, or loss of excitation, if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System.*
5. ***Unnecessary Trip – During Fault –*** *An unnecessary Composite Protection System operation for a Fault condition on another Element.*
6. ***Unnecessary Trip – Other Than Fault*** *– An unnecessary Composite Protection System operation for a non-Fault condition. A Composite Protection System operation that is caused by personnel during on-site maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning activities is not a Misoperation.*

The Misoperation definition is based on the principle that an Element's total complement of protection is intended to operate dependably and securely.

- Failure to automatically reclose after a Fault condition is not included as a Misoperation because reclosing equipment is not included within the definition of Protection System.
- A breaker failure operation does not, in itself, constitute a Misoperation.
- A remote backup operation resulting from a "Failure to Trip" or a "Slow Trip" does not, in itself, constitute a Misoperation.

This proposed definition of Misoperation provides additional clarity over the current version. A Misoperation is the failure of a Composite Protection System to operate as intended for protection purposes. The definition includes six categories which provide further differentiation of what constitutes a Misoperation. These categories are discussed in greater detail in the following sections.

Failure to Trip – During Fault

This category of Misoperation typically results in the Fault condition being cleared by remote backup Protection System operation.

Example 1a: A failure of a transformer's Composite Protection System to operate for a transformer Fault is a Misoperation.

Example 1b: A failure of a "primary" transformer relay (or any other component) to operate for a transformer Fault is not a "Failure to Trip – During Fault" Misoperation as long as another component of the transformer's Composite Protection System operated.

Example 1c: A lack of target information does not by itself constitute a Misoperation. When a high-speed pilot system does not target because a high-speed zone element trips first, it would not in and of itself be a Misoperation.

Example 1d: A failure of an overall differential relay to operate is not a "Failure to Trip – During Fault" Misoperation as long as another component such as a generator differential relay operated.

Example 1e: The Composite Protection System for a bus does not operate during a bus Fault which results in the operation of all local transformer Protection Systems connected to that bus and all remote line Protection Systems connected to that bus isolating the faulted bus from the grid. The operation of the local transformer Protection Systems and the operation of all remote line Protection Systems correctly provided backup protection. There is one "Failure to Trip – During Fault" Misoperation of the bus Composite Protection System.

In analyzing the Protection System for Misoperation, the entity must also consider whether the "Slow Trip – During Fault" category applies to the operation.

Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault

This category of Misoperation may have resulted in operator intervention. The "Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault" conditions cited in the definition are examples only, and do not constitute an all-inclusive list.

Example 2a: A failure of a generator's Composite Protection System to operate for an unintentional loss of field condition is a Misoperation.

Example 2b: A failure of an overexcitation relay (or any other component) is not a "Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault" Misoperation as long as the generator's Composite Protection System operated as intended isolating the generator from the BES.

In analyzing the Protection System for Misoperation, the entity must also consider whether the "Slow Trip – Other Than Fault" category applies to the operation.

Slow Trip – During Fault

This category of Misoperation typically results in remote backup Protection System operation before the Fault is cleared.

Example 3a: A Composite Protection System that is slower than required for a Fault condition is a Misoperation if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. The current differential element of a multiple function relay failed to operate for a line Fault. The same relay's time-overcurrent element operated after a time delay. However, an adjacent line also operated from a time-overcurrent element. The faulted line's time-overcurrent element was found to be set to trip too slowly.

Example 3b: A failure of a breaker's Composite Protection System to operate as quickly as intended to meet the expected critical Fault clearing time for a line Fault in conjunction with a breaker failure (i.e., stuck breaker) is a Misoperation if it resulted in an unintended operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. If a generating unit's Composite Protection System operates due to instability caused by the slow trip of the breaker's Composite Protection System, it is not an "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" Misoperation of the generating unit's Composite Protection System. This event would be a "Slow Trip – During Fault" Misoperation of the breaker's Composite Protection System.

> **Example 3c:** A line connected to a generation interconnection station is protected with two independent high-speed pilot systems. The Composite Protection System for this line also includes step distance and time-overcurrent schemes in addition to the two pilot systems. During a Fault on this line, the two pilot systems fail to operate and the time-overcurrent scheme operates clearing the Fault with no generating units or other Elements tripping (i.e., no over-trips). This event is not a Misoperation.

The phrase “slower than required” means the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element’s Composite Protection System. It would be impractical to provide a precise tolerance in the definition that would be applicable to every type of Protection System. Rather, the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation should understand whether the speed and outcome of its Protection System operation met their objective. The intent is not to require documentation of exact Protection System operation times, but to assure consideration of relay coordination and system stability by the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation.

The phrase “resulted in the operation of any other Composite Protection System” refers to the need to ensure that relaying operates in the proper or planned sequence (i.e., the primary relaying for a faulted Element operates before the remote backup relaying for the faulted Element).

In analyzing the Protection System for Misoperation, the entity must also consider the “Unnecessary Trip – During Fault” category to determine if an “unnecessary trip” applies to the Protection System operation of an Element other than the faulted Element.

If a coordination error was at the local terminal (i.e., set too slow), then it was a "Slow Trip," category of Misoperation at the local terminal.

Slow Trip – Other Than Fault

The phrase “slower than required” means the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element’s Composite Protection System. It would be impractical to provide a precise tolerance in the definition that would be applicable to every type of Protection System. Rather, the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation should understand whether the speed and outcome of its Protection System operation met their objective. The intent is not to require documentation of exact Protection System operation times, but to assure consideration of relay coordination and system stability by the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation.

> **Example 4:** A phase to phase fault occurred on the terminals of a generator. The generator's Composite Protection System and a transmission line's Composite Protection System both operated in response to the fault. It was found during subsequent investigation that the generator protection contained an inappropriate time delay. This caused the transmission line's correctly set overreaching zone of protection to operate. This was a Misoperation of the generator’s Composite Protection System, but not of the transmission line’s Composite Protection System.

The “Slow Trip – Other Than Fault” conditions cited in the definition are examples only, and do not constitute an all-inclusive list.

Unnecessary Trip – During Fault

An operation of a properly coordinated remote Protection System is not in and of itself a Misoperation if the Fault has persisted for a sufficient time to allow the correct operation of the Composite Protection System of the faulted Element to clear the Fault. A BES interrupting device failure, a “failure to trip” Misoperation, or a “slow trip” Misoperation may result in a proper remote Protection System operation.

> **Example 5:** An operation of a transformer's Composite Protection System which trips (i.e., over-trips) for a properly cleared line Fault is a Misoperation. The Fault is cleared properly by the faulted equipment's Composite Protection System (i.e., line relaying) without the need for an external Protection System operation resulting in an unnecessary trip of the transformer protection; therefore, the transformer Protection System operation is a Misoperation.
>
> **Example 5b:** An operation of a line's Composite Protection System which trips (i.e., over-trips) for a properly cleared Fault on a different line is a Misoperation. The Fault is cleared properly by the faulted line's Composite Protection System (i.e., line relaying); however, elsewhere in the system, a carrier blocking signal is not transmitted (e.g., carrier ON/OFF switch found in OFF position) resulting in the operation of a remote Protection System, single-end trip of a non-faulted line. The operation of the Protection System for the non-faulted line is an unnecessary trip during a Fault. Therefore, the non-faulted line Protection System operation is an “Unnecessary Trip – During Fault” Misoperation.
>
> **Example 5c:** If a coordination error was at the remote terminal (i.e., set too fast), then it was an "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" category of Misoperation at the remote terminal.

Unnecessary Trip – Other Than Fault

Unnecessary trips for non-Fault conditions include but are not limited to: power swings, overexcitation, loss of excitation, frequency excursions, and normal operations.

> **Example 6a:** An operation of a line's Composite Protection System due to a relay failure during normal operation is a Misoperation.
>
> **Example 6b:** Tripping a generator by the operation of the loss of field protection during an off-nominal frequency condition while the field is intact is a Misoperation assuming the Composite Protection System was not intended to operate under this condition.
>
> **Example 6c:** An impedance line relay trip for a power swing that entered the relay’s characteristic is a Misoperation if the power swing was stable and the relay operated because power swing blocking was enabled and should have prevented the trip, but did not.
>
> **Example 6d:** Tripping a generator operating at normal load by the operation of a reverse power protection relay due to a relay failure is a Misoperation.

Additionally, an operation that occurs during a non-Fault condition but was initiated directly by on-site (i.e., real-time) maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning is not a Misoperation.

> **Example 6e:** A BES interrupting device operation that occurs at the remote end of a line during a non-Fault condition because a direct transfer trip was initiated by system maintenance and testing activities at the local end of the line is not a Misoperation because of the maintenance exclusion in category 6 of the definition of “Misoperation.”

The “on-site” activities at one location that initiates a trip to another location are included in this exemption. This includes operation of a Protection System when energizing equipment to facilitate measurements, such as verification of current circuits as a part of performing commissioning; however, once the maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning activity associated with the Protection System is complete, the "on-site" Misoperation exclusion no longer applies, regardless of the presence of on-site personnel.

Special Cases

Protection System operations for these cases would not be a Misoperation.

> **Example 7a:** A generator Protection System operation prior to closing the unit breaker(s) is not a Misoperation provided no in-service Elements are tripped.

This type of operation is not a Misoperation because the generating unit is not synchronized and is isolated from the BES. Protection System operations that occur when the protected Element is out of service and that do not trip any in-service Elements are not Misoperations.

In some cases where zones of protection overlap, the owner(s) of Elements may decide to allow a Protection System to operate faster in order to gain better overall Protection System performance for an Element.

> **Example 7b:** The high-side of a transformer connected to a line may be within the zone of protection of the supplying line’s relaying. In this case, the line relaying is planned to protect the area of the high-side of the transformer and into its primary winding. In order to provide faster protection for the line, the line relaying may be designed and set to operate without direct coordination (or coordination is waived) with local protection for Faults on the high-side of the connected transformer. Therefore, the operation of the line relaying for a high-side transformer Fault operated as intended and would not be a Misoperation.

Below are examples of conditions that would be a Misoperation.

> **Example7c:** A 230 kV shunt capacitor bank was released for operational service. The capacitor bank trips due to a settings error in the capacitor bank differential relay upon energization.

> **Example 7d:** A 230/115 kV BES transformer bank trips out when being re-energized due to an incorrect operation of the transformer differential relay for inrush after being released for operational service. Only the high-side breaker opens since the low-side breaker had not yet been closed.

Non-Protective Functions

BES interrupting device operations which are initiated by non-protective functions, such as those associated with generator controls, excitation controls, or turbine/boiler controls, static voltampere-reactive compensators (SVC), flexible ac transmission systems (FACTS), high-voltage dc (HVdc) transmission systems, circuit breaker mechanisms, or other facility control systems are not operations of a Protection System. The standard is not applicable to non-protective functions such as automation (e.g., data collection) or control functions that are embedded within a Protection System.

Control Functions

The entity must make a determination as to whether the standard is applicable to each operation of its Protection System in accordance with the provided exclusions in the standard's Applicability, see Section 4.2.1. The subject matter experts (SME) developing this standard recognize that entities use Protection Systems as part of a routine practice to control BES Elements. This standard is not applicable to operation of protective functions within a Protection System when intended for controlling a BES Element as a part of an entity's process or planned switching sequence. The following are examples of conditions to which this standard is not applicable:

> **Example 8a:** The reverse power protective function that operates to remove a generating unit from service using the entity's normal or routine process.
>
> **Example 8b:** The reverse power relay enables a permissive trip and the generator operator trips the unit.

The standard is not applicable to operation of the protective relay because its operation is intended as a control function as part of a controlled shutdown sequence for the generator. However, the standard remains applicable to operation of the reverse power relay when it operates for conditions not associated with the controlled shutdown sequence, such as a motoring condition caused by a trip of the prime mover.

The following is another example of a condition to which this standard is not applicable:

> **Example 8c:** Operation of a capacitor bank interrupting device for voltage control using functions embedded within a microprocessor based relay that is part of a Protection System.

The above are examples only, and do not constitute an all-inclusive list to which the standard is not applicable.

Extenuating Circumstances

In the event of a natural disaster or other extenuating circumstances, the December 20, 2012 Sanction Guidelines of the North American Electric Reliability Corporation, Section 2.8, Extenuating Circumstances, reads: "In unique extenuating circumstances causing or contributing to the violation, such as significant natural disasters, NERC or the Regional Entity may significantly reduce or eliminate Penalties." The Regional Entities to whom NERC has delegated

authority will consider extenuating circumstances when considering any sanctions in relation to the timelines outlined in this standard.

The volume of Protection System operations tend to be sporadic. If a high rate of Protection System operations is not sustained, utilities will have an opportunity to catch up within the 120 day period.

Requirement Time Periods

The time periods within all the Requirements are distinct and separate. The applicable entity in Requirement R1 has 120 calendar days to identify whether a BES interrupting device operation is a Misoperation. Once the applicable entity has identified a Misoperation, it has completed its performance under Requirement R1. Identified Misoperations without an identified cause become subject to Requirement R4 and any subsequent Requirements as necessary. Identified Misoperations with an identified cause become subject to Requirement R5 and any subsequent Requirements as necessary.

In Requirement R2, the applicable entity has 120 calendar days, based on the date of the BES interrupting device operation, to provide notification to the other Protection System owners that meet the circumstances in Parts 2.1 and 2.2. For the case of an applicable entity that was notified (R3), it has the later of 120 calendar days from the date of the BES interrupting device operation or 60 calendar days of notification to identify whether its Protection System components caused a Misoperation.

Once a Misoperation is identified in either Requirement R1 or R3, and the applicable entity did not identify the cause(s) of the Misoperation, the time period for performing at least one investigative action every two full calendar quarters begins. The time period(s) in Requirement R4 resets upon each period. When the applicable entity's investigative actions identify the cause of the identified Misoperation or the applicable entity declares that no cause was found, the applicable entity has completed its performance in Requirement R4.

The time period in Requirement R5 begins when the Misoperation cause is first identified. The applicable entity is allotted 60 calendar days to perform one of the two activities listed in Requirement R5 (e.g., CAP or declaration) to complete its performance under Requirement R5.

Requirement R6 time period is determined by the actions and the associated timetable to complete those actions identified in the CAP. The time periods contained in the CAP may change from time to time and the applicable entity is required to update the timetable when it changes.

Time periods provided in the Requirements are intended to provide a reasonable amount of time to perform each Requirement. Performing activities in the least amount of time facilitates prompt identification of Misoperations, notification to other Protection System owners, identification of the cause(s), correction of the cause(s), and that important information is retained that may be lost due to time.

Requirement R1

This Requirement initiates a review of each BES interrupting device operation to identify whether or not a Misoperation may have occurred. Since the BES interrupting device owner typically monitors and tracks device operations, the owner is the logical starting point for identifying Misoperations of Protection Systems for BES Elements. A review is required when (1) a BES interrupting device operates that is caused by a Protection System or by manual intervention in response to a Protection System failure to operate, (2) regardless of whether the owner owns all or part of the Protection System component(s), and (3) the owner identified its Protection System component(s) as causing the BES interrupting device operation or was caused by manual intervention in response to its Protection System failure to operate.

Since most Misoperations result in the operation of one or more BES interrupting devices, these operations initiate a review to identify any Misoperation. If an Element is manually isolated in response to a failure to operate, the manual isolation of the Element triggers a review for Misoperation.

> **Example R1a:** The failure of a loss of field relay on a generating unit where an operator takes action to isolate the unit.

Manual intervention may indicate a Misoperation has occurred, thus requiring the initiation of an investigation by the BES interrupting device owner.

For the case where a BES interrupting device did not operate and remote clearing occurs due to the failure of a Composite Protection System to operate, the BES interrupting device owner would still review the operation under Requirement R1. However, if the BES interrupting device owner determines that its Protection System component operated as backup protection for a condition on another entity's BES Element, the owner would provide notification of the operation to the other Protection System owner(s) under Requirement R2, Part 2.2.

Protection Systems are made of many components. These components may be owned by different entities. For example, a Generator Owner may own a current transformer that sends information to a Transmission Owner's differential relay. All of these components and many more are part of a Protection System. It is expected that all of the owners will communicate with each other, sharing information freely, so that Protection System operations can be analyzed, Misoperations identified, and corrective actions taken.

Each entity is expected to use judgment to identify those Protection System operations that meet the definition of Misoperation regardless of the level of ownership. A combination of available information from resources such as counters, relay targets, Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) systems, or Disturbance Monitoring Equipment (DME) would typically be used to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The intent of the standard is to classify an operation as a Misoperation if the available information leads to that conclusion. In many cases, it will not be necessary to leverage all available data to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The standard also allows an entity to classify an operation as a Misoperation if entity is not sure. The entity may decide to identify the operation as a Misoperation to satisfy Requirement R1 and continue its investigation for a cause of the Misoperation under Requirement R4. If the continued investigative actions are inconclusive, the entity may declare no cause found and end its investigation. The entity is allotted 120 calendar days from the date of its BES interrupting device operation to identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation.

The Protection System operation may be documented in a variety of ways such as in a report, database, spreadsheet, or list. The documentation may be organized in a variety of ways such as by BES interrupting device, protected Element, or Composite Protection System.

Repeated operations which occur during the same automatic reclosing sequence do not need a separate identification under Requirement R1. Repeated Misoperations which occur during the same 24-hour period do not need a separate identification under Requirement R1. This is consistent with the NERC *Misoperations Report*[7] which states:

> "In order to avoid skewing the data with these repeated events, the NERC SPCS should clarify, in the next annual update of the misoperation template, that all misoperations due to the same equipment and cause within a 24 hour period be recorded as one misoperation."

The following is an example of a condition that is not a Misoperation.

> **Example R1b:** A high impedance Fault occurs within a transformer. The sudden pressure relaying detects and operates for the Fault, but the differential relaying did not operate due to the low Fault current levels. This is not a Misoperation because the Composite Protection System was not required to operate because the Fault was cleared by the sudden pressure relay.

Requirement R2

Requirement R2 ensures notification of those who have a role in identifying Misoperations, but were not accounted for within Requirement R1. In the case of multi-entity ownership, the entity that owns the BES interrupting device that operated is expected to use judgment to identify those Protection System operations that meet the definition of Misoperation under Requirement R1; however, if the entity that owns a BES interrupting device determines that its Protection System component(s) did not cause the BES interrupting device(s) operation or cannot determine whether its Protection System components caused the BES interrupting device(s) operation, it must notify the other Protection System owner(s) that share Misoperation identification responsibility when the criteria in Requirement R2 is met.

This Requirement does not preclude the Protection System owners from initially communicating and working together to determine whether a Misoperation occurred and, if so, the cause. The BES interrupting device owner is only required to officially notify the other owners when it: (1) shares the Composite Protection System ownership with other entity(ies), (2) determines that a Misoperation occurred or cannot rule out a Misoperation, and (3) determines its Protection System component(s) did not cause a Misoperation or is unsure. Officially notifying the other owners without performing a preliminary review may unnecessarily burden the other owners with compliance obligations under Requirement R3, redirect valuable resources, and add little

[7] "Misoperations Report." Reporting Multiple Occurrences. NERC Protection System Misoperations Task Force. http://www.nerc.com/docs/pc/psmtf/PSMTF_Report.pdf. April 1, 2013. pg. 37 of 40.

benefit to reliability. The BES interrupting device owner should officially notify other owners when appropriate within the established time period.

The following is an example of a notification to another Protection System owner:

> **Example R2a:** Circuit breakers A and B at the Charlie station tripped from directional comparison blocking (DCB) relaying on 03/03/2014 at 15:43 UTC during an external Fault. As discussed last week, the fault records indicate that a problem with your equipment (failure to transmit) caused the operation.

> **Example R2b:** A generator unit tripped out immediately upon synchronizing to the grid due to a Misoperation of its overcurrent protection. The Transmission Owner owns the 230 kV generator breaker that operated. The Transmission Owner, as the owner of the BES interrupting device after determining that its Protection System components did not cause the Misoperation, notified the Generator Owner of the operation. The Generator Owner investigated and determined that its Protection System components caused the Misoperation. In this example, the Generator Owner's Protection System components did cause the Misoperation. As the owner of the Protection System components that caused the Misoperation, the Generator Owner is responsible for creating and implementing the CAP.

A Composite Protection System owned by different functional entities within the same registered entity does not necessarily satisfy the notification criteria in Part 2.1.1 of Requirement R2. For example, if the same personnel within a registered entity perform the Misoperation identification for both the Generator Owner and Transmission Owner functions, then the Misoperation identification would be completely covered in Requirement R1, and therefore notification would not be required. However, if the Misoperation identification is handled by different groups, then notification would be required because the Misoperation identification would not necessarily be covered in Requirement R1.

> **Example R2c:** Line A Composite Protection System (owned by entity 1) failed to operate for an internal Fault. As a result, the zone 3 portion of Line B's Composite Protection System (owned by entity 2) and zone 3 portion of Line C's Composite Protection System (owned by entity 3) operated to clear the Fault. Entity 2 and 3 notified entity 1 of the remote zone 3 operation.

For the case where a BES interrupting device operates to provide backup protection for a non-BES Element, the entity reviewing the operation is not required to notify the other owners of Protection Systems for non-BES Elements. No notification is required because this Reliability Standard is not applicable to Protection Systems for non-BES Elements.

Requirement R3

For Requirement R3 (i.e., notification received), the entity that also owns a portion of the Composite Protection System is expected to use judgment to identify whether the Protection System operation is a Misoperation. A combination of available information from resources such as counters, relay targets, SCADA, DME, and information from the other owner(s) would typically be used to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The intent of the standard is to classify an operation as a Misoperation if the available information leads to that conclusion.

In many cases, it will not be necessary to leverage all available data to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The standard also allows an entity to classify an operation as a Misoperation if an entity is not sure. The entity may decide to identify the operation as a Misoperation to satisfy Requirement R1 and continue its investigation for a cause of the Misoperation under Requirement R4. If the continued investigative actions are inconclusive, the entity may declare no cause found and end its investigation.

The entity that is notified by the BES interrupting device owner is allotted the later of 60 calendar days from receipt of notification or 120 calendar days from the BES interrupting device operation date to determine if its portion of the Composite Protection System caused the Protection System operation. It is expected that in most cases of a jointly owned Protection System, the entity making notification would have been in communication with the other owner(s) early in the process. This means that the shorter 60 calendar days only comes into play if the notification occurs in the second half of the 120 calendar days allotted to the BES interrupting device owner in Requirement R1.

The Protection System review may be organized in a variety of ways such as in a report, database, spreadsheet, or list. The documentation may be organized in a variety of ways such as by BES interrupting device, protected Element, or Composite Protection System. The BES interrupting device owner's notification received may be documented in a variety of ways such as an email or a facsimile.

Requirement R4

The entity in Requirement R4 (i.e., cause identification), whether it is the entity that owns the BES interrupting device or an entity that was notified, is expected to use due diligence in taking investigative action(s) to determine the cause(s) of an identified Misoperation for its portion of the Composite Protection System. The SMEs developing this standard recognize there will be cases where the cause(s) of a Misoperation will not be revealed during the allotted time periods in Requirements R1 or R3; therefore, Requirement R4 provides the entity a mechanism to continue its investigative work to determine the cause(s) of the Misoperation when the cause is not known.

A combination of available information from resources such as counters, relay targets, SCADA, DME, test results, and studies would typically be used to determine the cause of the Misoperation. At least one investigative action must be performed every two full calendar quarters until the investigation is completed.

The following is an example of investigative actions taken to determine the cause of an identified Misoperation:

> **Example R4a**: A Misoperation was identified on 03/18/2014. A line outage to test the Protection System was scheduled on 03/24/2014 for 12/15/2014 as the first investigative action (i.e., beyond the next two full calendar quarters) due to summer peak conditions. The protection engineer contacted the manufacturer on 04/10/2014 (i.e., within two full calendar quarters) to obtain any known issues. The engineer reviewed manufacturer's documents on 05/27/2014. The outage schedule was confirmed on 08/29/2014 and was taken on 12/15/2014. Testing was completed on 12/16/2014 (i.e., in the second two full quarters) revealing the microprocessor relay as the cause of the Misoperation. A CAP is being developed to replace the relay.

Periodic action minimizes compliance burdens and focuses the entity's effort on determining the cause(s) of the Misoperation while providing measurable evidence. The SMEs recognize that certain planned investigative actions may require months or years to schedule and complete; therefore, the entity is only required to perform at least one investigative action every two full calendar quarters. If an investigative action is performed in the first quarter of a calendar year, the next investigative action would need to be performed by the end of the third calendar quarter. If an investigative action is performed in the last quarter of a calendar year, the next investigative action would need to be performed by the end of the second calendar quarter of the following calendar year. Investigative actions may include a variety of actions, such as reviewing DME records, performing or reviewing studies, completing relay calibration or testing, requesting manufacturer review, requesting an outage, or confirming a schedule.

The entity's investigation is complete when it identifies the cause of the Misoperation or makes a declaration that no cause was determined. The declaration is intended to be used if the entity determines that investigative actions have been exhausted or have not provided direction for identifying the Misoperation cause. Historically, approximately 12% of Misoperations are unknown or unexplainable.[8]

Although the entity only has to document its specific investigative actions taken to determine the cause(s) of an identified Misoperation, the entity should consider the benefits of formally organizing (e.g., in a report or database) its actions and findings. Well documented investigative actions and findings may be helpful in future investigations of a similar event or circumstances. A thorough report or database may contain a detailed description of the event, information gathered, investigative actions, findings, possible causes, identified causes, and conclusions. Multiple owners of a Composite Protection System might consider working together to produce a common report for their mutual benefit.

[8] NERC System Protection and Control Subcommittee. Misoperations Report. April 1, 2013: http://www.nerc.com/docs/pc/psmtf/PSMTF_Report.pdf. Figure 15: NERC Wide Misoperations by Cause Code. pg. 22 of 40.

The following are examples of a declaration where no cause was determined:

> **Example R4b**: A Misoperation was identified on 04/11/2014. All relays at station A and B functioned properly during testing on 08/26/2014 as the first investigative action. The carrier system functioned properly during testing on 08/27/2014. The carrier coupling equipment functioned properly during testing on 08/28/2014. A settings review completed on 09/03/2014 indicated the relay settings were proper. Since the equipment involved in the operation functioned properly during testing, the settings were reviewed and found to be correct, and the equipment at station A and station B is already monitored. The investigation is being closed because no cause was found.
>
> **Example R4c:** A Misoperation was identified on 03/22/2014. The protection scheme was replaced before the cause was identified. The power line carrier or PLC based protection was replaced with fiber-optic based protection with an in-service date of 04/16/2014. The new system will be monitored for recurrence of the Misoperation.

Requirement R5

Resolving the causes of Protection System Misoperations benefits BES reliability by preventing recurrence. The Corrective Action Plan (CAP) is an established tool for resolving operational problems. The NERC Glossary defines a Corrective Action Plan as, *"A list of actions and an associated timetable for implementation to remedy a specific problem."* Since a CAP addresses specific problems, the determination of what went wrong needs to be completed before developing a CAP. When the Misoperation cause is identified in Requirement R1, R3 or R4, Requirement R5 requires Protection System owner(s) to develop a CAP, or explain why corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability. The entity must develop the CAP or make a declaration why additional actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability and that no further corrective actions will be taken within 60 calendar days of first determining a cause.

The SMEs developing this standard recognize there may be multiple causes for a Misoperation. In these circumstances, the CAP would include a remedy for the identified causes. The CAP may be revised if additional causes are found; therefore, the entity has the option to create a single or multiple CAP(s) to correct multiple causes of a Misoperation. The 60 calendar day period for developing a CAP (or declaration) is established on the basis of industry experience which includes operational coordination timeframes, time to consider alternative solutions, coordination of resources, and development of a schedule.

The development of a CAP is intended to document the specific corrective actions needed to be taken to prevent Misoperation recurrence, the timetable for executing such actions, and an evaluation of the CAP's applicability to the entity's other Protection Systems including other locations. The evaluation of these other Protection Systems aims to reduce the risk and likelihood of similar Misoperations in other Protection Systems. The Protection System owner is responsible for determining the extent of its evaluation concerning other Protection Systems and locations. The evaluation may result in the owner including actions to address Protection Systems at other locations or the reasoning for not taking any action. The CAP and an evaluation of other Protection Systems including other locations must be developed to complete Requirement R5.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip due to a failed capacitor within the relay and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined capacitor replacement was not necessary.

For completion of each CAP in Examples R5a through R5d, please see Examples R6a through R6d.

> **Example R5a:** Actions: Remove the relay from service. Replace capacitor in the relay. Test the relay. Return to service or replace by 07/01/2014.
>
> Applicability to other Protection Systems: This type of impedance relay has not been experiencing problems and is systematically being replaced with microprocessor relays as Protection Systems are modernized. Therefore, it was assessed that a program for wholesale preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay does not need to be established for the system.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip due to a failed capacitor within the relay and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined the capacitors need preemptive correction action.

> **Example R5b:** Actions: Remove the relay from service. Replace capacitor in the relay. Test the relay. Return to service or replace by 07/01/2014.
>
> Applicability to other Protection Systems: This type of impedance relay is suspected to have previously tripped at other locations because of the same type of capacitor issue. Based on the evaluation, a program should be established by 12/01/2014 for wholesale preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip due to a failed capacitor within the relay and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined the capacitors need preemptive correction action.

> **Example R5c:** Actions: Remove the relay from service. Replace capacitor in the relay. Test the relay. Return to service or replace by 07/01/2014.
>
> Applicability to other Protection Systems: This type of impedance relay is suspected to have previously tripped at other locations because of the same type of capacitor issue. Based on the evaluation, the preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay should be pursued for the identified stations A through I by 04/30/2015.
>
> A plan is being developed to replace the impedance relay capacitors at stations A, B, and C by 09/01/2014. A second plan is being developed to replace the impedance relay capacitors at stations D, E, and F by 11/01/2014. The last plan will replace the impedance relay capacitors at stations G, H, and I by 02/01/2015.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was due to a version 2 firmware problem and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined the firmware needs preemptive correction action.

> **Example R5d:** Actions: Provide the manufacturer fault records. Install new firmware pending manufacturer results by 10/01/2014.
>
> Applicability to other Protection Systems: Based on the evaluation of other locations and a risk assessment, the newer firmware version 3 should be installed at all installations that are identified to be version 2. Twelve relays were identified across the system. Proposed completion date is 12/31/2014.

The following are examples of a declaration made where corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability and that no further corrective actions will be taken.

> **Example R5e:** The cause of the Misoperation was due to a non-registered entity communications provider problem.
>
> **Example R5f:** The cause of the Misoperation was due to a transmission transformer tapped industrial customer who initiated a direct transfer trip to a registered entity's transmission breaker.

In situations where a Misoperation cause emanates from a non-registered outside entity, there may be limited influence an entity can exert on an outside entity and is considered outside of an entity's control.

The following are examples of declarations made why corrective actions would not improve BES reliability.

> **Example R5g:** The investigation showed that the Misoperation occurred due to transients associated with energizing transformer ABC at Station Y. Studies show that de-sensitizing the relay to the recorded transients may cause the relay to fail to operate as intended during power system oscillations.
>
> **Example R5h:** As a result of an operation that left a portion of the power system in an electrical island condition, circuit XYZ within that island tripped, resulting in loss of load within the island. Subsequent investigation showed an overfrequency condition persisted after the formation of that island and the XYZ line protective relay operated. Since this relay was operating outside of its designed frequency range and would not be subject to this condition when line XYZ is operated normally connected to the BES, no corrective action will be taken because BES reliability would not be improved.

Example R5i: During a major ice storm, four of six circuits were lost at Station A. Subsequent to the loss of these circuits, a skywire (i.e., shield wire) broke near station A on line AB (between Station A and B) resulting in a phase-phase Fault. The protection scheme utilized for both protection groups is a permissive overreaching transfer trip (POTT). The Line AB protection at Station B tripped timed for this event (i.e., Slow Trip – During Fault) even though this line had been identified as requiring high speed clearing. A weak infeed condition was created at Station A due to the loss of 4 transmission circuits resulting in the absence of a permissive signal on Line AB from Station A during this Fault. No corrective action will be taken for this Misoperation as even under N-1 conditions, there is normally enough infeed at Station A to send a proper permissive signal to station B. Any changes to the protection scheme to account for this would not improve BES reliability.

A declaration why corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability should include the Misoperation cause and the justification for taking no corrective action. Furthermore, a declaration that no further corrective actions will be taken is expected to be used sparingly.

Requirement R6

To achieve the stated purpose of this standard, which is to identify and correct the causes of Misoperations of Protection Systems for BES Elements, the responsible entity is required to implement a CAP that addresses the specific problem (i.e., cause(s) of the Misoperation) through completion. Protection System owners are required in the implementation of a CAP to update it when actions or timetable change, until completed. Accomplishing this objective is intended to reduce the occurrence of future Misoperations of a similar nature, thereby improving reliability and minimizing risk to the BES.

The following is an example of a completed CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip (See also, Example R5a).

Example R6a: Actions: The impedance relay was removed from service on 06/02/2014 because it was applying a standing trip. A failed capacitor was found within the impedance relay and replaced. The impedance relay functioned properly during testing after the capacitor was replaced. The impedance relay was returned to service on 06/05/2014.

CAP completed on 06/25/2014.

The following is an example of a completed CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip that resulted in the correction and the establishment of a program for further replacements (See also, Example R5b).

> **Example R6b:** Actions: The impedance relay was removed from service on 06/02/2014 because it was applying a standing trip. A failed capacitor was found within the impedance relay and replaced. The impedance relay functioned properly during testing after the capacitor was replaced. The impedance relay was returned to service on 06/05/2014.
>
> A program for wholesale preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay was established on 10/28/2014.
>
> CAP completed on 10/28/2014.

The following is an example of a completed CAP of corrective actions with a timetable that required updating for a failed relay and preemptive actions for similar installations (See also, Example R5c).

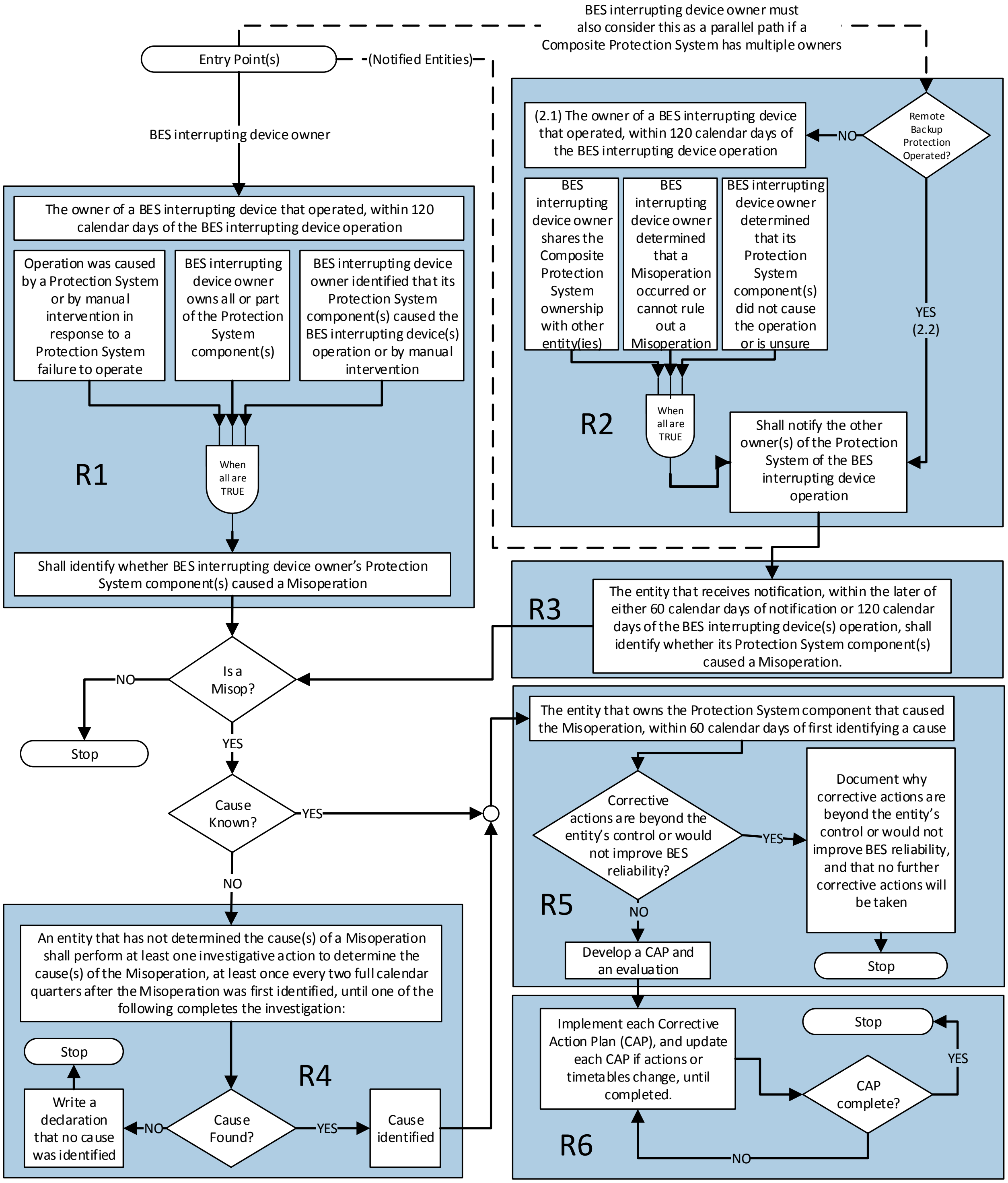
> **Example R6c:** Actions: The impedance relay was removed from service on 06/02/2014 because it was applying a standing trip. A failed capacitor was found within the impedance relay and replaced. The impedance relay functioned properly during testing after the capacitor was replaced. The impedance relay was returned to service on 06/05/2014.
>
> The impedance relay capacitor replacement was completed at stations A, B, and C on 08/16/2014. The impedance relay capacitor replacement was completed at stations D, E, and F on 10/24/2014. The impedance relay capacitor replacement for stations G, H, and I were postponed due to resource rescheduling from a scheduled 02/01/15 completion to 04/01/2015 completion. Capacitor replacement was completed on 03/09/2015 at stations G, H, and I. All stations identified in the evaluation have been completed.
>
> CAP completed on 03/09/2015.

The following is an example of a completed CAP for corrective actions with updated actions for a firmware problem and preemptive actions for similar installations. (See also, Example R5d).

> **Example R6d:** Actions: fault records were provided to the manufacturer on 06/04/2014. The manufacturer responded that the Misoperation was caused by a bug in version 2 firmware, and recommended installing version 3 firmware. Version 3 firmware was installed on 08/12/2014.
>
> Nine of the twelve relays were updated to version 3 firmware on 09/23/2014. The manufacturer provided a subsequent update which was determined to be beneficial for the remaining relays. The remaining three of twelve relays identified as having the version 2 firmware were updated to version 3.01 firmware on 11/10/2014.
>
> CAP completed on 11/10/2014.

The CAP is complete when all of the actions identified within the CAP have been completed.

Process Flow Chart: Below is a graphical representation demonstrating the relationships between Requirements:



Rationale

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes were moved to this section.

Rationale for Applicability:

Protection Systems that protect BES Elements are integral to the operation and reliability of the BES. Some functions of relays are not used as protection but as control functions or for automation; therefore, any operation of the control function portion or the automation portion of relays is excluded from this standard. See the Application Guidelines for detailed examples of non-protective functions. Special Protection Systems (SPS) and Remedial Action Schemes (RAS) are excluded in this standard because they are planned to be handled in the second phase of this project.

Rationale for R1:

This Requirement ensures that entities review those Protection System operations meeting the circumstances in all three Parts (1.1, 1.2, and 1.3) and identify any that are Misoperations. The BES interrupting device owner is assigned the responsibility to initiate the review because the owner is in the best position to be aware of the operation. Manual intervention is included as a condition that initiates a review. Occasionally, Protection System failures do not yield other Protection System operations and manual intervention is required to isolate the problematic equipment. The 120 calendar day period accounts for the sporadic volumes of Protection System operations, and provides the opportunity to identify any Misoperations which were initially missed.

Rationale for R2:

Part 2.1 ensures that the BES interrupting device owner notifies the other owners of the Composite Protection System. The phrase “owner(s) that share Misoperation identification responsibility” allows entities to notify the specific other owners that will actually review the operation to determine if a Misoperation occurred. Part 2.2 ensures that the Protection System owner(s) for which backup protection was provided receives notification, within the same 120 calendar day period as R1. This ensures other entities are notified to review their Protection System components. The expectation is that entities will communicate accordingly and when it is clear that Part 2.1, 2.2, or both are met, the entity would make the notification. It is not intended for entities to automatically and unnecessarily notify other entities before adequate detail is known.

Rationale for R3:

When an entity receives notification of a Protection System operation by the BES interrupting device owner, the other Protection System owner is allotted at least 60 calendar days to identify whether it was a Misoperation. A shorter time period is allotted on the basis that the BES interrupting device owner has already performed preliminary work, collaborated with the other owners, and that other owners generally have fewer associated Protection System components.

Rationale for R4:

If a Misoperation cause is not identified within the time period established by Requirements R1 or R3 (i.e., 120 calendar days), the Protection System component owner must demonstrate investigative actions toward identifying the cause(s). Performing at least one action every two full calendar quarters from first identifying the Misoperation encourages periodic focus on finding the cause of the Misoperation.

Rationale for R5:

A formal CAP is a proven tool for resolving and reducing the possibility of reoccurrence of operational problems. A time period of 60 calendar days is based on industry experience and operational coordination time needed for considering such things as alternative solutions, coordination of resources, or development of a schedule. When the cause of a Misoperation is identified, a CAP will generally be developed. An evaluation of the CAP's applicability to the entity's other Protection Systems including other locations helps identify similar problems, the potential for Misoperation occurrences in other Protection Systems, common mode failure, design problems, etc.

In rare cases, altering the Protection System to avoid a Misoperation recurrence may lower the reliability or performance of the BES. In those cases, a statement documenting the reasons for taking no corrective actions is essential for future reference and for justifying the absence of a CAP.

Rationale for R6:

Each CAP must accomplish all identified objectives to be complete. During the course of implementing a CAP, updates may be necessary for a variety of reasons such as new information, scheduling conflicts, or resource issues. Documenting changes or completion of CAP activities provides measurable progress and confirmation of completion.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-004-3 — Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction

<u>United States</u>

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-004-3	All	07/01/2016	06/30/2016

Reliability Standard PRC-004-4

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction**

2. **Number:** PRC-004-4

3. **Purpose:** Identify and correct the causes of Misoperations of Protection Systems for Bulk Electric System (BES) Elements.

4. **Applicability:**

4.1. Functional Entities:

4.1.1 Transmission Owner

4.1.2 Generator Owner

4.1.3 Distribution Provider

4.2. Facilities:

4.2.1 Protection Systems for BES Elements, with the following exclusions:

4.2.1.1 Non-protective functions that are embedded within a Protection System.

4.2.1.2 Protective functions intended to operate as a control function during switching.[1]

4.2.1.3 Special Protection Systems (SPS).

4.2.1.4 Remedial Action Schemes (RAS).

4.2.1.5 Protection Systems of individual dispersed power producing resources identified under Inclusion I4 of the BES definition where the Misoperations affected an aggregate nameplate rating of less than or equal to 75 MVA of BES Facilities.

4.2.2 Underfrequency load shedding (UFLS) that is intended to trip one or more BES Elements.

5. **Background**:

A key factor for BES reliability is the correct performance of Protection Systems. The monitoring of Protection System events for BES Elements, as well as identifying and correcting the causes of Misoperations, will improve Protection System performance. This Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 – Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction is a revision of PRC-004-2.1a – Analysis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection System Misoperations. The Reliability Standard PRC-003-1 – Regional Procedure for Analysis of Misoperations of Transmission and Generation Protection Systems requires Regional Entities to establish procedures for analysis of

[1] For additional information and examples, see the "Non-Protective Functions" and "Control Functions" sections in the Application Guidelines.

Misoperations. In the FERC Order No. 693, the Commission identified PRC-003-0 as a "fill-in-the-blank" standard. The Order stated that because the regional procedures had not been submitted, the Commission proposed not to approve or remand PRC-003-0. Because PRC-003-0 (now PRC-003-1) is not enforceable, there is not a mandatory requirement for Regional Entity procedures to support the Requirements of PRC-004-2.1a. This is a potential reliability gap; consequently, PRC-004-3 combines the reliability intent of the two legacy standards PRC-003-1 and PRC-004-2.1a.

This project includes revising the existing definition of Misoperation, which reads:

Misoperation

- Any failure of a Protection System element to operate within the specified time when a fault or abnormal condition occurs within a zone of protection.
- Any operation for a fault not within a zone of protection (other than operation as backup protection for a fault in an adjacent zone that is not cleared within a specified time for the protection for that zone).
- Any unintentional Protection System operation when no fault or other abnormal condition has occurred unrelated to on-site maintenance and testing activity.

In general, this definition needed more specificity and clarity. The terms "specified time" and "abnormal condition" are ambiguous. In the third bullet, more clarification is needed as to whether an unintentional Protection System operation for an atypical, yet explainable, condition is a Misoperation.

The SAR for this project also included clarifying reporting requirements. Misoperation data, as currently collected and reported, is not optimal to establish consistent metrics for measuring Protection System performance. As such, the data reporting obligation for this standard is being removed and is being developed under the NERC Rules of Procedure, Section 1600 – Request for Data or Information ("data request"). As a result of the data request, NERC will analyze the data to: develop meaningful metrics; identify trends in Protection System performance that negatively impact reliability; identify remediation techniques; and publicize lessons learned for the industry. The removal of the data collection obligation from the standard does not result in a reduction of reliability. The standard and data request have been developed in a manner such that evidence used for compliance with the standard and data request are intended to be independent of each other.

The proposed Requirements of the revised Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 meet the following objectives:

- Review all Protection System operations on the BES to identify those that are Misoperations of Protection Systems for Facilities that are part of the BES.
- Analyze Misoperations of Protection Systems for Facilities that are part of the BES to identify the cause(s).
- Develop and implement Corrective Action Plans to address the cause(s) of Misoperations of Protection Systems for Facilities that are part of the BES.

Misoperations associated with Special Protection Schemes (SPS) and Remedial Action Schemes (RAS) are not addressed in this standard due to their inherent complexities. NERC plans to handle SPS and RAS in the second phase of this project.

The Western Electric Coordinating Council (WECC) Regional Reliability Standard PRC-004-WECC-1 – Protection System and Remedial Action Scheme Misoperation relates to the reporting of Misoperations of Protection Systems and RAS for a limited set of WECC Paths. The WECC region plans to conduct work to harmonize the regional standard with this continent-wide proposed standard and the second phase of this project concerning SPS and RAS.

Undervoltage load shedding (UVLS) has not been included in this standard's applicability because Misoperations of UVLS relays are currently addressed by Reliability Standard PRC-022-1 – Under-Voltage Load Shedding Program Performance, Requirement R1.5. Underfrequency load shedding (UFLS) was added to PRC-004-3 to close a gap in reliability as Misoperations of UFLS relays are not covered by a Reliability Standard currently.

6. Effective Dates:

See the Implementation Plan for this Standard.

B. Requirements and Measures

R1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that owns a BES interrupting device that operated under the circumstances in Parts 1.1 through 1.3 shall, within 120 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation, identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*

1.1 The BES interrupting device operation was caused by a Protection System or by manual intervention in response to a Protection System failure to operate; and

1.2 The BES interrupting device owner owns all or part of the Composite Protection System; and

1.3 The BES interrupting device owner identified that its Protection System component(s) caused the BES interrupting device(s) operation or was caused by manual intervention in response to its Protection System failure to operate.

M1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it identified the Misoperation of its Protection System component(s), if any, that meet the circumstances in Requirement R1, Parts 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3 within the allotted time period. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R1, including Parts 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): reports, databases, spreadsheets, emails, facsimiles, lists, logs, records, declarations, analyses of sequence of events, relay targets, Disturbance Monitoring Equipment (DME) records, test results, or transmittals.

R2. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that owns a BES interrupting device that operated shall, within 120 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation, provide notification as described in Parts 2.1 and 2.2. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*

2.1 For a BES interrupting device operation by a Composite Protection System or by manual intervention in response to a Protection System failure to operate, notification of the operation shall be provided to the other owner(s) that share Misoperation identification responsibility for the Composite Protection System under the following circumstances:

2.1.1 The BES interrupting device owner shares the Composite Protection System ownership with any other owner; and

2.1.2 The BES interrupting device owner has determined that a Misoperation occurred or cannot rule out a Misoperation; and

2.1.3 The BES interrupting device owner has determined that its Protection System component(s) did not cause the BES interrupting device(s) operation or cannot determine whether its Protection System components caused the BES interrupting device(s) operation.

2.2 For a BES interrupting device operation by a Protection System component intended to operate as backup protection for a condition on another entity's BES Element, notification of the operation shall be provided to the other Protection System owner(s) for which that backup protection was provided.

M2. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates notification to the other owner(s), within the allotted time period for either Requirement R2, Part 2.1, including subparts 2.1.1, 2.1.2, and 2.1.3 and Requirement R2, Part 2.2. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R2, including Parts 2.1 and 2.2 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): emails, facsimiles, or transmittals.

R3. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that receives notification, pursuant to Requirement R2 shall, within the later of 60 calendar days of notification or 120 calendar days of the BES interrupting device(s) operation, identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*

M3. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation within the allotted time period. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R3 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): reports, databases, spreadsheets, emails, facsimiles, lists, logs, records, declarations, analyses of sequence of events, relay targets, DME records, test results, or transmittals.

R4. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that has not determined the cause(s) of a Misoperation, for a Misoperation identified in accordance with Requirement R1 or R3, shall perform investigative action(s) to determine the cause(s) of the Misoperation at least once every two full calendar quarters after the Misoperation was first identified, until one of the following completes the investigation: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*

- The identification of the cause(s) of the Misoperation; or
- A declaration that no cause was identified.

M4. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it performed at least one investigative action according to Requirement R4 every two full calendar quarters until a cause is identified or a declaration is made. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R4 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): reports, databases, spreadsheets, emails, facsimiles, lists, logs, records, declarations, analyses of sequence of events, relay targets, DME records, test results, or transmittals.

R5. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that owns the Protection System component(s) that caused the Misoperation shall, within 60 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation: [*Violation Risk Factor: Medium*] [*Time Horizon: Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning*]

- Develop a Corrective Action Plan (CAP) for the identified Protection System component(s), and an evaluation of the CAP's applicability to the entity's other Protection Systems including other locations; or
- Explain in a declaration why corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability, and that no further corrective actions will be taken.

M5. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it developed a CAP and an evaluation of the CAP's applicability to other Protection Systems and locations, or a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R5 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): CAP and evaluation, or declaration.

R6. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall implement each CAP developed in Requirement R5, and update each CAP if actions or timetables change, until completed. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium][Time Horizon: Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning]*

M6. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it implemented each CAP, including updating actions or timetables. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R6 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): records that document the implementation of each CAP and the completion of actions for each CAP including revision history of each CAP. Evidence may also include work management program records, work orders, and maintenance records.

C. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" (CEA) means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Evidence Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the CEA may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall keep data or evidence to show compliance as identified below unless directed by its CEA to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation.

> The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall retain evidence of Requirements R1, R2, R3, and R4, Measures M1, M2, M3, and M4 for a minimum of 12 calendar months following the completion of each Requirement.
>
> The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall retain evidence of Requirement R5, Measure M5, including any supporting analysis per Requirements R1, R2, R3, and R4, for a minimum of 12 calendar months following completion of each CAP, completion of each evaluation, and completion of each declaration.
>
> The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall retain evidence of Requirement R6, Measure M6 for a minimum of 12 calendar months following completion of each CAP.

If a Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, or Distribution Provider is found non-compliant, it shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is complete and approved, or for the time specified above, whichever is longer.

The CEA shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None.

D. Table of Compliance Elements

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 120 calendar days and less than or equal to 150 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 150 calendar days and less than or equal to 165 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 165 calendar days and less than or equal to 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation. OR The responsible entity failed to identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R2	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 120 calendar days and less than or equal to 150 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 150 calendar days and less than or equal to 165 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 165 calendar days and less than or equal to 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation. OR The responsible entity failed to notify one or more of the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R3	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was less than or equal to 30 calendar days late.	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was greater than 30 calendar days and less than or equal to 45 calendar days late.	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was greater than 45 calendar days and less than or equal to 60 calendar days late.	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was greater than 60 calendar days late. OR The responsible entity failed to identify whether or not a Misoperation of its Protection System component(s) occurred in accordance with Requirement R3.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R4	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	Medium	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was less than or equal to one calendar quarter late.	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was greater than one calendar quarter and less than or equal to two calendar quarters late.	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was greater than two calendar quarters and less than or equal to three calendar quarters late.	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was more than three calendar quarters late. OR The responsible entity failed to perform investigative action(s) in accordance with Requirement R4.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R5	Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning	Medium	The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 60 calendar days and less than or equal to 70 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR (See next page)	The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 70 calendar days and less than or equal to 80 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR (See next page)	The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 80 calendar days and less than or equal to 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR (See next page)	The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR The responsible entity failed to develop a CAP or explain in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5. OR (See next page)

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R5	(Continued)		The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 60 calendar days and less than or equal to 70 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.	The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 70 calendar days and less than or equal to 80 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.	The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 80 calendar days and less than or equal to 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.	The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR The responsible entity failed to develop an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5.
R6	Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning	Medium	The responsible entity implemented, but failed to update a CAP, when actions or timetables changed, in accordance with Requirement R6.	N/A	N/A	The responsible entity failed to implement a CAP in accordance with Requirement R6.

E. Regional Variances

None.

F. Interpretations

None.

G. Associated Documents

NERC System Protection and Controls Subcommittee of the NERC Planning Committee, Assessment of Standards: PRC-003-1 – Regional Procedure for Analysis of Misoperations of Transmission and Generation Protection Systems, PRC-004-1 – Analysis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection Misoperations, PRC-016-1 – Special Protection System Misoperations, May 22, 2009.[2]

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Date	New
1	December 1, 2005	1. Changed incorrect use of certain hyphens (-) to "en dash" (–) and "em dash (—)." 2. Added "periods" to items where appropriate. Changed "Timeframe" to "Time Frame" in item D, 1.2.	01/20/06
2		Modified to address Order No. 693 Directives contained in paragraph 1469.	Revised
2	August 5, 2010	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
1a	February 17, 2011	Added Appendix 1 - Interpretation regarding applicability of standard to protection of radially connected transformers	Project 2009-17 interpretation
1a	February 17, 2011	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	

[2] http://www.nerc.com/comm/PC/System%20Protection%20and%20Control%20Subcommittee%20SPCS%20DL/PRC-003-004-016%20Report.pdf

1a	September 26, 2011	FERC Order issued approving the interpretation of R1 and R3 (FERC's Order is effective as of September 26, 2011)	
2a	September 26, 2011	Appended FERC-approved interpretation of R1 and R3 to version 2	
2.1a		Errata change: Edited R2 to add "…and generator interconnection Facility…"	Revision under Project 2010-07
2.1a	February 9, 2012	Errata change adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
2.1a	September 19, 2013	FERC Order issued approving PRC-004-2.1a (approval becomes effective November 25, 2013).	
3	August 14, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Revision under Project 2010-05.1
4	November 13, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Applicability revised in Project 2014-01 to clarify application of Requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources.
4	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order issued approving PRC-004-4.	

Guidelines and Technical Basis

Introduction

This standard addresses the reliability issues identified in the letter[3] from Gerry Cauley, NERC President and CEO, dated January 7, 2011.

> "Nearly all major system failures, excluding perhaps those caused by severe weather, have misoperations of relays or automatic controls as a factor contributing to the propagation of the failure. …Relays can misoperate, either operate when not needed or fail to operate when needed, for a number of reasons. First, the device could experience an internal failure – but this is rare. Most commonly, relays fail to operate correctly due to incorrect settings, improper coordination (of timing and set points) with other devices, ineffective maintenance and testing, or failure of communications channels or power supplies. Preventable errors can be introduced by field personnel and their supervisors or more programmatically by the organization."

The standard also addresses the findings in the *2011 Risk Assessment of Reliability Performance*[4]; July 2011.

> "…a number of multiple outage events were initiated by protection system Misoperations. These events, which go beyond their design expectations and operating procedures, represent a tangible threat to reliability. A deeper review of the root causes of dependent and common mode events, which include three or more automatic outages, is a high priority for NERC and the industry."

The *State of Reliability 2014*[5] report continued to identify Protection System Misoperations as a significant contributor to automatic transmission outage severity. The report recommended completion of the development of PRC-004-3 as part of the solution to address Protection System Misoperations.

Definitions

The Misoperation definition is based on the IEEE/PSRC Working Group I3 "Transmission Protective Relay System Performance Measuring Methodology[6]." Misoperations of a Protection System include failure to operate, slowness in operating, or operating when not required either during a Fault or non-Fault condition.

---

[3] http://www.nerc.com/pa/Stand/Project%20201005%20Protection%20System%20Misoperations%20DL/20110209130708-Cauley%20letter.pdf

[4] "2011 Risk Assessment of Reliability Performance." NERC. http://www.nerc.com/files/2011_RARPR_FINAL.pdf. July 2011. Pg. 3.

[5] "State of Reliability 2014." NERC. http://www.nerc.com/pa/Stand/Pages/RelaibilityCoordinationProject20066.aspx. May 2014. Pg. 18 of 106.

[6] "Transmission Protective Relay System Performance Measuring Methodology." Working Group I3 of Power System Relaying Committee of IEEE Power Engineering Society. 1999.

For reference, a "Protection System" is defined in the *Glossary of Terms Used in NERC Reliability Standards* ("NERC Glossary") as:

- Protective relays which respond to electrical quantities,
- Communications systems necessary for correct operation of protective functions,
- Voltage and current sensing devices providing inputs to protective relays,
- Station dc supply associated with protective functions (including station batteries, battery chargers, and non-battery-based dc supply), and
- Control circuitry associated with protective functions through the trip coil(s) of the circuit breakers or other interrupting devices.

A BES interrupting device is a BES Element, typically a circuit breaker or circuit switcher that has the capability to interrupt fault current. Although BES interrupting device mechanisms are not part of a Protection System, the standard uses the operation of a BES interrupting device by a Protection System to initiate the review for Misoperation.

The following two definitions are being proposed for inclusion in the NERC Glossary:

> **Composite Protection System** – *The total complement of Protection System(s) that function collectively to protect an Element. Backup protection provided by a different Element's Protection System(s) is excluded.*

The Composite Protection System definition is based on the principle that an Element's multiple layers of protection are intended to function collectively. This definition has been introduced in this standard and incorporated into the proposed definition of Misoperation to clarify that the overall performance of an Element's total complement of protection should be considered while evaluating an operation.

Composite Protection System – Line Example

The Composite Protection System of the Alpha-Beta line (Circuit #123) is comprised of current differential, permissive overreaching transfer trip (POTT), step distance (classic zone 1, zone 2, and zone 3), instantaneous-overcurrent, time-overcurrent, out-of-step, and overvoltage protection. The protection is housed at the Alpha and Beta substations, and includes the associated relays, communications systems, voltage and current sensing devices, DC supplies, and control circuitry.

Composite Protection System – Transformer Example

The Composite Protection System of the Alpha transformer (#2) is comprised of internal differential, overall differential, instantaneous-overcurrent, and time-overcurrent protection. The protection is housed at the Alpha substation, and includes the associated relays, voltage and current sensing devices, DC supplies, and control circuitry.

Composite Protection System – Generator Example

The Composite Protection System of the Beta generator (#3) is comprised of generator differential, overall differential, overcurrent, stator ground, reverse power, volts per hertz, loss-of-field, and undervoltage protection. The protection is housed at the Beta generating plant and at the Beta substation, and includes the associated relays, voltage and current sensing devices, DC supplies, and control circuitry.

Composite Protection System – Breaker Failure Example

Breaker failure protection provides backup protection for the breaker, and therefore is part of the breaker's Composite Protection System. Considering breaker failure protection to be part of another Element's Composite Protection System could lead to an incorrect conclusion that a breaker failure operation automatically satisfies the "Slow Trip" criteria of the Misoperation definition.

- An example of a correct operation of the breaker's Composite Protection System is when the breaker failure relaying tripped because the line relaying operated, but the breaker failed to clear the Fault. The breaker failure relaying operated because of a failed trip coil. The failed trip coil caused a Misoperation of the line's Composite Protection System.
- An example of a correct operation of the breaker's Composite Protection System is when the breaker failure relaying tripped because the line relaying operated, but the breaker failed to clear the Fault. Only the breaker failure relaying operated because of a failed breaker mechanism. This was not a Misoperation because the breaker mechanism is not part of the breaker's Composite Protection System.
- An example of an "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" is when the breaker failure relaying tripped at the same time as the line relaying during a Fault. The Misoperation was due to the breaker failure timer being set to zero.

Misoperation – *The failure a Composite Protection System to operate as intended for protection purposes. Any of the following is a Misoperation:*

1. **Failure to Trip – During Fault** – *A failure of a Composite Protection System to operate for a Fault condition for which it is designed. The failure of a Protection System component is not a Misoperation as long as the performance of the Composite Protection System is correct.*
2. ***Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault*** – *A failure of a Composite Protection System to operate for a non-Fault condition for which it is designed, such as a power swing, undervoltage, overexcitation, or loss of excitation. The failure of a Protection System component is not a Misoperation as long as the performance of the Composite Protection System is correct.*

3. ***Slow Trip – During Fault*** *– A Composite Protection System operation that is slower than required for a Fault condition if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System.*
4. ***Slow Trip – Other Than Fault*** *– A Composite Protection System operation that is slower than required for a non-Fault condition, such as a power swing, undervoltage, overexcitation, or loss of excitation, if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System.*
5. ***Unnecessary Trip – During Fault*** *– An unnecessary Composite Protection System operation for a Fault condition on another Element.*
6. ***Unnecessary Trip – Other Than Fault*** *– An unnecessary Composite Protection System operation for a non-Fault condition. A Composite Protection System operation that is caused by personnel during on-site maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning activities is not a Misoperation.*

The Misoperation definition is based on the principle that an Element's total complement of protection is intended to operate dependably and securely.

- Failure to automatically reclose after a Fault condition is not included as a Misoperation because reclosing equipment is not included within the definition of Protection System.
- A breaker failure operation does not, in itself, constitute a Misoperation.
- A remote backup operation resulting from a "Failure to Trip" or a "Slow Trip" does not, in itself, constitute a Misoperation.

This proposed definition of Misoperation provides additional clarity over the current version. A Misoperation is the failure of a Composite Protection System to operate as intended for protection purposes. The definition includes six categories which provide further differentiation of what constitutes a Misoperation. These categories are discussed in greater detail in the following sections.

Failure to Trip – During Fault

This category of Misoperation typically results in the Fault condition being cleared by remote backup Protection System operation.

Example 1a: A failure of a transformer's Composite Protection System to operate for a transformer Fault is a Misoperation.

Example 1b: A failure of a "primary" transformer relay (or any other component) to operate for a transformer Fault is not a "Failure to Trip – During Fault" Misoperation as long as another component of the transformer's Composite Protection System operated.

Example 1c: A lack of target information does not by itself constitute a Misoperation. When a high-speed pilot system does not target because a high-speed zone element trips first, it would not in and of itself be a Misoperation.

Example 1d: A failure of an overall differential relay to operate is not a "Failure to Trip – During Fault" Misoperation as long as another component such as a generator differential relay operated.

> **Example 1e:** The Composite Protection System for a bus does not operate during a bus Fault which results in the operation of all local transformer Protection Systems connected to that bus and all remote line Protection Systems connected to that bus isolating the faulted bus from the grid. The operation of the local transformer Protection Systems and the operation of all remote line Protection Systems correctly provided backup protection. There is one "Failure to Trip – During Fault" Misoperation of the bus Composite Protection System.

In analyzing the Protection System for Misoperation, the entity must also consider whether the "Slow Trip – During Fault" category applies to the operation.

Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault

This category of Misoperation may have resulted in operator intervention. The "Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault" conditions cited in the definition are examples only, and do not constitute an all-inclusive list.

> **Example 2a:** A failure of a generator's Composite Protection System to operate for an unintentional loss of field condition is a Misoperation.
>
> **Example 2b:** A failure of an overexcitation relay (or any other component) is not a "Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault" Misoperation as long as the generator's Composite Protection System operated as intended isolating the generator from the BES.

In analyzing the Protection System for Misoperation, the entity must also consider whether the "Slow Trip – Other Than Fault" category applies to the operation.

Slow Trip – During Fault

This category of Misoperation typically results in remote backup Protection System operation before the Fault is cleared.

> **Example 3a:** A Composite Protection System that is slower than required for a Fault condition is a Misoperation if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. The current differential element of a multiple function relay failed to operate for a line Fault. The same relay's time-overcurrent element operated after a time delay. However, an adjacent line also operated from a time-overcurrent element. The faulted line's time-overcurrent element was found to be set to trip too slowly.
>
> **Example 3b:** A failure of a breaker's Composite Protection System to operate as quickly as intended to meet the expected critical Fault clearing time for a line Fault in conjunction with a breaker failure (i.e., stuck breaker) is a Misoperation if it resulted in an unintended operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. If a generating unit's Composite Protection System operates due to instability caused by the slow trip of the breaker's Composite Protection System, it is not an "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" Misoperation of the generating unit's Composite Protection System. This event would be a "Slow Trip – During Fault" Misoperation of the breaker's Composite Protection System.

> **Example 3c:** A line connected to a generation interconnection station is protected with two independent high-speed pilot systems. The Composite Protection System for this line also includes step distance and time-overcurrent schemes in addition to the two pilot systems. During a Fault on this line, the two pilot systems fail to operate and the time-overcurrent scheme operates clearing the Fault with no generating units or other Elements tripping (i.e., no over-trips). This event is not a Misoperation.

The phrase “slower than required” means the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element’s Composite Protection System. It would be impractical to provide a precise tolerance in the definition that would be applicable to every type of Protection System. Rather, the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation should understand whether the speed and outcome of its Protection System operation met their objective. The intent is not to require documentation of exact Protection System operation times, but to assure consideration of relay coordination and system stability by the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation.

The phrase “resulted in the operation of any other Composite Protection System” refers to the need to ensure that relaying operates in the proper or planned sequence (i.e., the primary relaying for a faulted Element operates before the remote backup relaying for the faulted Element).

In analyzing the Protection System for Misoperation, the entity must also consider the “Unnecessary Trip – During Fault” category to determine if an “unnecessary trip” applies to the Protection System operation of an Element other than the faulted Element.

If a coordination error was at the local terminal (i.e., set too slow), then it was a "Slow Trip," category of Misoperation at the local terminal.

Slow Trip – Other Than Fault

The phrase “slower than required” means the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element’s Composite Protection System. It would be impractical to provide a precise tolerance in the definition that would be applicable to every type of Protection System. Rather, the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation should understand whether the speed and outcome of its Protection System operation met their objective. The intent is not to require documentation of exact Protection System operation times, but to assure consideration of relay coordination and system stability by the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation.

> **Example 4:** A phase to phase fault occurred on the terminals of a generator. The generator's Composite Protection System and a transmission line's Composite Protection System both operated in response to the fault. It was found during subsequent investigation that the generator protection contained an inappropriate time delay. This caused the transmission line's correctly set overreaching zone of protection to operate. This was a Misoperation of the generator’s Composite Protection System, but not of the transmission line’s Composite Protection System.

The “Slow Trip – Other Than Fault” conditions cited in the definition are examples only, and do not constitute an all-inclusive list.

Unnecessary Trip – During Fault

An operation of a properly coordinated remote Protection System is not in and of itself a Misoperation if the Fault has persisted for a sufficient time to allow the correct operation of the Composite Protection System of the faulted Element to clear the Fault. A BES interrupting device failure, a “failure to trip” Misoperation, or a “slow trip” Misoperation may result in a proper remote Protection System operation.

> **Example 5:** An operation of a transformer's Composite Protection System which trips (i.e., over-trips) for a properly cleared line Fault is a Misoperation. The Fault is cleared properly by the faulted equipment's Composite Protection System (i.e., line relaying) without the need for an external Protection System operation resulting in an unnecessary trip of the transformer protection; therefore, the transformer Protection System operation is a Misoperation.
>
> **Example 5b:** An operation of a line's Composite Protection System which trips (i.e., over-trips) for a properly cleared Fault on a different line is a Misoperation. The Fault is cleared properly by the faulted line's Composite Protection System (i.e., line relaying); however, elsewhere in the system, a carrier blocking signal is not transmitted (e.g., carrier ON/OFF switch found in OFF position) resulting in the operation of a remote Protection System, single-end trip of a non-faulted line. The operation of the Protection System for the non-faulted line is an unnecessary trip during a Fault. Therefore, the non-faulted line Protection System operation is an “Unnecessary Trip – During Fault” Misoperation.
>
> **Example 5c:** If a coordination error was at the remote terminal (i.e., set too fast), then it was an "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" category of Misoperation at the remote terminal.

Unnecessary Trip – Other Than Fault

Unnecessary trips for non-Fault conditions include but are not limited to: power swings, overexcitation, loss of excitation, frequency excursions, and normal operations.

> **Example 6a:** An operation of a line's Composite Protection System due to a relay failure during normal operation is a Misoperation.
>
> **Example 6b:** Tripping a generator by the operation of the loss of field protection during an off-nominal frequency condition while the field is intact is a Misoperation assuming the Composite Protection System was not intended to operate under this condition.
>
> **Example 6c:** An impedance line relay trip for a power swing that entered the relay’s characteristic is a Misoperation if the power swing was stable and the relay operated because power swing blocking was enabled and should have prevented the trip, but did not.
>
> **Example 6d:** Tripping a generator operating at normal load by the operation of a reverse power protection relay due to a relay failure is a Misoperation.

Additionally, an operation that occurs during a non-Fault condition but was initiated directly by on-site (i.e., real-time) maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning is not a Misoperation.

> **Example 6e:** A BES interrupting device operation that occurs at the remote end of a line during a non-Fault condition because a direct transfer trip was initiated by system maintenance and testing activities at the local end of the line is not a Misoperation because of the maintenance exclusion in category 6 of the definition of “Misoperation.”

The “on-site” activities at one location that initiates a trip to another location are included in this exemption. This includes operation of a Protection System when energizing equipment to facilitate measurements, such as verification of current circuits as a part of performing commissioning; however, once the maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning activity associated with the Protection System is complete, the "on-site" Misoperation exclusion no longer applies, regardless of the presence of on-site personnel.

Special Cases

Protection System operations for these cases would not be a Misoperation.

> **Example 7a:** A generator Protection System operation prior to closing the unit breaker(s) is not a Misoperation provided no in-service Elements are tripped.

This type of operation is not a Misoperation because the generating unit is not synchronized and is isolated from the BES. Protection System operations that occur when the protected Element is out of service and that do not trip any in-service Elements are not Misoperations.

In some cases where zones of protection overlap, the owner(s) of Elements may decide to allow a Protection System to operate faster in order to gain better overall Protection System performance for an Element.

> **Example 7b:** The high-side of a transformer connected to a line may be within the zone of protection of the supplying line’s relaying. In this case, the line relaying is planned to protect the area of the high-side of the transformer and into its primary winding. In order to provide faster protection for the line, the line relaying may be designed and set to operate without direct coordination (or coordination is waived) with local protection for Faults on the high-side of the connected transformer. Therefore, the operation of the line relaying for a high-side transformer Fault operated as intended and would not be a Misoperation.

Below are examples of conditions that would be a Misoperation.

> **Example7c:** A 230 kV shunt capacitor bank was released for operational service. The capacitor bank trips due to a settings error in the capacitor bank differential relay upon energization.

> **Example 7d:** A 230/115 kV BES transformer bank trips out when being re-energized due to an incorrect operation of the transformer differential relay for inrush after being released for operational service. Only the high-side breaker opens since the low-side breaker had not yet been closed.

Non-Protective Functions

BES interrupting device operations which are initiated by non-protective functions, such as those associated with generator controls, excitation controls, or turbine/boiler controls, static voltampere-reactive compensators (SVC), flexible ac transmission systems (FACTS), high-voltage dc (HVdc) transmission systems, circuit breaker mechanisms, or other facility control systems are not operations of a Protection System. The standard is not applicable to non-protective functions such as automation (e.g., data collection) or control functions that are embedded within a Protection System.

Control Functions

The entity must make a determination as to whether the standard is applicable to each operation of its Protection System in accordance with the provided exclusions in the standard's Applicability, see Section 4.2.1. The subject matter experts (SME) developing this standard recognize that entities use Protection Systems as part of a routine practice to control BES Elements. This standard is not applicable to operation of protective functions within a Protection System when intended for controlling a BES Element as a part of an entity's process or planned switching sequence. The following are examples of conditions to which this standard is not applicable:

> **Example 8a:** The reverse power protective function that operates to remove a generating unit from service using the entity's normal or routine process.
>
> **Example 8b:** The reverse power relay enables a permissive trip and the generator operator trips the unit.

The standard is not applicable to operation of the protective relay because its operation is intended as a control function as part of a controlled shutdown sequence for the generator. However, the standard remains applicable to operation of the reverse power relay when it operates for conditions not associated with the controlled shutdown sequence, such as a motoring condition caused by a trip of the prime mover.

The following is another example of a condition to which this standard is not applicable:

> **Example 8c:** Operation of a capacitor bank interrupting device for voltage control using functions embedded within a microprocessor based relay that is part of a Protection System.

The above are examples only, and do not constitute an all-inclusive list to which the standard is not applicable.

Extenuating Circumstances

In the event of a natural disaster or other extenuating circumstances, the December 20, 2012 Sanction Guidelines of the North American Electric Reliability Corporation, Section 2.8, Extenuating Circumstances, reads: "In unique extenuating circumstances causing or contributing to the violation, such as significant natural disasters, NERC or the Regional Entity may significantly reduce or eliminate Penalties." The Regional Entities to whom NERC has delegated

authority will consider extenuating circumstances when considering any sanctions in relation to the timelines outlined in this standard.

The volume of Protection System operations tend to be sporadic. If a high rate of Protection System operations is not sustained, utilities will have an opportunity to catch up within the 120 day period.

Requirement Time Periods

The time periods within all the Requirements are distinct and separate. The applicable entity in Requirement R1 has 120 calendar days to identify whether a BES interrupting device operation is a Misoperation. Once the applicable entity has identified a Misoperation, it has completed its performance under Requirement R1. Identified Misoperations without an identified cause become subject to Requirement R4 and any subsequent Requirements as necessary. Identified Misoperations with an identified cause become subject to Requirement R5 and any subsequent Requirements as necessary.

In Requirement R2, the applicable entity has 120 calendar days, based on the date of the BES interrupting device operation, to provide notification to the other Protection System owners that meet the circumstances in Parts 2.1 and 2.2. For the case of an applicable entity that was notified (R3), it has the later of 120 calendar days from the date of the BES interrupting device operation or 60 calendar days of notification to identify whether its Protection System components caused a Misoperation.

Once a Misoperation is identified in either Requirement R1 or R3, and the applicable entity did not identify the cause(s) of the Misoperation, the time period for performing at least one investigative action every two full calendar quarters begins. The time period(s) in Requirement R4 resets upon each period. When the applicable entity's investigative actions identify the cause of the identified Misoperation or the applicable entity declares that no cause was found, the applicable entity has completed its performance in Requirement R4.

The time period in Requirement R5 begins when the Misoperation cause is first identified. The applicable entity is allotted 60 calendar days to perform one of the two activities listed in Requirement R5 (e.g., CAP or declaration) to complete its performance under Requirement R5.

Requirement R6 time period is determined by the actions and the associated timetable to complete those actions identified in the CAP. The time periods contained in the CAP may change from time to time and the applicable entity is required to update the timetable when it changes.

Time periods provided in the Requirements are intended to provide a reasonable amount of time to perform each Requirement. Performing activities in the least amount of time facilitates prompt identification of Misoperations, notification to other Protection System owners, identification of the cause(s), correction of the cause(s), and that important information is retained that may be lost due to time.

Requirement R1

This Requirement initiates a review of each BES interrupting device operation to identify whether or not a Misoperation may have occurred. Since the BES interrupting device owner typically monitors and tracks device operations, the owner is the logical starting point for identifying Misoperations of Protection Systems for BES Elements. A review is required when (1) a BES interrupting device operates that is caused by a Protection System or by manual intervention in response to a Protection System failure to operate, (2) regardless of whether the owner owns all or part of the Protection System component(s), and (3) the owner identified its Protection System component(s) as causing the BES interrupting device operation or was caused by manual intervention in response to its Protection System failure to operate.

Since most Misoperations result in the operation of one or more BES interrupting devices, these operations initiate a review to identify any Misoperation. If an Element is manually isolated in response to a failure to operate, the manual isolation of the Element triggers a review for Misoperation.

> **Example R1a:** The failure of a loss of field relay on a generating unit where an operator takes action to isolate the unit.

Manual intervention may indicate a Misoperation has occurred, thus requiring the initiation of an investigation by the BES interrupting device owner.

For the case where a BES interrupting device did not operate and remote clearing occurs due to the failure of a Composite Protection System to operate, the BES interrupting device owner would still review the operation under Requirement R1. However, if the BES interrupting device owner determines that its Protection System component operated as backup protection for a condition on another entity’s BES Element, the owner would provide notification of the operation to the other Protection System owner(s) under Requirement R2, Part 2.2.

Protection Systems are made of many components. These components may be owned by different entities. For example, a Generator Owner may own a current transformer that sends information to a Transmission Owner’s differential relay. All of these components and many more are part of a Protection System. It is expected that all of the owners will communicate with each other, sharing information freely, so that Protection System operations can be analyzed, Misoperations identified, and corrective actions taken.

Each entity is expected to use judgment to identify those Protection System operations that meet the definition of Misoperation regardless of the level of ownership. A combination of available information from resources such as counters, relay targets, Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) systems, or DME would typically be used to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The intent of the standard is to classify an operation as a Misoperation if the available information leads to that conclusion. In many cases, it will not be necessary to leverage all available data to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The standard also allows an entity to classify an operation as a Misoperation if entity is not sure. The entity may decide to identify the operation as a Misoperation to satisfy Requirement R1 and continue its investigation for a cause of the Misoperation under Requirement R4. If the continued investigative actions are inconclusive, the entity may declare no cause found and end its investigation. The entity is allotted 120 calendar days from the date of its BES interrupting device operation to identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation.

The Protection System operation may be documented in a variety of ways such as in a report, database, spreadsheet, or list. The documentation may be organized in a variety of ways such as by BES interrupting device, protected Element, or Composite Protection System.

Repeated operations which occur during the same automatic reclosing sequence do not need a separate identification under Requirement R1. Repeated Misoperations which occur during the same 24-hour period do not need a separate identification under Requirement R1. This is consistent with the NERC *Misoperations Report*[7] which states:

> "In order to avoid skewing the data with these repeated events, the NERC SPCS should clarify, in the next annual update of the misoperation template, that all misoperations due to the same equipment and cause within a 24 hour period be recorded as one misoperation."

The following is an example of a condition that is not a Misoperation.

> **Example R1b:** A high impedance Fault occurs within a transformer. The sudden pressure relaying detects and operates for the Fault, but the differential relaying did not operate due to the low Fault current levels. This is not a Misoperation because the Composite Protection System was not required to operate because the Fault was cleared by the sudden pressure relay.

Requirement R2

Requirement R2 ensures notification of those who have a role in identifying Misoperations, but were not accounted for within Requirement R1. In the case of multi-entity ownership, the entity that owns the BES interrupting device that operated is expected to use judgment to identify those Protection System operations that meet the definition of Misoperation under Requirement R1; however, if the entity that owns a BES interrupting device determines that its Protection System component(s) did not cause the BES interrupting device(s) operation or cannot determine whether its Protection System components caused the BES interrupting device(s) operation, it must notify the other Protection System owner(s) that share Misoperation identification responsibility when the criteria in Requirement R2 is met.

This Requirement does not preclude the Protection System owners from initially communicating and working together to determine whether a Misoperation occurred and, if so, the cause. The BES interrupting device owner is only required to officially notify the other owners when it: (1) shares the Composite Protection System ownership with other entity(ies), (2) determines that a Misoperation occurred or cannot rule out a Misoperation, and (3) determines its Protection System component(s) did not cause a Misoperation or is unsure. Officially notifying the other owners without performing a preliminary review may unnecessarily burden the other owners with compliance obligations under Requirement R3, redirect valuable resources, and add little benefit to reliability. The BES interrupting device owner should officially notify other owners when appropriate within the established time period.

---

[7] "Misoperations Report." Reporting Multiple Occurrences. NERC Protection System Misoperations Task Force. http://www.nerc.com/docs/pc/psmtf/PSMTF_Report.pdf. April 1, 2013. pg. 37 of 40.

The following is an example of a notification to another Protection System owner:

> **Example R2a:** Circuit breakers A and B at the Charlie station tripped from directional comparison blocking (DCB) relaying on 03/03/2014 at 15:43 UTC during an external Fault. As discussed last week, the fault records indicate that a problem with your equipment (failure to transmit) caused the operation.

> **Example R2b:** A generator unit tripped out immediately upon synchronizing to the grid due to a Misoperation of its overcurrent protection. The Transmission Owner owns the 230 kV generator breaker that operated. The Transmission Owner, as the owner of the BES interrupting device after determining that its Protection System components did not cause the Misoperation, notified the Generator Owner of the operation. The Generator Owner investigated and determined that its Protection System components caused the Misoperation. In this example, the Generator Owner's Protection System components did cause the Misoperation. As the owner of the Protection System components that caused the Misoperation, the Generator Owner is responsible for creating and implementing the CAP.

A Composite Protection System owned by different functional entities within the same registered entity does not necessarily satisfy the notification criteria in Part 2.1.1 of Requirement R2. For example, if the same personnel within a registered entity perform the Misoperation identification for both the Generator Owner and Transmission Owner functions, then the Misoperation identification would be completely covered in Requirement R1, and therefore notification would not be required. However, if the Misoperation identification is handled by different groups, then notification would be required because the Misoperation identification would not necessarily be covered in Requirement R1.

> **Example R2c:** Line A Composite Protection System (owned by entity 1) failed to operate for an internal Fault. As a result, the zone 3 portion of Line B's Composite Protection System (owned by entity 2) and zone 3 portion of Line C's Composite Protection System (owned by entity 3) operated to clear the Fault. Entity 2 and 3 notified entity 1 of the remote zone 3 operation.

For the case where a BES interrupting device operates to provide backup protection for a non-BES Element, the entity reviewing the operation is not required to notify the other owners of Protection Systems for non-BES Elements. No notification is required because this Reliability Standard is not applicable to Protection Systems for non-BES Elements.

Requirement R3

For Requirement R3 (i.e., notification received), the entity that also owns a portion of the Composite Protection System is expected to use judgment to identify whether the Protection System operation is a Misoperation. A combination of available information from resources such as counters, relay targets, SCADA, DME, and information from the other owner(s) would typically be used to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The intent of the standard is to classify an operation as a Misoperation if the available information leads to that conclusion. In many cases, it will not be necessary to leverage all available data to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The standard also allows an entity to classify an operation as a Misoperation if an entity is not sure. The entity may decide to identify the operation as a

Misoperation to satisfy Requirement R1 and continue its investigation for a cause of the Misoperation under Requirement R4. If the continued investigative actions are inconclusive, the entity may declare no cause found and end its investigation.

The entity that is notified by the BES interrupting device owner is allotted the later of 60 calendar days from receipt of notification or 120 calendar days from the BES interrupting device operation date to determine if its portion of the Composite Protection System caused the Protection System operation. It is expected that in most cases of a jointly owned Protection System, the entity making notification would have been in communication with the other owner(s) early in the process. This means that the shorter 60 calendar days only comes into play if the notification occurs in the second half of the 120 calendar days allotted to the BES interrupting device owner in Requirement R1.

The Protection System review may be organized in a variety of ways such as in a report, database, spreadsheet, or list. The documentation may be organized in a variety of ways such as by BES interrupting device, protected Element, or Composite Protection System. The BES interrupting device owner's notification received may be documented in a variety of ways such as an email or a facsimile.

Requirement R4

The entity in Requirement R4 (i.e., cause identification), whether it is the entity that owns the BES interrupting device or an entity that was notified, is expected to use due diligence in taking investigative action(s) to determine the cause(s) of an identified Misoperation for its portion of the Composite Protection System. The SMEs developing this standard recognize there will be cases where the cause(s) of a Misoperation will not be revealed during the allotted time periods in Requirements R1 or R3; therefore, Requirement R4 provides the entity a mechanism to continue its investigative work to determine the cause(s) of the Misoperation when the cause is not known.

A combination of available information from resources such as counters, relay targets, SCADA, DME, test results, and studies would typically be used to determine the cause of the Misoperation. At least one investigative action must be performed every two full calendar quarters until the investigation is completed.

The following is an example of investigative actions taken to determine the cause of an identified Misoperation:

> **Example R4a**: A Misoperation was identified on 03/18/2014. A line outage to test the Protection System was scheduled on 03/24/2014 for 12/15/2014 as the first investigative action (i.e., beyond the next two full calendar quarters) due to summer peak conditions. The protection engineer contacted the manufacturer on 04/10/2014 (i.e., within two full calendar quarters) to obtain any known issues. The engineer reviewed manufacturer's documents on 05/27/2014. The outage schedule was confirmed on 08/29/2014 and was taken on 12/15/2014. Testing was completed on 12/16/2014 (i.e., in the second two full quarters) revealing the microprocessor relay as the cause of the Misoperation. A CAP is being developed to replace the relay.

Periodic action minimizes compliance burdens and focuses the entity's effort on determining the cause(s) of the Misoperation while providing measurable evidence. The SMEs recognize that certain planned investigative actions may require months or years to schedule and complete; therefore, the entity is only required to perform at least one investigative action every two full calendar quarters. If an investigative action is performed in the first quarter of a calendar year, the next investigative action would need to be performed by the end of the third calendar quarter. If an investigative action is performed in the last quarter of a calendar year, the next investigative action would need to be performed by the end of the second calendar quarter of the following calendar year. Investigative actions may include a variety of actions, such as reviewing DME records, performing or reviewing studies, completing relay calibration or testing, requesting manufacturer review, requesting an outage, or confirming a schedule.

The entity's investigation is complete when it identifies the cause of the Misoperation or makes a declaration that no cause was determined. The declaration is intended to be used if the entity determines that investigative actions have been exhausted or have not provided direction for identifying the Misoperation cause. Historically, approximately 12% of Misoperations are unknown or unexplainable.[8]

Although the entity only has to document its specific investigative actions taken to determine the cause(s) of an identified Misoperation, the entity should consider the benefits of formally organizing (e.g., in a report or database) its actions and findings. Well documented investigative actions and findings may be helpful in future investigations of a similar event or circumstances. A thorough report or database may contain a detailed description of the event, information gathered, investigative actions, findings, possible causes, identified causes, and conclusions. Multiple owners of a Composite Protection System might consider working together to produce a common report for their mutual benefit.

The following are examples of a declaration where no cause was determined:

> **Example R4b**: A Misoperation was identified on 04/11/2014. All relays at station A and B functioned properly during testing on 08/26/2014 as the first investigative action. The carrier system functioned properly during testing on 08/27/2014. The carrier coupling equipment functioned properly during testing on 08/28/2014. A settings review completed on 09/03/2014 indicated the relay settings were proper. Since the equipment involved in the operation functioned properly during testing, the settings were reviewed and found to be correct, and the equipment at station A and station B is already monitored. The investigation is being closed because no cause was found.
>
> **Example R4c:** A Misoperation was identified on 03/22/2014. The protection scheme was replaced before the cause was identified. The power line carrier or PLC based protection was replaced with fiber-optic based protection with an in-service date of 04/16/2014. The new system will be monitored for recurrence of the Misoperation.

Requirement R5

Resolving the causes of Protection System Misoperations benefits BES reliability by preventing recurrence. The Corrective Action Plan (CAP) is an established tool for resolving operational problems. The NERC Glossary defines a Corrective Action Plan as, *"A list of actions and an*

[8] NERC System Protection and Control Subcommittee. Misoperations Report. April 1, 2013: http://www.nerc.com/docs/pc/psmtf/PSMTF_Report.pdf. Figure 15: NERC Wide Misoperations by Cause Code. pg. 22 of 40.

associated timetable for implementation to remedy a specific problem." Since a CAP addresses specific problems, the determination of what went wrong needs to be completed before developing a CAP. When the Misoperation cause is identified in Requirement R1, R3 or R4, Requirement R5 requires Protection System owner(s) to develop a CAP, or explain why corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability. The entity must develop the CAP or make a declaration why additional actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability and that no further corrective actions will be taken within 60 calendar days of first determining a cause.

The SMEs developing this standard recognize there may be multiple causes for a Misoperation. In these circumstances, the CAP would include a remedy for the identified causes. The CAP may be revised if additional causes are found; therefore, the entity has the option to create a single or multiple CAP(s) to correct multiple causes of a Misoperation. The 60 calendar day period for developing a CAP (or declaration) is established on the basis of industry experience which includes operational coordination timeframes, time to consider alternative solutions, coordination of resources, and development of a schedule.

The development of a CAP is intended to document the specific corrective actions needed to be taken to prevent Misoperation recurrence, the timetable for executing such actions, and an evaluation of the CAP's applicability to the entity's other Protection Systems including other locations. The evaluation of these other Protection Systems aims to reduce the risk and likelihood of similar Misoperations in other Protection Systems. The Protection System owner is responsible for determining the extent of its evaluation concerning other Protection Systems and locations. The evaluation may result in the owner including actions to address Protection Systems at other locations or the reasoning for not taking any action. The CAP and an evaluation of other Protection Systems including other locations must be developed to complete Requirement R5.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip due to a failed capacitor within the relay and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined capacitor replacement was not necessary.

For completion of each CAP in Examples R5a through R5d, please see Examples R6a through R6d.

> **Example R5a:** Actions: Remove the relay from service. Replace capacitor in the relay. Test the relay. Return to service or replace by 07/01/2014.
>
> Applicability to other Protection Systems: This type of impedance relay has not been experiencing problems and is systematically being replaced with microprocessor relays as Protection Systems are modernized. Therefore, it was assessed that a program for wholesale preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay does not need to be established for the system.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip due to a failed capacitor within the relay and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined the capacitors need preemptive correction action.

> **Example R5b:** Actions: Remove the relay from service. Replace capacitor in the relay. Test the relay. Return to service or replace by 07/01/2014.
>
> Applicability to other Protection Systems: This type of impedance relay is suspected to have previously tripped at other locations because of the same type of capacitor issue. Based on the evaluation, a program should be established by 12/01/2014 for wholesale preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip due to a failed capacitor within the relay and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined the capacitors need preemptive correction action.

> **Example R5c:** Actions: Remove the relay from service. Replace capacitor in the relay. Test the relay. Return to service or replace by 07/01/2014.
>
> Applicability to other Protection Systems: This type of impedance relay is suspected to have previously tripped at other locations because of the same type of capacitor issue. Based on the evaluation, the preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay should be pursued for the identified stations A through I by 04/30/2015.
>
> A plan is being developed to replace the impedance relay capacitors at stations A, B, and C by 09/01/2014. A second plan is being developed to replace the impedance relay capacitors at stations D, E, and F by 11/01/2014. The last plan will replace the impedance relay capacitors at stations G, H, and I by 02/01/2015.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was due to a version 2 firmware problem and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined the firmware needs preemptive correction action.

> **Example R5d:** Actions: Provide the manufacturer fault records. Install new firmware pending manufacturer results by 10/01/2014.
>
> Applicability to other Protection Systems: Based on the evaluation of other locations and a risk assessment, the newer firmware version 3 should be installed at all installations that are identified to be version 2. Twelve relays were identified across the system. Proposed completion date is 12/31/2014.

The following are examples of a declaration made where corrective actions are beyond the entity’s control or would not improve BES reliability and that no further corrective actions will be taken.

> **Example R5e:** The cause of the Misoperation was due to a non-registered entity communications provider problem.
>
> **Example R5f:** The cause of the Misoperation was due to a transmission transformer tapped industrial customer who initiated a direct transfer trip to a registered entity’s transmission breaker.

In situations where a Misoperation cause emanates from a non-registered outside entity, there may be limited influence an entity can exert on an outside entity and is considered outside of an entity's control.

The following are examples of declarations made why corrective actions would not improve BES reliability.

> **Example R5g:** The investigation showed that the Misoperation occurred due to transients associated with energizing transformer ABC at Station Y. Studies show that de-sensitizing the relay to the recorded transients may cause the relay to fail to operate as intended during power system oscillations.
>
> **Example R5h:** As a result of an operation that left a portion of the power system in an electrical island condition, circuit XYZ within that island tripped, resulting in loss of load within the island. Subsequent investigation showed an overfrequency condition persisted after the formation of that island and the XYZ line protective relay operated. Since this relay was operating outside of its designed frequency range and would not be subject to this condition when line XYZ is operated normally connected to the BES, no corrective action will be taken because BES reliability would not be improved.
>
> **Example R5i:** During a major ice storm, four of six circuits were lost at Station A. Subsequent to the loss of these circuits, a skywire (i.e., shield wire) broke near station A on line AB (between Station A and B) resulting in a phase-phase Fault. The protection scheme utilized for both protection groups is a permissive overreaching transfer trip (POTT). The Line AB protection at Station B tripped timed for this event (i.e., Slow Trip – During Fault) even though this line had been identified as requiring high speed clearing. A weak infeed condition was created at Station A due to the loss of 4 transmission circuits resulting in the absence of a permissive signal on Line AB from Station A during this Fault. No corrective action will be taken for this Misoperation as even under N-1 conditions, there is normally enough infeed at Station A to send a proper permissive signal to station B. Any changes to the protection scheme to account for this would not improve BES reliability.

A declaration why corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability should include the Misoperation cause and the justification for taking no corrective action. Furthermore, a declaration that no further corrective actions will be taken is expected to be used sparingly.

Requirement R6

To achieve the stated purpose of this standard, which is to identify and correct the causes of Misoperations of Protection Systems for BES Elements, the responsible entity is required to implement a CAP that addresses the specific problem (i.e., cause(s) of the Misoperation) through completion. Protection System owners are required in the implementation of a CAP to update it when actions or timetable change, until completed. Accomplishing this objective is intended to reduce the occurrence of future Misoperations of a similar nature, thereby improving reliability and minimizing risk to the BES.

The following is an example of a completed CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip (See also, Example R5a).

> **Example R6a:** Actions: The impedance relay was removed from service on 06/02/2014 because it was applying a standing trip. A failed capacitor was found within the impedance relay and replaced. The impedance relay functioned properly during testing after the capacitor was replaced. The impedance relay was returned to service on 06/05/2014.
>
> CAP completed on 06/25/2014.

The following is an example of a completed CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip that resulted in the correction and the establishment of a program for further replacements (See also, Example R5b).

> **Example R6b:** Actions: The impedance relay was removed from service on 06/02/2014 because it was applying a standing trip. A failed capacitor was found within the impedance relay and replaced. The impedance relay functioned properly during testing after the capacitor was replaced. The impedance relay was returned to service on 06/05/2014.
>
> A program for wholesale preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay was established on 10/28/2014.
>
> CAP completed on 10/28/2014.

The following is an example of a completed CAP of corrective actions with a timetable that required updating for a failed relay and preemptive actions for similar installations (See also, Example R5c).

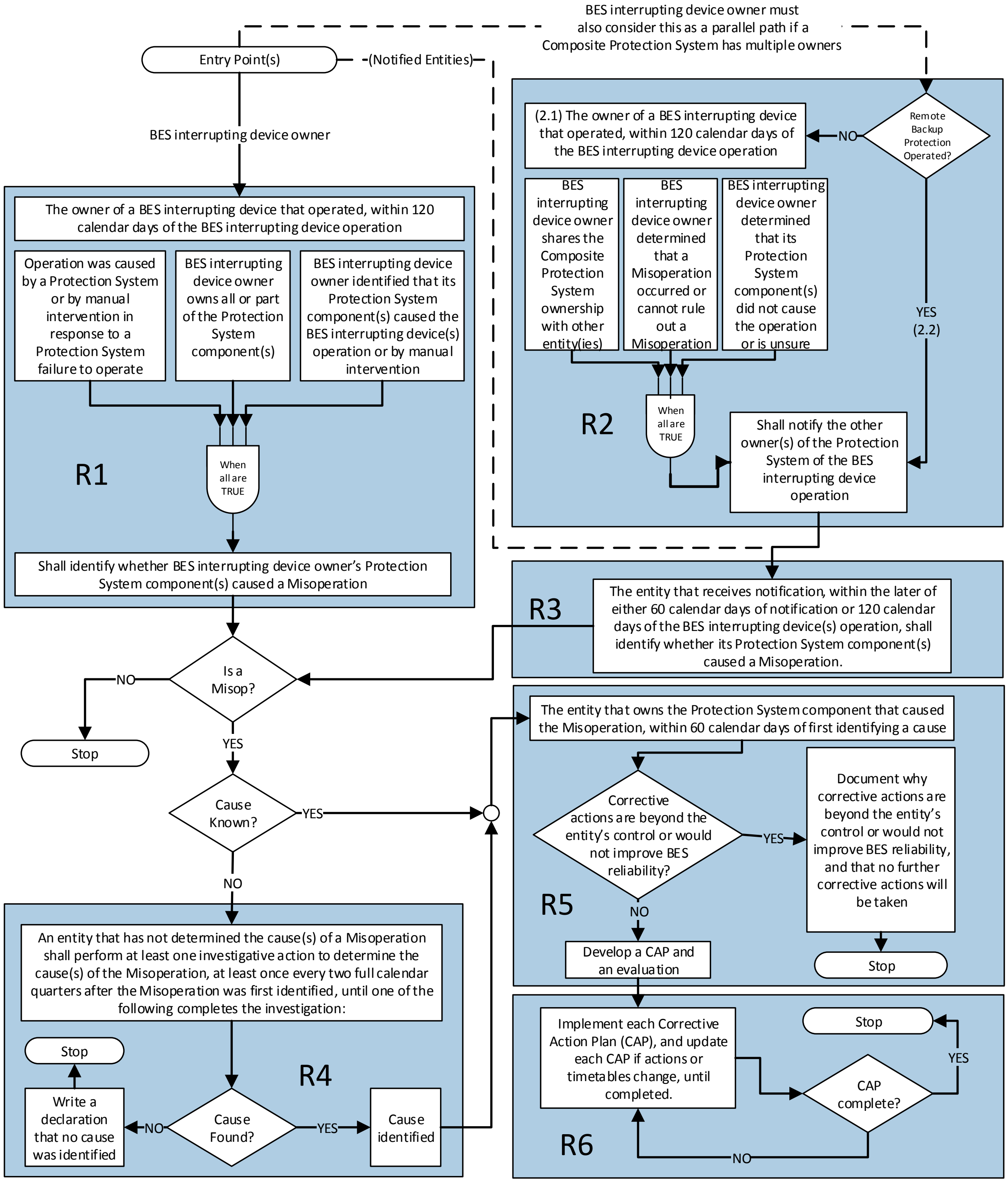
> **Example R6c:** Actions: The impedance relay was removed from service on 06/02/2014 because it was applying a standing trip. A failed capacitor was found within the impedance relay and replaced. The impedance relay functioned properly during testing after the capacitor was replaced. The impedance relay was returned to service on 06/05/2014.
>
> The impedance relay capacitor replacement was completed at stations A, B, and C on 08/16/2014. The impedance relay capacitor replacement was completed at stations D, E, and F on 10/24/2014. The impedance relay capacitor replacement for stations G, H, and I were postponed due to resource rescheduling from a scheduled 02/01/15 completion to 04/01/2015 completion. Capacitor replacement was completed on 03/09/2015 at stations G, H, and I. All stations identified in the evaluation have been completed.
>
> CAP completed on 03/09/2015.

The following is an example of a completed CAP for corrective actions with updated actions for a firmware problem and preemptive actions for similar installations. (See also, Example R5d).

> **Example R6d:** Actions: fault records were provided to the manufacturer on 06/04/2014. The manufacturer responded that the Misoperation was caused by a bug in version 2 firmware, and recommended installing version 3 firmware. Version 3 firmware was installed on 08/12/2014.
>
> Nine of the twelve relays were updated to version 3 firmware on 09/23/2014. The manufacturer provided a subsequent update which was determined to be beneficial for the remaining relays. The remaining three of twelve relays identified as having the version 2 firmware were updated to version 3.01 firmware on 11/10/2014.
>
> CAP completed on 11/10/2014.

The CAP is complete when all of the actions identified within the CAP have been completed.

Process Flow Chart: Below is a graphical representation demonstrating the relationships between Requirements:



Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for Introduction:
The only revisions made to this version of PRC-004 are revisions to section 4.2 Facilities to clarify applicability of the Requirements of the standard to generator Facilities. These applicability revisions are intended to clarify and provide for consistent application of the Requirements to BES generator Facilities included in the BES through Inclusion I4 – Dispersed Power Producing Resources.

Rationale for Applicability:
Protection Systems that protect BES Elements are integral to the operation and reliability of the BES. Some functions of relays are not used as protection but as control functions or for automation; therefore, any operation of the control function portion or the automation portion of relays is excluded from this standard. See the Application Guidelines for detailed examples of non-protective functions. Special Protection Systems (SPS) and Remedial Action Schemes (RAS) are excluded in this standard because they are planned to be handled in the second phase of Project 2010-05.1 .

Misoperations occurring on the Protection Systems of individual generation resources identified under Inclusion I4 of the BES definition do not have a material impact on BES reliability when considered individually; however, the aggregate capability of these resources may impact BES reliability if a number of Protection Systems on the individual power producing resources incorrectly operated or failed to operate as designed during a system event. To recognize the potential for the Protection Systems of individual power producing resources to affect the reliability of the BES, 4.2.1.5 of the Facilities section reflects the threshold consistent with the revised BES definition. See FERC Order Approving Revised Definition, P 20, Docket No. RD14-2-000. The intent of 4.2.1.5 of the Facilities section is to exclude from the standard requirements these Protection Systems for “common- mode failure” type scenarios affecting less than or equal to 75 MVA aggregated nameplate generating capability at these dispersed generating facilities.

Rationale for R1:

This Requirement ensures that entities review those Protection System operations meeting the circumstances in all three Parts (1.1, 1.2, and 1.3) and identify any that are Misoperations. The BES interrupting device owner is assigned the responsibility to initiate the review because the owner is in the best position to be aware of the operation. Manual intervention is included as a condition that initiates a review. Occasionally, Protection System failures do not yield other Protection System operations and manual intervention is required to isolate the problematic equipment. The 120 calendar day period accounts for the sporadic volumes of Protection

System operations, and provides the opportunity to identify any Misoperations which were initially missed.

Rationale for R2:

Part 2.1 ensures that the BES interrupting device owner notifies the other owners of the Composite Protection System. The phrase “owner(s) that share Misoperation identification responsibility” allows entities to notify the specific other owners that will actually review the operation to determine if a Misoperation occurred. Part 2.2 ensures that the Protection System owner(s) for which backup protection was provided receives notification, within the same 120 calendar day period as R1. This ensures other entities are notified to review their Protection System components. The expectation is that entities will communicate accordingly and when it is clear that Part 2.1, 2.2, or both are met, the entity would make the notification. It is not intended for entities to automatically and unnecessarily notify other entities before adequate detail is known.

Rationale for R3:

When an entity receives notification of a Protection System operation by the BES interrupting device owner, the other Protection System owner is allotted at least 60 calendar days to identify whether it was a Misoperation. A shorter time period is allotted on the basis that the BES interrupting device owner has already performed preliminary work, collaborated with the other owners, and that other owners generally have fewer associated Protection System components.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-004-4 — Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-004-4	All	07/01/2016	

Reliability Standard PRC-005-2(i)

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Protection System Maintenance**

2. **Number:** PRC-005-2(i)

3. **Purpose:** To document and implement programs for the maintenance of all Protection Systems affecting the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES) so that these Protection Systems are kept in working order.

4. **Applicability:**

4.1. Functional Entities:

4.1.1 Transmission Owner

4.1.2 Generator Owner

4.1.3 Distribution Provider

4.2. Facilities:

4.2.1 Protection Systems that are installed for the purpose of detecting Faults on BES Elements (lines, buses, transformers, etc.)

4.2.2 Protection Systems used for underfrequency load-shedding systems installed per ERO underfrequency load-shedding requirements.

4.2.3 Protection Systems used for undervoltage load-shedding systems installed to prevent system voltage collapse or voltage instability for BES reliability.

4.2.4 Protection Systems installed as a Special Protection System (SPS) for BES reliability.

4.2.5 Protection Systems for the following BES generator Facilities for generators not identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:

4.2.5.1 Protection Systems that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or auxiliary tripping relays.

4.2.5.2 Protection Systems for generator step-up transformers for generators that are part of the BES.

4.2.5.3 Protection Systems for station service or excitation transformers connected to the generator bus of generators which are part of the BES, that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or tripping auxiliary relays.

4.2.6 Protection Systems for the following BES generator Facilities for dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:

4.2.6.1 Protection Systems for Facilities used in aggregating dispersed BES generation from the point where those resources aggregate to greater than 75 MVA to a common point of connection at 100 kV or above.

5. **Effective Date:** See Implementation Plan.

B. Requirements

R1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall establish a Protection System Maintenance Program (PSMP) for its Protection Systems identified in Section 4.2. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

The PSMP shall:

1.1. Identify which maintenance method (time-based, performance-based per PRC-005 Attachment A, or a combination) is used to address each Protection System Component Type. All batteries associated with the station dc supply Component Type of a Protection System shall be included in a time-based program as described in Table 1-4 and Table 3.

1.2. Include the applicable monitored Component attributes applied to each Protection System Component Type consistent with the maintenance intervals specified in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, and Table 3 where monitoring is used to extend the maintenance intervals beyond those specified for unmonitored Protection System Components.

R2. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP shall follow the procedure established in PRC-005 Attachment A to establish and maintain its performance-based intervals. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

R3. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes time-based maintenance program(s) shall maintain its Protection System Components that are included within the time-based maintenance program in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, and Table 3. *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

R4. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes performance-based maintenance program(s) in accordance with Requirement R2 shall implement and follow its PSMP for its Protection System Components that are included within the performance-based program(s). *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

R5. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall demonstrate efforts to correct identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

C. Measures

M1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner and Distribution Provider shall have a documented Protection System Maintenance Program in accordance with Requirement R1.

For each Protection System Component Type, the documentation shall include the type of maintenance method applied (time-based, performance-based, or a combination of these maintenance methods), and shall include all batteries associated with the station dc supply Component Types in a time-based program as described in Table 1-4 and Table 3. (Part 1.1)

For Component Types that use monitoring to extend the maintenance intervals, the responsible entity(s) shall have evidence for each protection Component Type (such as manufacturer's specifications or engineering drawings) of the appropriate monitored Component attributes as specified in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, and Table 3. (Part 1.2)

M2. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that uses performance-based maintenance intervals shall have evidence that its current performance-based maintenance program(s) is in accordance with Requirement R2, which may include but is not limited to Component lists, dated maintenance records, and dated analysis records and results.

M3. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes time-based maintenance program(s) shall have evidence that it has maintained its Protection System Components included within its time-based program in accordance with Requirement R3. The evidence may include but is not limited to dated maintenance records, dated maintenance summaries, dated check-off lists, dated inspection records, or dated work orders.

M4. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes performance-based maintenance intervals in accordance with Requirement R2 shall have evidence that it has implemented the Protection System Maintenance Program for the Protection System Components included in its performance-based program in accordance with Requirement R4. The evidence may include but is not limited to dated maintenance records, dated maintenance summaries, dated check-off lists, dated inspection records, or dated work orders.

M5. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have evidence that it has undertaken efforts to correct identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues in accordance with Requirement R5. The evidence may include but is not limited to work orders, replacement Component orders, invoices, project schedules with completed milestones, return material authorizations (RMAs) or purchase orders.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards

1.2. Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Processes:

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.3. Evidence Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each keep data or evidence to show compliance as identified below unless directed by its

Compliance Enforcement Authority to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation.

For Requirement R1, the Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each keep its current dated Protection System Maintenance Program, as well as any superseded versions since the preceding compliance audit, including the documentation that specifies the type of maintenance program applied for each Protection System Component Type.

For Requirement R2, Requirement R3, Requirement R4, and Requirement R5, the Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each keep documentation of the two most recent performances of each distinct maintenance activity for the Protection System Component, or all performances of each distinct maintenance activity for the Protection System Component since the previous scheduled audit date, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None.

Violation Severity Levels

Requirement Number	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	The responsible entity's PSMP failed to specify whether one Component Type is being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both. (Part 1.1)	The responsible entity's PSMP failed to specify whether two Component Types are being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both. (Part 1.1)	The responsible entity's PSMP failed to include the applicable monitoring attributes applied to each Protection System Component Type consistent with the maintenance intervals specified in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, and Table 3 where monitoring is used to extend the maintenance intervals beyond those specified for unmonitored Protection System Components. (Part 1.2).	The responsible entity failed to establish a PSMP. OR The responsible entity failed to specify whether three or more Component Types are being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both. (Part 1.1). OR The responsible entity's PSMP failed to include applicable station batteries in a time-based program. (Part 1.1)
R2	The responsible entity uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP but failed to reduce Countable Events to no more than 4% within three years.	NA	The responsible entity uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP but failed to reduce Countable Events to no more than 4% within four years.	The responsible entity uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP but: 1) Failed to establish the technical justification described within Requirement R2 for the initial use of the performance-based PSMP OR 2) Failed to reduce Countable Events to no more than 4% within five years OR 3) Maintained a Segment with less than 60 Components OR 4) Failed to:

Requirement Number	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
				• Annually update the list of Components, OR • Annually perform maintenance on the greater of 5% of the segment population or 3 Components, OR • Annually analyze the program activities and results for each Segment.
R3	For Protection System Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain 5% or less of the total Components included within a specific Protection System Component Type, in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, and Table 3.	For Protection System Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 5% but 10% or less of the total Components included within a specific Protection System Component Type, in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, and Table 3.	For Protection System Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 10% but 15% or less of the total Components included within a specific Protection System Component Type, in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, and Table 3.	For Protection System Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 15% of the total Components included within a specific Protection System Component Type, in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, and Table 3.
R4	For Protection System Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain 5% or less of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific Protection System Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.	For Protection System Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 5% but 10% or less of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific Protection System Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.	For Protection System Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 10% but 15% or less of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific Protection System Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.	For Protection System Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 15% of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific Protection System Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.

Requirement Number	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R5	The responsible entity failed to undertake efforts to correct 5 or fewer identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.	The responsible entity failed to undertake efforts to correct greater than 5, but less than or equal to 10 identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.	The responsible entity failed to undertake efforts to correct greater than 10, but less than or equal to 15 identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.	The responsible entity failed to undertake efforts to correct greater than 15 identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.

E. Regional Variances

None

F. Supplemental Reference Document

The following documents present a detailed discussion about determination of maintenance intervals and other useful information regarding establishment of a maintenance program.

1. PRC-005-2 Protection System Maintenance Supplementary Reference and FAQ — July 2012.

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	February 8, 2005	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	New
1	February 7, 2006	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	1. Changed incorrect use of certain hyphens (-) to “en dash” (–) and “em dash (—).” 2. Added “periods” to items where appropriate. Changed “Timeframe” to “Time Frame” in item D, 1.2
1a	February 17, 2011	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Added Appendix 1 - Interpretation regarding applicability of standard to protection of radially connected transformers developed in Project 2009-17
1b	November 5, 2009	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Interpretation of R1, R1.1, and R1.2 developed by Project 2009-10
1b	February 3, 2012	FERC order approving revised definition of “Protection System”	Per footnote 8 of FERC’s order, the definition of “Protection System” supersedes interpretation “b” of PRC-005-1b upon the effective date of the modified definition (i.e., April 1, 2013) *See N. Amer. Elec. Reliability Corp.*, 138 FERC ¶ 61,095 (February 3, 2012)
1.1b	May 9, 2012	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Errata change developed by Project 2010-07, clarified inclusion of generator interconnection Facility in Generator Owner’s responsibility

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
2	November 7, 2012	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Project 2007-17 - Complete revision, absorbing maintenance requirements from PRC-005-1.1b, PRC-008-0, PRC-011-0, PRC-017-0
2	October 17, 2013	Approved by NERC Standards Committee	Errata Change: The Standards Committee approved an errata change to the implementation plan for PRC-005-2 to add the phrase “or as otherwise made effective pursuant to the laws applicable to such ERO governmental authorities;” to the second sentence under the “Retirement of Existing Standards” section. (no change to standard version number)
2	March 7, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Modified R1 VSL in response to FERC directive (no change to standard version number)
2(i)	November 13, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Applicability section revised by Project 2014-01 to clarify application of Requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
2(i)	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving PRC-005-2(i)	

Table 1-1 Component Type - Protective Relay Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval[1]**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any unmonitored protective relay not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	6 calendar years	For all unmonitored relays: • Verify that settings are as specified For non-microprocessor relays: • Test and, if necessary calibrate For microprocessor relays: • Verify operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Verify acceptable measurement of power system input values.
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with the following: • Internal self-diagnosis and alarming (see Table 2). • Voltage and/or current waveform sampling three or more times per power cycle, and conversion of samples to numeric values for measurement calculations by microprocessor electronics. • Alarming for power supply failure (see Table 2).	12 calendar years	Verify: • Settings are as specified. • Operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Acceptable measurement of power system input values.

[1] For the tables in this standard, a calendar year starts on the first day of a new year (January 1) after a maintenance activity has been completed.
For the tables in this standard, a calendar month starts on the first day of the first month after a maintenance activity has been completed.

Table 1-1 Component Type - Protective Relay Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval[1]**	**Maintenance Activities**
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with preceding row attributes and the following: • Ac measurements are continuously verified by comparison to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for excessive error (See Table 2). • Some or all binary or status inputs and control outputs are monitored by a process that continuously demonstrates ability to perform as designed, with alarming for failure (See Table 2). • Alarming for change of settings (See Table 2).	12 calendar years	Verify only the unmonitored relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.

Table 1-2 Component Type - Communications Systems Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any unmonitored communications system necessary for correct operation of protective functions, and not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	4 calendar months	Verify that the communications system is functional.
	6 calendar years	Verify that the communications system meets performance criteria pertinent to the communications technology applied (e.g. signal level, reflected power, or data error rate). Verify operation of communications system inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.
Any communications system with continuous monitoring or periodic automated testing for the presence of the channel function, and alarming for loss of function (See Table 2).	12 calendar years	Verify that the communications system meets performance criteria pertinent to the communications technology applied (e.g. signal level, reflected power, or data error rate). Verify operation of communications system inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.
Any communications system with all of the following: • Continuous monitoring or periodic automated testing for the performance of the channel using criteria pertinent to the communications technology applied (e.g. signal level, reflected power, or data error rate, and alarming for excessive performance degradation). (See Table 2) • Some or all binary or status inputs and control outputs are monitored by a process that continuously demonstrates ability to perform as designed, with alarming for failure (See Table 2).	12 calendar years	Verify only the unmonitored communications system inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System

Table 1-3 Component Type - Voltage and Current Sensing Devices Providing Inputs to Protective Relays Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any voltage and current sensing devices not having monitoring attributes of the category below.	12 calendar years	Verify that current and voltage signal values are provided to the protective relays.
Voltage and Current Sensing devices connected to microprocessor relays with AC measurements are continuously verified by comparison of sensing input value, as measured by the microprocessor relay, to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for unacceptable error or failure (see Table 2).	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 1-4(a) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS systems, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Protection System Station dc supply using **Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) batteries** not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: • Electrolyte level • For unintentional grounds
	18 Calendar Months	Verify: • Float voltage of battery charger • Battery continuity • Battery terminal connection resistance • Battery intercell or unit-to-unit connection resistance Inspect: • Cell condition of all individual battery cells where cells are visible – or measure battery cell/unit internal ohmic values where the cells are not visible • Physical condition of battery rack
	18 Calendar Months -or- 6 Calendar Years	Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by evaluating cell/unit measurements indicative of battery performance (e.g. internal ohmic values or float current) against the station battery baseline. -or- Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by conducting a performance or modified performance capacity test of the entire battery bank.

Table 1-4(b) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Valve-Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS systems, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Protection System Station dc supply **with Valve Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) batteries** not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: • For unintentional grounds
	6 Calendar Months	Inspect: • Condition of all individual units by measuring battery cell/unit internal ohmic values.
	18 Calendar Months	Verify: • Float voltage of battery charger • Battery continuity • Battery terminal connection resistance • Battery intercell or unit-to-unit connection resistance Inspect: • Physical condition of battery rack
	6 Calendar Months -or- 3 Calendar Years	Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by evaluating cell/unit measurements indicative of battery performance (e.g. internal ohmic values or float current) against the station battery baseline. -or- Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by conducting a performance or modified performance capacity test of the entire battery bank.

Table 1-4(c)		
Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Nickel-Cadmium (NiCad) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS system, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Protection System Station dc supply **Nickel-Cadmium (NiCad) batteries** not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: • Electrolyte level • For unintentional grounds
	18 Calendar Months	Verify: • Float voltage of battery charger • Battery continuity • Battery terminal connection resistance • Battery intercell or unit-to-unit connection resistance Inspect: • Cell condition of all individual battery cells. • Physical condition of battery rack
	6 Calendar Years	Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by conducting a performance or modified performance capacity test of the entire battery bank.

Table 1-4(d) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Non Battery Based Energy Storage Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS system, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any Protection System station dc supply not using a battery and not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: • For unintentional grounds
	18 Calendar Months	Inspect: Condition of non-battery based dc supply
	6 Calendar Years	Verify that the dc supply can perform as manufactured when ac power is not present.

Table 1-4(e) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply for non-BES Interrupting Devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS, and non-distributed UVLS systems		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any Protection System dc supply used for tripping only non-BES interrupting devices as part of a SPS, non-distributed UFLS, or non-distributed UVLS system and not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	When control circuits are verified (See Table 1-5)	Verify Station dc supply voltage.

Table 1-4(f) Exclusions for Protection System Station dc Supply Monitoring Devices and Systems		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any station dc supply with high and low voltage monitoring and alarming of the battery charger voltage to detect charger overvoltage and charger failure (See Table 2).	No periodic maintenance specified	No periodic verification of station dc supply voltage is required.
Any battery based station dc supply with electrolyte level monitoring and alarming in every cell (See Table 2).		No periodic inspection of the electrolyte level for each cell is required.
Any station dc supply with unintentional dc ground monitoring and alarming (See Table 2).		No periodic inspection of unintentional dc grounds is required.
Any station dc supply with charger float voltage monitoring and alarming to ensure correct float voltage is being applied on the station dc supply (See Table 2).		No periodic verification of float voltage of battery charger is required.
Any battery based station dc supply with monitoring and alarming of battery string continuity (See Table 2).		No periodic verification of the battery continuity is required.
Any battery based station dc supply with monitoring and alarming of the intercell and/or terminal connection detail resistance of the entire battery (See Table 2).		No periodic verification of the intercell and terminal connection resistance is required.
Any Valve Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) or Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) station battery with internal ohmic value or float current monitoring and alarming, and evaluating present values relative to baseline internal ohmic values for every cell/unit (See Table 2).		No periodic evaluation relative to baseline of battery cell/unit measurements indicative of battery performance is required to verify the station battery can perform as manufactured.
Any Valve Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) or Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) station battery with monitoring and alarming of each cell/unit internal ohmic value (See Table 2).		No periodic inspection of the condition of all individual units by measuring battery cell/unit internal ohmic values of a station VRLA or Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) battery is required.

Table 1-5 Component Type - Control Circuitry Associated With Protective Functions Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) **Note:** Table requirements apply to all Control Circuitry Components of Protection Systems, and SPSs except as noted.		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Trip coils or actuators of circuit breakers, interrupting devices, or mitigating devices (regardless of any monitoring of the control circuitry).	6 calendar years	Verify that each trip coil is able to operate the circuit breaker, interrupting device, or mitigating device.
Electromechanical lockout devices which are directly in a trip path from the protective relay to the interrupting device trip coil (regardless of any monitoring of the control circuitry).	6 calendar years	Verify electrical operation of electromechanical lockout devices.
Unmonitored control circuitry associated with SPS.	12 calendar years	Verify all paths of the control circuits essential for proper operation of the SPS.
Unmonitored control circuitry associated with protective functions inclusive of all auxiliary relays.	12 calendar years	Verify all paths of the trip circuits inclusive of all auxiliary relays through the trip coil(s) of the circuit breakers or other interrupting devices.
Control circuitry associated with protective functions and/or SPS whose integrity is monitored and alarmed (See Table 2).	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 2 – Alarming Paths and Monitoring In Tables 1-1 through 1-5 and Table 3, alarm attributes used to justify extended maximum maintenance intervals and/or reduced maintenance activities are subject to the following maintenance requirements		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any alarm path through which alarms in Tables 1-1 through 1-5 and Table 3 are conveyed from the alarm origin to the location where corrective action can be initiated, and not having all the attributes of the "Alarm Path with monitoring" category below. Alarms are reported within 24 hours of detection to a location where corrective action can be initiated.	12 Calendar Years	Verify that the alarm path conveys alarm signals to a location where corrective action can be initiated.
Alarm Path with monitoring: The location where corrective action is taken receives an alarm within 24 hours for failure of any portion of the alarming path from the alarm origin to the location where corrective action can be initiated.	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 3 Maintenance Activities and Intervals for distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS Systems		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any unmonitored protective relay not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	6 calendar years	Verify that settings are as specified For non-microprocessor relays: • Test and, if necessary calibrate For microprocessor relays: • Verify operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Verify acceptable measurement of power system input values.
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with the following: • Internal self diagnosis and alarming (See Table 2). • Voltage and/or current waveform sampling three or more times per power cycle, and conversion of samples to numeric values for measurement calculations by microprocessor electronics. Alarming for power supply failure (See Table 2).	12 calendar years	Verify: • Settings are as specified. • Operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Acceptable measurement of power system input values
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with preceding row attributes and the following: • Ac measurements are continuously verified by comparison to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for excessive error (See Table 2). • Some or all binary or status inputs and control outputs are monitored by a process that continuously demonstrates ability to perform as designed, with alarming for failure (See Table 2). Alarming for change of settings (See Table 2).	12 calendar years	Verify only the unmonitored relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.

Table 3 Maintenance Activities and Intervals for distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS Systems		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Voltage and/or current sensing devices associated with UFLS or UVLS systems.	12 calendar years	Verify that current and/or voltage signal values are provided to the protective relays.
Protection System dc supply for tripping non-BES interrupting devices used only for a UFLS or UVLS system.	12 calendar years	Verify Protection System dc supply voltage.
Control circuitry between the UFLS or UVLS relays and electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices (excludes non-BES interrupting device trip coils).	12 calendar years	Verify the path from the relay to the lockout and/or tripping auxiliary relay (including essential supervisory logic).
Electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices associated only with UFLS or UVLS systems (excludes non-BES interrupting device trip coils).	12 calendar years	Verify electrical operation of electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices.
Control circuitry between the electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices and the non-BES interrupting devices in UFLS or UVLS systems, or between UFLS or UVLS relays (with no interposing electromechanical lockout or auxiliary device) and the non-BES interrupting devices (excludes non-BES interrupting device trip coils).	No periodic maintenance specified	None.
Trip coils of non-BES interrupting devices in UFLS or UVLS systems.	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

PRC-005 — Attachment A

Criteria for a Performance-Based Protection System Maintenance Program

Purpose: To establish a technical basis for initial and continued use of a performance-based Protection System Maintenance Program (PSMP).

To establish the technical justification for the initial use of a performance-based PSMP:

1. Develop a list with a description of Components included in each designated Segment of the Protection System Component population, with a minimum **Segment** population of 60 Components.
2. Maintain the Components in each Segment according to the time-based maximum allowable intervals established in Tables 1-1 through 1-5 and Table 3 until results of maintenance activities for the Segment are available for a minimum of 30 individual Components of the Segment.
3. Document the maintenance program activities and results for each Segment, including maintenance dates and Countable Events for each included Component.
4. Analyze the maintenance program activities and results for each Segment to determine the overall performance of the Segment and develop maintenance intervals.
5. Determine the maximum allowable maintenance interval for each Segment such that the Segment experiences **Countable Events** on no more than 4% of the Components within the Segment, for the greater of either the last 30 Components maintained or all Components maintained in the previous year.

To maintain the technical justification for the ongoing use of a performance-based PSMP:

1. At least annually, update the list of Protection System Components and Segments and/or description if any changes occur within the Segment.
2. Perform maintenance on the greater of 5% of the Components (addressed in the performance based PSMP) in each Segment or 3 individual Components within the Segment in each year.
3. For the prior year, analyze the maintenance program activities and results for each Segment to determine the overall performance of the Segment.
4. Using the prior year's data, determine the maximum allowable maintenance interval for each Segment such that the Segment experiences Countable Events on no more than 4% of the Components within the Segment, for the greater of either the last 30 Components maintained or all Components maintained in the previous year.
5. If the Components in a Protection System Segment maintained through a performance-based PSMP experience 4% or more Countable Events, develop, document, and implement an action plan to reduce the Countable Events to less than 4% of the Segment population within 3 years.

Application Guidelines

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for 4.2.5

In order to differentiate between typical BES generator Facilities and BES generators at dispersed power producing facilities, section 4.2.5 was separated into two sections (4.2.5 and 4.2.6). The applicability to non-dispersed power producing Facilities has been maintained and can be found in 4.2.5. The applicability to dispersed power producing Facilities has been modified and relocated from 4.2.5 to 4.2.6.

Rationale for 4.2.6:

Applicability of the Requirements of PRC-005-2 to dispersed power producing resources is separated out in section 4.2.6. The intent is that for such resources, the Requirements would apply only to Protection Systems on equipment used in aggregating the BES dispersed power producing resources from the point where those resources aggregate to greater than 75 MVA to a common point of connection at 100 kV or higher including the Protection Systems for those transformers used in aggregating generation.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-005-2(i) — Protection System Maintenance

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-005-2(i)	All	05/29/2015	03/31/2016

Reliability Standard PRC-005-3(i)

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Maintenance**
2. **Number:** PRC-005-3(i)
3. **Purpose:** To document and implement programs for the maintenance of all Protection Systems and Automatic Reclosing affecting the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES) so that they are kept in working order.
4. **Applicability:**

4.1. Functional Entities:

4.1.1 Transmission Owner

4.1.2 Generator Owner

4.1.3 Distribution Provider

4.2. Facilities:

4.2.1 Protection Systems that are installed for the purpose of detecting Faults on BES Elements (lines, buses, transformers, etc.)

4.2.2 Protection Systems used for underfrequency load-shedding systems installed per ERO underfrequency load-shedding requirements.

4.2.3 Protection Systems used for undervoltage load-shedding systems installed to prevent system voltage collapse or voltage instability for BES reliability.

4.2.4 Protection Systems installed as a Special Protection System (SPS) for BES reliability.

4.2.5 Protection Systems for the following BES generator Facilities for generators not identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:

4.2.5.1 Protection Systems that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or auxiliary tripping relays.

4.2.5.2 Protection Systems for generator step-up transformers for generators that are part of the BES.

4.2.5.3 Protection Systems for station service or excitation transformers connected to the generator bus of generators which are part of the BES, that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or tripping auxiliary relays.

4.2.6 Protection Systems for the following BES generator Facilities for dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:

4.2.6.1 Protection Systems for Facilities used in aggregating dispersed BES generation from the point where those resources aggregate to greater than 75 MVA to a common point of connection at 100 kV or above.

4.2.7 Automatic Reclosing[1], including:

4.2.7.1 Automatic Reclosing applied on the terminals of Elements connected to the BES bus located at generating plant substations where the total installed gross generating plant capacity is greater than the gross capacity of the largest BES generating unit within the Balancing Authority Area.

4.2.7.2 Automatic Reclosing applied on the terminals of all BES Elements at substations one bus away from generating plants specified in Section 4.2.7.1 when the substation is less than 10 circuit-miles from the generating plant substation.

4.2.7.3 Automatic Reclosing applied as an integral part of an SPS specified in Section 4.2.4.

5. **Effective Date:** See Implementation Plan.

6. **Definitions Used in this Standard:** The following terms are defined for use only within PRC-005-3, and should remain with the standard upon approval rather than being moved to the Glossary of Terms.

Automatic Reclosing – Includes the following Components:

- Reclosing relay
- Control circuitry associated with the reclosing relay.

Unresolved Maintenance Issue – A deficiency identified during a maintenance activity that causes the Component to not meet the intended performance, cannot be corrected during the maintenance interval, and requires follow-up corrective action.

Segment – Components of a consistent design standard, or a particular model or type from a single manufacturer that typically share other common elements. Consistent performance is expected across the entire population of a Segment. A Segment must contain at least sixty (60) individual Components.

Component Type – Either any one of the five specific elements of the Protection System definition or any one of the two specific elements of the Automatic Reclosing definition.

Component – A Component is any individual discrete piece of equipment included in a Protection System or in Automatic Reclosing, including but not limited to a protective relay, reclosing relay, or current sensing device. The designation of what constitutes a control circuit Component is dependent upon how an entity performs and tracks the testing of the control circuitry. Some entities test their control circuits on a breaker basis whereas others test their circuitry on a local zone of protection basis. Thus, entities are allowed the latitude to designate their own definitions of control circuit Components. Another example of where the entity has some discretion on determining what constitutes a single Component is the voltage and current sensing devices, where the entity may choose either to designate a full three-phase set of such devices or a single device as a single Component.

Countable Event – A failure of a Component requiring repair or replacement, any condition discovered during the maintenance activities in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2 which requires corrective action or a Protection System Misoperation attributed

---

[1] Automatic Reclosing addressed in Section 4.2.7.1 and 4.2.7.2 may be excluded if the equipment owner can demonstrate that a close-in three-phase fault present for twice the normal clearing time (capturing a minimum trip-close-trip time delay) does not result in a total loss of gross generation in the Interconnection exceeding the gross capacity of the largest BES generating unit within the Balancing Authority Area where the Automatic Reclosing is applied.

to hardware failure or calibration failure. Misoperations due to product design errors, software errors, relay settings different from specified settings, Protection System Component or Automatic Reclosing configuration or application errors are not included in Countable Events.

B. Requirements

R1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall establish a Protection System Maintenance Program (PSMP) for its Protection Systems and Automatic Reclosing identified in Facilities Section 4.2. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

The PSMP shall:

1.1. Identify which maintenance method (time-based, performance-based per PRC-005 Attachment A, or a combination) is used to address each Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Component Type. All batteries associated with the station dc supply Component Type of a Protection System shall be included in a time-based program as described in Table 1-4 and Table 3.

1.2. Include the applicable monitored Component attributes applied to each Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Component Type consistent with the maintenance intervals specified in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, and Table 4-1 through 4-2 where monitoring is used to extend the maintenance intervals beyond those specified for unmonitored Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Components.

R2. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP shall follow the procedure established in PRC-005 Attachment A to establish and maintain its performance-based intervals. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

R3. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes time-based maintenance program(s) shall maintain its Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Components that are included within the time-based maintenance program in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, and Table 4-1 through 4-2. *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

R4. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes performance-based maintenance program(s) in accordance with Requirement R2 shall implement and follow its PSMP for its Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Components that are included within the performance-based program(s). *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

R5. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall demonstrate efforts to correct identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

C. Measures

M1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner and Distribution Provider shall have a documented Protection System Maintenance Program in accordance with Requirement R1.

For each Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Component Type, the documentation shall include the type of maintenance method applied (time-based, performance-based, or a combination of these maintenance methods), and shall include all batteries associated with the station dc supply Component Types in a time-based program as described in Table 1-4 and Table 3. (Part 1.1)

For Component Types that use monitoring to extend the maintenance intervals, the responsible entity(s) shall have evidence for each Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Component Type (such as manufacturer's specifications or engineering drawings) of the appropriate monitored Component attributes as specified in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, and Table 4-1 through 4-2. (Part 1.2)

M2. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that uses performance-based maintenance intervals shall have evidence that its current performance-based maintenance program(s) is in accordance with Requirement R2, which may include but is not limited to Component lists, dated maintenance records, and dated analysis records and results.

M3. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes time-based maintenance program(s) shall have evidence that it has maintained its Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Components included within its time-based program in accordance with Requirement R3. The evidence may include but is not limited to dated maintenance records, dated maintenance summaries, dated check-off lists, dated inspection records, or dated work orders.

M4. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes performance-based maintenance intervals in accordance with Requirement R2 shall have evidence that it has implemented the Protection System Maintenance Program for the Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Components included in its performance-based program in accordance with Requirement R4. The evidence may include but is not limited to dated maintenance records, dated maintenance summaries, dated check-off lists, dated inspection records, or dated work orders.

M5. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have evidence that it has undertaken efforts to correct identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues in accordance with Requirement R5. The evidence may include but is not limited to work orders, replacement Component orders, invoices, project schedules with completed milestones, return material authorizations (RMAs) or purchase orders.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Processes:

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.3. Evidence Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each keep data or evidence to show compliance as identified below unless directed by its Compliance Enforcement Authority to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation.

For Requirement R1, the Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each keep its current dated Protection System Maintenance Program, as well as any superseded versions since the preceding compliance audit, including the documentation that specifies the type of maintenance program applied for each Protection System Component Type.

For Requirement R2, Requirement R3, Requirement R4, and Requirement R5, the Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each keep documentation of the two most recent performances of each distinct maintenance activity for the Protection System or Automatic Reclosing Component, or all performances of each distinct maintenance activity for the Protection System or Automatic Reclosing Component since the previous scheduled audit date, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None.

Violation Severity Levels

Requirement Number	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	The responsible entity's PSMP failed to specify whether one Component Type is being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both. (Part 1.1)	The responsible entity's PSMP failed to specify whether two Component Types are being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both. (Part 1.1)	The responsible entity's PSMP failed to specify whether three Component Types are being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both. (Part 1.1). OR The responsible entity's PSMP failed to include the applicable monitoring attributes applied to each Component Type consistent with the maintenance intervals specified in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2 where monitoring is used to extend the maintenance intervals beyond those specified for unmonitored Components. (Part 1.2).	The responsible entity failed to establish a PSMP. OR The responsible entity's PSMP failed to specify whether four or more Component Types are being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both. (Part 1.1). OR The responsible entity's PSMP failed to include applicable station batteries in a time-based program. (Part 1.1)
R2	The responsible entity uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP but failed to reduce Countable Events to no more than 4% within three years.	NA	The responsible entity uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP but failed to reduce Countable Events to no more than 4% within four years.	The responsible entity uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP but: 1) Failed to establish the technical justification described within Requirement R2 for the initial use of the performance-based PSMP OR 2) Failed to reduce Countable Events to no more than 4% within five years OR

Requirement Number	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
				3) Maintained a Segment with less than 60 Components OR 4) Failed to: • Annually update the list of Components, OR • Annually perform maintenance on the greater of 5% of the Segment population or 3 Components, OR • Annually analyze the program activities and results for each Segment.
R3	For Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain 5% or less of the total Components included within a specific Component Type, in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2.	For Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 5% but 10% or less of the total Components included within a specific Component Type, in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2.	For Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 10% but 15% or less of the total Components included within a specific Component Type, in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2.	For Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 15% of the total Components included within a specific Component Type, in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2.
R4	For Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain 5% or less of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific	For Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 5% but 10% or less of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific	For Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 10% but 15% or less of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific	For Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the responsible entity failed to maintain more than 15% of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific

Requirement Number	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
	Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.	Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.	Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.	Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.
R5	The responsible entity failed to undertake efforts to correct 5 or fewer identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.	The responsible entity failed to undertake efforts to correct greater than 5, but less than or equal to 10 identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.	The responsible entity failed to undertake efforts to correct greater than 10, but less than or equal to 15 identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.	The responsible entity failed to undertake efforts to correct greater than 15 identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.

E. Regional Variances

None

F. Supplemental Reference Document

The following documents present a detailed discussion about determination of maintenance intervals and other useful information regarding establishment of a maintenance program.

1. PRC-005-2 Protection System Maintenance Supplementary Reference and FAQ — March 2013.
2. Considerations for Maintenance and Testing of Autoreclosing Schemes — November 2012.

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Date	New
1	December 1, 2005	1. Changed incorrect use of certain hyphens (-) to “en dash” (–) and “em dash (—).” 2. Added “periods” to items where appropriate. 3. Changed “Timeframe” to “Time Frame” in item D, 1.2.	01/20/05
1a	February 17, 2011	Added Appendix 1 - Interpretation regarding applicability of standard to protection of radially connected transformers	Project 2009-17 interpretation
1a	February 17, 2011	Adopted by Board of Trustees	
1a	September 26, 2011	FERC Order issued approving interpretation of R1 and R2 (FERC’s Order is effective as of September 26, 2011)	
1.1a	February 1, 2012	Errata change: Clarified inclusion of generator interconnection Facility in Generator Owner’s responsibility	Revision under Project 2010-07
1b	February 3, 2012	FERC Order issued approving interpretation of R1, R1.1, and R1.2 (FERC’s Order dated March 14, 2012). Updated version from 1a to 1b.	Project 2009-10 Interpretation
1.1b	April 23, 2012	Updated standard version to 1.1b to reflect FERC approval of PRC-005-1b.	Revision under Project 2010-07

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
1.1b	May 9, 2012	PRC-005-1.1b was adopted by the Board of Trustees as part of Project 2010-07 (GOTO).	
2	November 7, 2012	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Project 2007-17 - Complete revision, absorbing maintenance requirements from PRC-005-1.1b, PRC-008-0, PRC-011-0, PRC-017-0
2	October 17, 2013	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Errata Change: The Standards Committee approved an errata change to the implementation plan for PRC-005-2 to add the phrase "or as otherwise made effective pursuant to the laws applicable to such ERO governmental authorities;" to the second sentence under the "Retirement of Existing
2(i)	November 13, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Applicability section revised by Project 2014-01 to clarify application of Requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
2(ii)	November 13, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Replaced references to Special Protection System and SPS with Remedial Action Scheme and RAS
3	November 7, 2013	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Revised to address the FERC directive in Order No.758 to include Automatic Reclosing in maintenance programs
3(i)	November 13, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Applicability section revised by Project 2014-01 to clarify application of Requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
3(i)	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving PRC-005-3(i)	

Table 1-1 Component Type - Protective Relay Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval[2]**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any unmonitored protective relay not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	6 Calendar Years	For all unmonitored relays: • Verify that settings are as specified For non-microprocessor relays: • Test and, if necessary calibrate For microprocessor relays: • Verify operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Verify acceptable measurement of power system input values.
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with the following: • Internal self-diagnosis and alarming (see Table 2). • Voltage and/or current waveform sampling three or more times per power cycle, and conversion of samples to numeric values for measurement calculations by microprocessor electronics. • Alarming for power supply failure (see Table 2).	12 Calendar Years	Verify: • Settings are as specified. • Operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Acceptable measurement of power system input values.

[2] For the tables in this standard, a calendar year starts on the first day of a new year (January 1) after a maintenance activity has been completed. For the tables in this standard, a calendar month starts on the first day of the first month after a maintenance activity has been completed.

Table 1-1 Component Type - Protective Relay Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**[2]	**Maintenance Activities**
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with preceding row attributes and the following: • Ac measurements are continuously verified by comparison to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for excessive error (See Table 2). • Some or all binary or status inputs and control outputs are monitored by a process that continuously demonstrates ability to perform as designed, with alarming for failure (See Table 2). • Alarming for change of settings (See Table 2).	12 Calendar Years	Verify only the unmonitored relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.

Table 1-2 Component Type - Communications Systems Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any unmonitored communications system necessary for correct operation of protective functions, and not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	4 Calendar Months	Verify that the communications system is functional.
	6 Calendar Years	Verify that the communications system meets performance criteria pertinent to the communications technology applied (e.g. signal level, reflected power, or data error rate). Verify operation of communications system inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.
Any communications system with continuous monitoring or periodic automated testing for the presence of the channel function, and alarming for loss of function (See Table 2).	12 Calendar Years	Verify that the communications system meets performance criteria pertinent to the communications technology applied (e.g. signal level, reflected power, or data error rate). Verify operation of communications system inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.
Any communications system with all of the following: • Continuous monitoring or periodic automated testing for the performance of the channel using criteria pertinent to the communications technology applied (e.g. signal level, reflected power, or data error rate, and alarming for excessive performance degradation). (See Table 2) • Some or all binary or status inputs and control outputs are monitored by a process that continuously demonstrates ability to perform as designed, with alarming for failure (See Table 2).	12 Calendar Years	Verify only the unmonitored communications system inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System

Table 1-3 Component Type - Voltage and Current Sensing Devices Providing Inputs to Protective Relays Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any voltage and current sensing devices not having monitoring attributes of the category below.	12 Calendar Years	Verify that current and voltage signal values are provided to the protective relays.
Voltage and Current Sensing devices connected to microprocessor relays with AC measurements are continuously verified by comparison of sensing input value, as measured by the microprocessor relay, to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for unacceptable error or failure (see Table 2).	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 1-4(a) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS systems, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Protection System Station dc supply using **Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) batteries** not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: • Electrolyte level • For unintentional grounds
	18 Calendar Months	Verify: • Float voltage of battery charger • Battery continuity • Battery terminal connection resistance • Battery intercell or unit-to-unit connection resistance Inspect: • Cell condition of all individual battery cells where cells are visible – or measure battery cell/unit internal ohmic values where the cells are not visible • Physical condition of battery rack

Table 1-4(a) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS systems, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
	18 Calendar Months -or- 6 Calendar Years	Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by evaluating cell/unit measurements indicative of battery performance (e.g. internal ohmic values or float current) against the station battery baseline. -or- Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by conducting a performance or modified performance capacity test of the entire battery bank.

Table 1-4(b) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Valve-Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS systems, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Protection System Station dc supply **with Valve Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) batteries** not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: • For unintentional grounds
	6 Calendar Months	Inspect: • Condition of all individual units by measuring battery cell/unit internal ohmic values.
	18 Calendar Months	Verify: • Float voltage of battery charger • Battery continuity • Battery terminal connection resistance • Battery intercell or unit-to-unit connection resistance Inspect: • Physical condition of battery rack

Table 1-4(b) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Valve-Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS systems, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
	6 Calendar Months -or- 3 Calendar Years	Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by evaluating cell/unit measurements indicative of battery performance (e.g. internal ohmic values or float current) against the station battery baseline. -or- Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by conducting a performance or modified performance capacity test of the entire battery bank.

Table 1-4(c) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Nickel-Cadmium (NiCad) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS system, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Protection System Station dc supply **Nickel-Cadmium (NiCad) batteries** not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: • Electrolyte level • For unintentional grounds
	18 Calendar Months	Verify: • Float voltage of battery charger • Battery continuity • Battery terminal connection resistance • Battery intercell or unit-to-unit connection resistance Inspect: • Cell condition of all individual battery cells. • Physical condition of battery rack
	6 Calendar Years	Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by conducting a performance or modified performance capacity test of the entire battery bank.

Table 1-4(d) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Non Battery Based Energy Storage Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3) Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS system, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any Protection System station dc supply not using a battery and not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: • For unintentional grounds
	18 Calendar Months	Inspect: Condition of non-battery based dc supply
	6 Calendar Years	Verify that the dc supply can perform as manufactured when ac power is not present.

Table 1-4(e) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply for non-BES Interrupting Devices for SPS, non-distributed UFLS, and non-distributed UVLS systems		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any Protection System dc supply used for tripping only non-BES interrupting devices as part of a SPS, non-distributed UFLS, or non-distributed UVLS system and not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	When control circuits are verified (See Table 1-5)	Verify Station dc supply voltage.

Table 1-4(f) Exclusions for Protection System Station dc Supply Monitoring Devices and Systems		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any station dc supply with high and low voltage monitoring and alarming of the battery charger voltage to detect charger overvoltage and charger failure (See Table 2).	No periodic maintenance specified	No periodic verification of station dc supply voltage is required.
Any battery based station dc supply with electrolyte level monitoring and alarming in every cell (See Table 2).		No periodic inspection of the electrolyte level for each cell is required.
Any station dc supply with unintentional dc ground monitoring and alarming (See Table 2).		No periodic inspection of unintentional dc grounds is required.
Any station dc supply with charger float voltage monitoring and alarming to ensure correct float voltage is being applied on the station dc supply (See Table 2).		No periodic verification of float voltage of battery charger is required.
Any battery based station dc supply with monitoring and alarming of battery string continuity (See Table 2).		No periodic verification of the battery continuity is required.
Any battery based station dc supply with monitoring and alarming of the intercell and/or terminal connection detail resistance of the entire battery (See Table 2).		No periodic verification of the intercell and terminal connection resistance is required.
Any Valve Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) or Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) station battery with internal ohmic value or float current monitoring and alarming, and evaluating present values relative to baseline internal ohmic values for every cell/unit (See Table 2).		No periodic evaluation relative to baseline of battery cell/unit measurements indicative of battery performance is required to verify the station battery can perform as manufactured.
Any Valve Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) or Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) station battery with monitoring and alarming of each cell/unit internal ohmic value (See Table 2).		No periodic inspection of the condition of all individual units by measuring battery cell/unit internal ohmic values of a station VRLA or Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) battery is required.

Table 1-5
Component Type - Control Circuitry Associated With Protective Functions
Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)

Note: Table requirements apply to all Control Circuitry Components of Protection Systems, and SPSs except as noted.

Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
Trip coils or actuators of circuit breakers, interrupting devices, or mitigating devices (regardless of any monitoring of the control circuitry).	6 Calendar Years	Verify that each trip coil is able to operate the circuit breaker, interrupting device, or mitigating device.
Electromechanical lockout devices which are directly in a trip path from the protective relay to the interrupting device trip coil (regardless of any monitoring of the control circuitry).	6 Calendar Years	Verify electrical operation of electromechanical lockout devices.
Unmonitored control circuitry associated with SPS. (See Table 4-2(b) for SPS which include Automatic Reclosing.)	12 Calendar Years	Verify all paths of the control circuits essential for proper operation of the SPS.
Unmonitored control circuitry associated with protective functions inclusive of all auxiliary relays.	12 Calendar Years	Verify all paths of the trip circuits inclusive of all auxiliary relays through the trip coil(s) of the circuit breakers or other interrupting devices.
Control circuitry associated with protective functions and/or SPSs whose integrity is monitored and alarmed (See Table 2).	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 2 – Alarming Paths and Monitoring In Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2, alarm attributes used to justify extended maximum maintenance intervals and/or reduced maintenance activities are subject to the following maintenance requirements		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any alarm path through which alarms in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2 are conveyed from the alarm origin to the location where corrective action can be initiated, and not having all the attributes of the "Alarm Path with monitoring" category below. Alarms are reported within 24 hours of detection to a location where corrective action can be initiated.	12 Calendar Years	Verify that the alarm path conveys alarm signals to a location where corrective action can be initiated.
Alarm Path with monitoring: The location where corrective action is taken receives an alarm within 24 hours for failure of any portion of the alarming path from the alarm origin to the location where corrective action can be initiated.	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 3 Maintenance Activities and Intervals for distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS Systems		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any unmonitored protective relay not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	6 Calendar Years	Verify that settings are as specified. For non-microprocessor relays: • Test and, if necessary calibrate. For microprocessor relays: • Verify operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Verify acceptable measurement of power system input values.
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with the following: • Internal self diagnosis and alarming (See Table 2). • Voltage and/or current waveform sampling three or more times per power cycle, and conversion of samples to numeric values for measurement calculations by microprocessor electronics. Alarming for power supply failure (See Table 2).	12 Calendar Years	Verify: • Settings are as specified. • Operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Acceptable measurement of power system input values
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with preceding row attributes and the following: • Ac measurements are continuously verified by comparison to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for excessive error (See Table 2). • Some or all binary or status inputs and control outputs are monitored by a process that continuously demonstrates ability to perform as designed, with alarming for failure (See Table 2). Alarming for change of settings (See Table 2).	12 Calendar Years	Verify only the unmonitored relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.

Table 3 Maintenance Activities and Intervals for distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS Systems		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Voltage and/or current sensing devices associated with UFLS or UVLS systems.	12 Calendar Years	Verify that current and/or voltage signal values are provided to the protective relays.
Protection System dc supply for tripping non-BES interrupting devices used only for a UFLS or UVLS system.	12 Calendar Years	Verify Protection System dc supply voltage.
Control circuitry between the UFLS or UVLS relays and electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices (excludes non-BES interrupting device trip coils).	12 Calendar Years	Verify the path from the relay to the lockout and/or tripping auxiliary relay (including essential supervisory logic).
Electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices associated only with UFLS or UVLS systems (excludes non-BES interrupting device trip coils).	12 Calendar Years	Verify electrical operation of electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices.
Control circuitry between the electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices and the non-BES interrupting devices in UFLS or UVLS systems, or between UFLS or UVLS relays (with no interposing electromechanical lockout or auxiliary device) and the non-BES interrupting devices (excludes non-BES interrupting device trip coils).	No periodic maintenance specified	None.
Trip coils of non-BES interrupting devices in UFLS or UVLS systems.	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 4-1 Maintenance Activities and Intervals for Automatic Reclosing Components Component Type – Reclosing Relay		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Any unmonitored reclosing relay not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	6 Calendar Years	Verify that settings are as specified. For non-microprocessor relays: • Test and, if necessary calibrate For microprocessor relays: • Verify operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Automatic Reclosing.
Monitored microprocessor reclosing relay with the following: • Internal self diagnosis and alarming (See Table 2). • Alarming for power supply failure (See Table 2).	12 Calendar Years	Verify: • Settings are as specified. • Operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Automatic Reclosing.

Table 4-2(a) Maintenance Activities and Intervals for Automatic Reclosing Components Component Type – Control Circuitry Associated with Reclosing Relays that are NOT an Integral Part of an SPS		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Unmonitored Control circuitry associated with Automatic Reclosing that is not an integral part of an SPS.	12 Calendar Years	Verify that Automatic Reclosing, upon initiation, does not issue a premature closing command to the close circuitry.
Control circuitry associated with Automatic Reclosing that is not part of an SPS and is monitored and alarmed for conditions that would result in a premature closing command. (See Table 2)	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 4-2(b) Maintenance Activities and Intervals for Automatic Reclosing Components Component Type – Control Circuitry Associated with Reclosing Relays that ARE an Integral Part of an SPS		
Component Attributes	**Maximum Maintenance Interval**	**Maintenance Activities**
Close coils or actuators of circuit breakers or similar devices that are used in conjunction with Automatic Reclosing as part of an SPS (regardless of any monitoring of the control circuitry).	6 Calendar Years	Verify that each close coil or actuator is able to operate the circuit breaker or mitigating device.
Unmonitored close control circuitry associated with Automatic Reclosing used as an integral part of an SPS.	12 Calendar Years	Verify all paths of the control circuits associated with Automatic Reclosing that are essential for proper operation of the SPS.
Control circuitry associated with Automatic Reclosing that is an integral part of an SPS whose integrity is monitored and alarmed. (See Table 2)	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

PRC-005 — Attachment A

Criteria for a Performance-Based Protection System Maintenance Program

Purpose: To establish a technical basis for initial and continued use of a performance-based Protection System Maintenance Program (PSMP).

To establish the technical justification for the initial use of a performance-based PSMP:

1. Develop a list with a description of Components included in each designated Segment, with a minimum **Segment** population of 60 Components.
2. Maintain the Components in each Segment according to the time-based maximum allowable intervals established in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 3, and Tables 4-1 through 4-2 until results of maintenance activities for the Segment are available for a minimum of 30 individual Components of the Segment.
3. Document the maintenance program activities and results for each Segment, including maintenance dates and Countable Events for each included Component.
4. Analyze the maintenance program activities and results for each Segment to determine the overall performance of the Segment and develop maintenance intervals.
5. Determine the maximum allowable maintenance interval for each Segment such that the Segment experiences **Countable Events** on no more than 4% of the Components within the Segment, for the greater of either the last 30 Components maintained or all Components maintained in the previous year.

To maintain the technical justification for the ongoing use of a performance-based PSMP:

1. At least annually, update the list of Components and Segments and/or description if any changes occur within the Segment.
2. Perform maintenance on the greater of 5% of the Components (addressed in the performance based PSMP) in each Segment or 3 individual Components within the Segment in each year.
3. For the prior year, analyze the maintenance program activities and results for each Segment to determine the overall performance of the Segment.
4. Using the prior year’s data, determine the maximum allowable maintenance interval for each Segment such that the Segment experiences Countable Events on no more than 4% of the Components within the Segment, for the greater of either the last 30 Components maintained or all Components maintained in the previous year.
5. If the Components in a Segment maintained through a performance-based PSMP experience 4% or more Countable Events, develop, document, and implement an action plan to reduce the Countable Events to less than 4% of the Segment population within 3 years.

Application Guidelines

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for 4.2.5:

In order to differentiate between typical BES generator Facilities and BES generators at dispersed power producing facilities, section 4.2.5 was separated into two sections (4.2.5 and 4.2.6). The applicability to non-dispersed power producing Facilities has been maintained and can be found in 4.2.5. The applicability to dispersed power producing Facilities has been modified and relocated from 4.2.5 to 4.2.6.

Rationale for 4.2.6:

Applicability of the Requirements of PRC-005-2 to dispersed power producing resources is separated out in section 4.2.6. The intent is that for such resources, the Requirements would apply only to Protection Systems on equipment used in aggregating the BES dispersed power producing resources from the point where those resources aggregate to greater than 75 MVA to a common point of connection at 100 kV or higher including the Protection Systems for those transformers used in aggregating generation.

* FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY *

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-005-3(i) — Protection System and Automatic Reclosing Maintenance

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-005-3(i)	All	04/01/2016	

Reliability Standard PRC-019-2

A. Introduction

1. Title: Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Regulating Controls, and Protection

2. Number: PRC-019-2

3. Purpose: To verify coordination of generating unit Facility or synchronous condenser voltage regulating controls, limit functions, equipment capabilities and Protection System settings.

4. Applicability:

4.1. Functional Entities

4.1.1 Generator Owner

4.1.2 Transmission Owner that owns synchronous condenser(s)

4.2. Facilities

For the purpose of this standard, the term, "applicable Facility" shall mean any one of the following:

4.2.1 Individual generating unit greater than 20 MVA (gross nameplate rating) directly connected to the Bulk Electric System.

4.2.2 Individual synchronous condenser greater than 20 MVA (gross nameplate rating) directly connected to the Bulk Electric System.

4.2.3 Generating plant/ Facility consisting of one or more units that are connected to the Bulk Electric System at a common bus with total generation greater than 75 MVA (gross aggregate nameplate rating).

4.2.3.1 This includes individual generating units of the dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition where voltage regulating control for the facility is performed solely at the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resources.

4.2.4 Any generator, regardless of size, that is a blackstart unit material to and designated as part of a Transmission Operator's restoration plan.

5. Effective Date:

See the Implementation Plan for PRC-019-2.

B. Requirements

R1. At a maximum of every five calendar years, each Generator Owner and Transmission Owner with applicable Facilities shall coordinate the voltage regulating system controls, (including in-service[1] limiters and protection functions) with the applicable

[1] Limiters or protection functions that are installed and activated on the generator or synchronous condenser.

equipment capabilities and settings of the applicable Protection System devices and functions. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*

1.1. Assuming the normal automatic voltage regulator control loop and steady-state system operating conditions, verify the following coordination items for each applicable Facility:

1.1.1. The in-service limiters are set to operate before the Protection System of the applicable Facility in order to avoid disconnecting the generator unnecessarily.

1.1.2. The applicable in-service Protection System devices are set to operate to isolate or de-energize equipment in order to limit the extent of damage when operating conditions exceed equipment capabilities or stability limits.

R2. Within 90 calendar days following the identification or implementation of systems, equipment or setting changes that will affect the coordination described in Requirement R1, each Generator Owner and Transmission Owner with applicable Facilities shall perform the coordination as described in Requirement R1. These possible systems, equipment or settings changes include, but are not limited to the following *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*:

- Voltage regulating settings or equipment changes;
- Protection System settings or component changes;
- Generating or synchronous condenser equipment capability changes; or
- Generator or synchronous condenser step-up transformer changes.

C. Measures

M1. Each Generator Owner and Transmission Owner with applicable Facilities will have evidence (such as examples provided in PRC-019 Section G) that it coordinated the voltage regulating system controls, including in-service[2] limiters and protection functions, with the applicable equipment capabilities and settings of the applicable Protection System devices and functions as specified in Requirement R1. This evidence should include dated documentation that demonstrates the coordination was performed.

M2. Each Generator Owner and Transmission Owner with applicable Facilities will have evidence of the coordination required by the events listed in Requirement R2. This evidence should include dated documentation that demonstrates the specified intervals in Requirement R2 have been met.

[2] Limiters or protection functions that are installed and activated on the generator or synchronous condenser.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

The Regional Entity shall serve as the Compliance enforcement authority unless the applicable entity is owned, operated, or controlled by the Regional Entity. In such cases the ERO or a Regional entity approved by FERC or other applicable governmental authority shall serve as the CEA.

1.2. Evidence Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify a period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention specified below is shorter than the time since the last compliance audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Generator Owner and Transmission Owner shall retain evidence of compliance with Requirements R1 and R2, Measures M1 and M2 for six years.

If a Generator Owner or Transmission Owner is found non-compliant, the entity shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is complete and approved or for the time period specified above, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last periodic audit report and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None

2. Violation Severity Levels

R #	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 5 calendar years but less than or equal to 5 calendar years plus 4 months after the previous coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 5 calendar years plus 4 months but less than or equal to 5 calendar years plus 8 months after the previous coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 5 calendar years plus 8 months but less than or equal to 5 calendar years plus 12 months after the previous coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner failed to coordinate equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 within 5 calendar years plus 12 months after the previous coordination.
R2	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 90 calendar days but less than or equal to 100 calendar days following the identification or implementation of a change in equipment or settings that affected the coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 100 calendar days but less than or equal to 110 calendar days following the identification or implementation of a change in equipment or settings that affected the coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 110 calendar days but less than or equal to 120 calendar days following the identification or implementation of a change in equipment or settings that affected the coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner failed to coordinate equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 within 120 calendar days following the identification or implementation of a change in equipment or settings that affected the coordination.

E. Regional Variances

None.

F. Associated Documents

"Underexcited Operation of Turbo Generators", AIEE Proceedings T Section 881, Volume 67, 1948, Appendix 1, C. G. Adams and J. B. McClure.

,"Protective Relaying For Power Generation Systems", Boca Raton, FL, Taylor & Francis, 2006, Reimert, Donald

"Coordination of Generator Protection with Generator Excitation Control and Generator Capability", a report of Working Group J5 of the IEEE PSRC Rotating Machinery Subcommittee

"IEEE C37.102-2006 IEEE Guide for AC Generator Protection"

"IEEE C50.13-2005 IEEE Standard for Cylindrical-Rotor 50 Hz and 60 Hz Synchronous Generators Rated 10 MVA and Above"

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
1	February 7, 2013	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	New
1	March 20, 2014	FERC Order issued approving PRC-019-1. (Order becomes effective on 7/1/16.)	
2	February 12, 2015	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Standard revised in Project 2014-01: Applicability revised to clarify application of requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
2	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving PRC-019-2	Modifications to adjust the applicability to owners of dispersed generation resources.

G. Reference

Examples of Coordination

The evidence of coordination associated with Requirement R1 may be in the form of:

- P-Q Diagram (Example in Attachment 1), or
- R-X Diagram (Example in Attachment 2), or
- Inverse Time Diagram (Example in Attachment 3) or,
- Equivalent tables or other evidence

This evidence should include the equipment capabilities and the operating region for the limiters and protection functions

Equipment limits, types of limiters and protection functions which could be coordinated include (but are not limited to):

- Field over-excitation limiter and associated protection functions.
- Inverter over current limit and associated protection functions.
- Field under-excitation limiter and associated protection functions.
- Generator or synchronous condenser reactive capabilities.
- Volts per hertz limiter and associated protection functions.
- Stator over-voltage protection system settings.
- Generator and transformer volts per hertz capability.
- Time vs. field current or time vs. stator current.

NOTE: This listing is for reference only. This standard does not require the installation or activation of any of the above limiter or protection functions.

For this example, the Steady State Stability Limit (SSSL) is the limit to synchronous stability in the under-excited region with fixed field current.

On a P-Q diagram using X_d as the direct axis saturated synchronous reactance of the generator, X_s as the equivalent reactance between the generator terminals and the "infinite bus" including the reactance of the generator step-up transformer and V_g as the generator terminal voltage (all values in per-unit), the SSSL can be calculated as an arc with the center on the Q axis with the magnitude of the center and radius described by the following equations

$C = V^2_g/2*(1/X_s-1/X_d)$

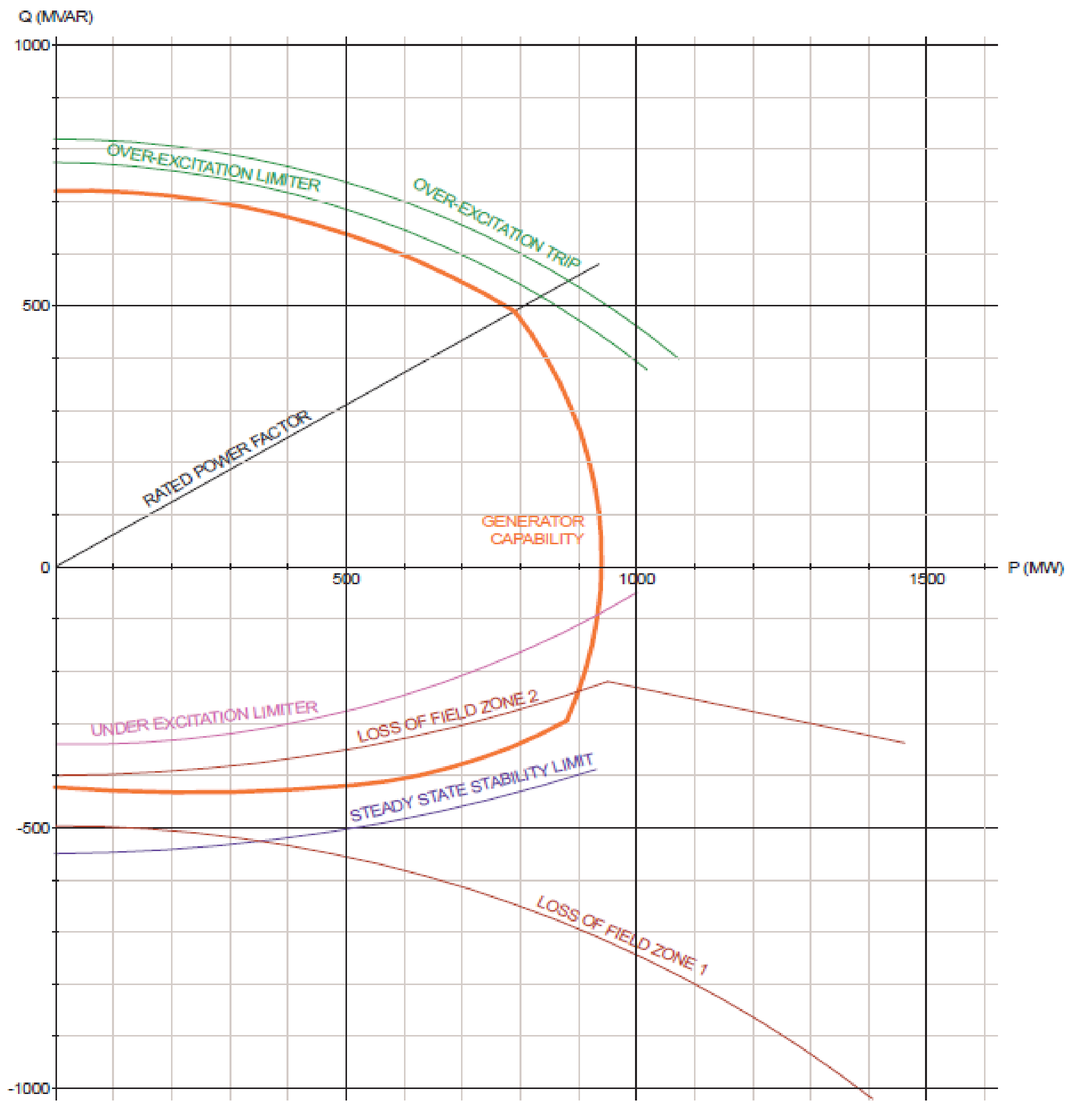
$R = V^2_g/2*(1/X_s+1/X_d)$

On an R-X diagram using X_d as the direct axis saturated synchronous reactance of the generator, and X_s as the equivalent reactance between the generator terminals and the "infinite bus" including the reactance of the generator step-up transformer the SSSL is an arc with the center on the X axis with the center and radius described by the following equations:

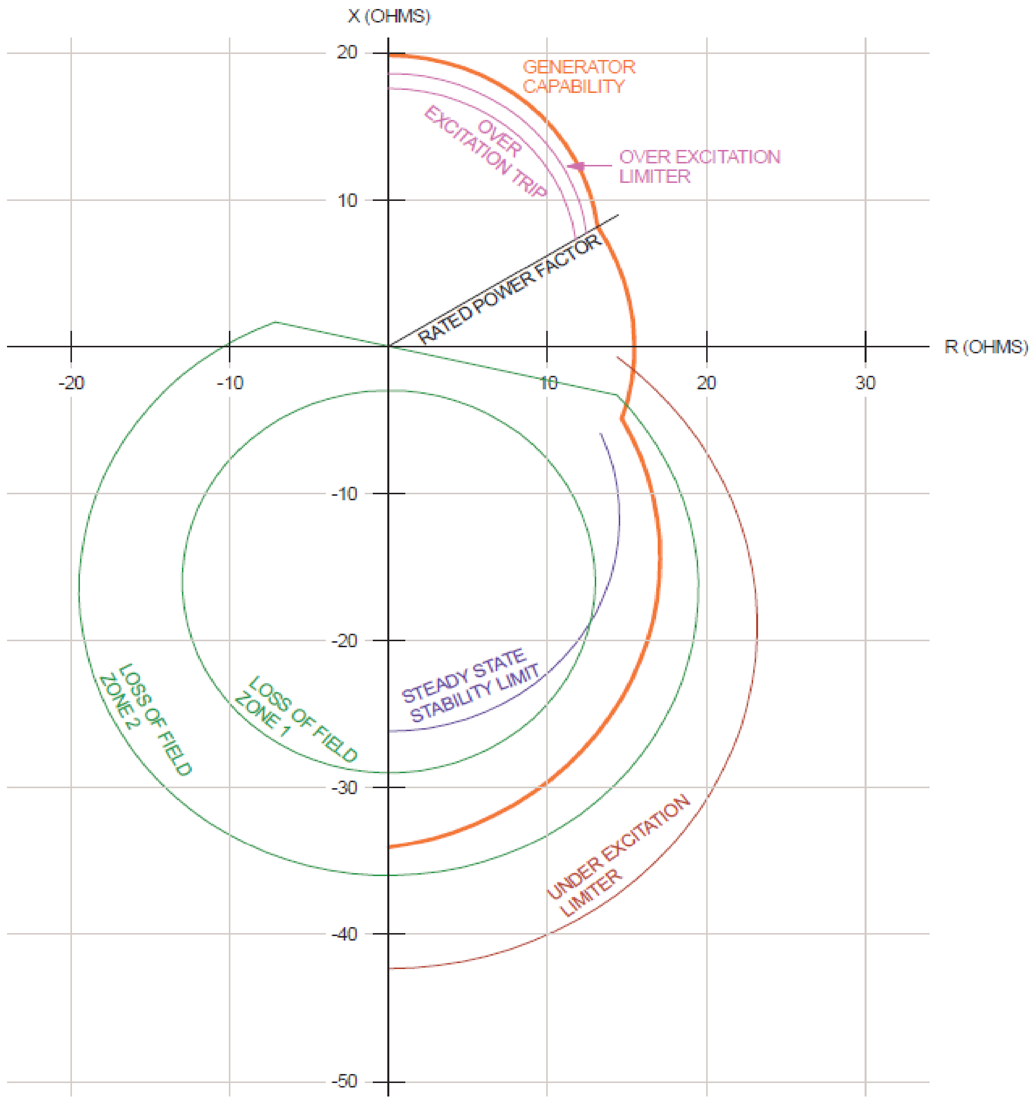
$C = (X_d-X_s)/2$

$R = (X_d+X_s)/2$

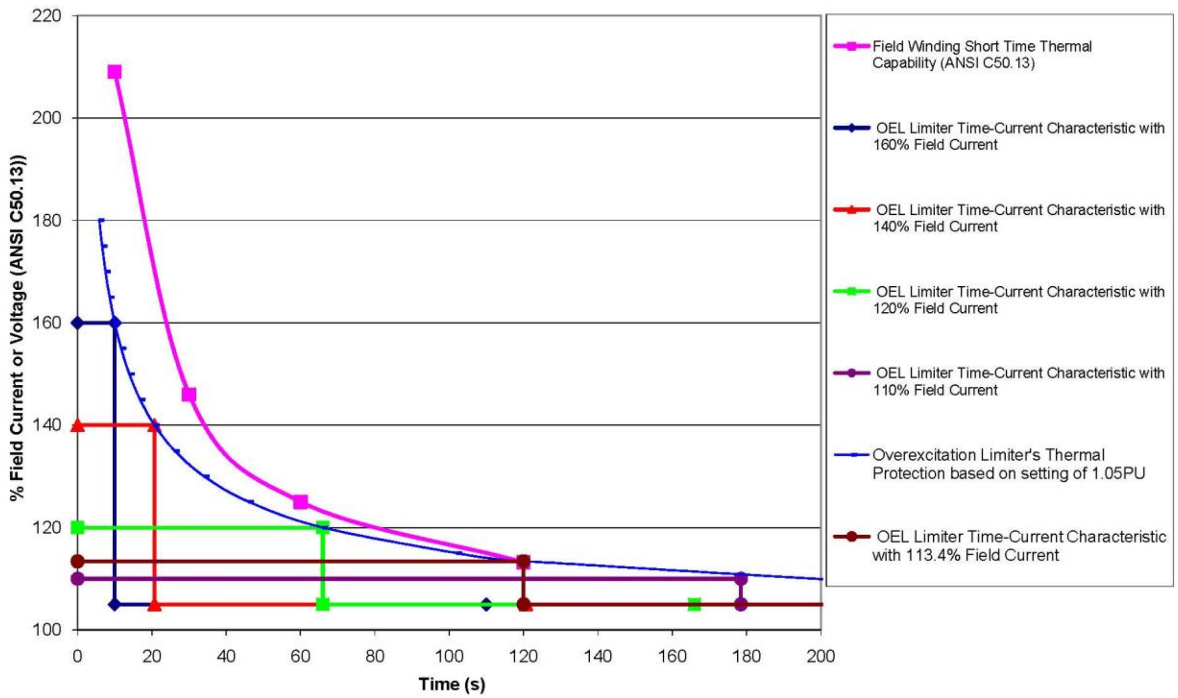
Section G Attachment 1 – Example of Capabilities, Limiters and Protection on a P-Q Diagram at nominal voltage and frequency



Section G Attachment 2 – Example of Capabilities, Limiters, and Protection on an R-X Diagram at nominal voltage and frequency



Section G Attachment 3 - Example of Capabilities, Limiters, and Protection on an Inverse Time Characteristic Plot



Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for Facilities section 4.2.3.1

For those dispersed power producing facilities that only perform voltage regulating control at the individual generating unit level, the SDT believes that coordination should take place at the individual generating unit level of the dispersed power producing resource. These facilities need to consider the Protection Systems at the individual units and their compatibility with the reactive and voltage limitations of the units. Where voltage regulating control is done at an aggregate level, applicability is already included under Facilities section 4.2.3.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-019-2 — Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Regulating Controls, and Protection

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-019-2	All	07/01/2016	

Reliability Standard PRC-024-2

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Generator Frequency and Voltage Protective Relay Settings**
2. **Number:** PRC-024-2
3. **Purpose:** Ensure Generator Owners set their generator protective relays such that generating units remain connected during defined frequency and voltage excursions.
4. **Applicability:**

   4.1. Generator Owner
5. **Effective Date:**

   See the Implementation Plan for PRC-024-2.

B. Requirements

R1. Each Generator Owner that has generator frequency protective relaying[1] activated to trip its applicable generating unit(s) shall set its protective relaying such that the generator frequency protective relaying does not trip the applicable generating unit(s) within the "no trip zone" of PRC-024 Attachment 1, subject to the following exceptions:[2] *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*

- Generating unit(s) may trip if the protective functions (such as out-of-step functions or loss-of-field functions) operate due to an impending or actual loss of synchronism or, for asynchronous generating units, due to instability in power conversion control equipment.
- Generating unit(s) may trip if clearing a system fault necessitates disconnecting (a) generating unit(s).
- Generating unit(s) may trip within a portion of the "no trip zone" of PRC-024 Attachment 1 for documented and communicated regulatory or equipment limitations in accordance with Requirement R3.

R2. Each Generator Owner that has generator voltage protective relaying[1] activated to trip its applicable generating unit(s) shall set its protective relaying such that the generator voltage protective relaying does not trip the applicable generating unit(s) as a result of a

---

[1] Each Generator Owner is not required to have frequency or voltage protective relaying (including but not limited to frequency and voltage protective functions for discrete relays, volts per hertz relays evaluated at nominal frequency, multi-function protective devices or protective functions within control systems that directly trip or provide tripping signals to the generator based on frequency or voltage inputs) installed or activated on its unit.

[2] For frequency protective relays associated with dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition, this requirement applies to frequency protective relays applied on the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resources, as well as frequency protective relays applied on equipment from the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resource up to the point of interconnection.

voltage excursion (at the point of interconnection[3]) caused by an event on the transmission system external to the generating plant that remains within the "no trip zone" of PRC-024 Attachment 2.[4] If the Transmission Planner allows less stringent voltage relay settings than those required to meet PRC-024 Attachment 2, then the Generator Owner shall set its protective relaying within the voltage recovery characteristics of a location-specific Transmission Planner's study. Requirement R2 is subject to the following exceptions: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*

- Generating unit(s) may trip in accordance with a Special Protection System (SPS) or Remedial Action Scheme (RAS).
- Generating unit(s) may trip if clearing a system fault necessitates disconnecting (a) generating unit(s).
- Generating unit(s) may trip by action of protective functions (such as out-of-step functions or loss-of-field functions) that operate due to an impending or actual loss of synchronism or, for asynchronous generating units, due to instability in power conversion control equipment.
- Generating unit(s) may trip within a portion of the "no trip zone" of PRC-024 Attachment 2 for documented and communicated regulatory or equipment limitations in accordance with Requirement R3.

R3. Each Generator Owner shall document each known regulatory or equipment limitation[5] that prevents an applicable generating unit with generator frequency or voltage protective relays from meeting the relay setting criteria in Requirements R1 or R2 including (but not limited to) study results, experience from an actual event, or manufacturer's advice. *[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*

3.1. The Generator Owner shall communicate the documented regulatory or equipment limitation, or the removal of a previously documented regulatory or equipment limitation, to its Planning Coordinator and Transmission Planner within 30 calendar days of any of the following:

- Identification of a regulatory or equipment limitation.
- Repair of the equipment causing the limitation that removes the limitation.
- Replacement of the equipment causing the limitation with equipment that removes the limitation.

---

[3] For the purposes of this standard, point of interconnection means the transmission (high voltage) side of the generator step-up or collector transformer.

[4] For voltage protective relays associated with dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition, this requirement applies to voltage protective relays applied on the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resources, as well as voltage protective relays applied on equipment from the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resource up to the point of interconnection.

[5] Excludes limitations that are caused by the setting capability of the generator frequency and voltage protective relays themselves but does not exclude limitations originating in the equipment that they protect.

- Creation or adjustment of an equipment limitation caused by consumption of the cumulative turbine life-time frequency excursion allowance.

R4. Each Generator Owner shall provide its applicable generator protection trip settings associated with Requirements R1 and R2 to the Planning Coordinator or Transmission Planner that models the associated unit within 60 calendar days of receipt of a written request for the data and within 60 calendar days of any change to those previously requested trip settings unless directed by the requesting Planning Coordinator or Transmission Planner that the reporting of relay setting changes is not required. *[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

C. Measures

M1. Each Generator Owner shall have evidence that generator frequency protective relays have been set in accordance with Requirement R1 such as dated setting sheets, calibration sheets or other documentation.

M2. Each Generator Owner shall have evidence that generator voltage protective relays have been set in accordance with Requirement R2 such as dated setting sheets, voltage-time curves, calibration sheets, coordination plots, dynamic simulation studies or other documentation.

M3. Each Generator Owner shall have evidence that it has documented and communicated any known regulatory or equipment limitations (excluding limitations noted in footnote 3) that resulted in an exception to Requirements R1 or R2 in accordance with Requirement R3 such as a dated email or letter that contains such documentation as study results, experience from an actual event, or manufacturer's advice.

Each Generator Owner shall have evidence that it communicated applicable generator protective relay trip settings in accordance with Requirement R4, such as dated e-mails, correspondence or other evidence and copies of any requests it has received for that information.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

The Regional Entity shall serve as the Compliance Enforcement Authority (CEA) unless the applicable entity is owned, operated, or controlled by the Regional Entity. In such cases, the ERO or a Regional Entity approved by FERC or other applicable governmental authority shall serve as the CEA.

1.2. Data Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Generator Owner shall retain evidence of compliance with Requirement R1 through R4; for 3 years or until the next audit, whichever is longer.

If a Generator Owner is found non-compliant, the Generator Owner shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is complete and approved for the time period specified above, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None

2. Violation Severity Levels

R #	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	N/A	N/A	N/A	The Generator Owner that has frequency protection activated to trip a generating unit, failed to set its generator frequency protective relaying so that it does not trip within the criteria listed in Requirement R1 unless there is a documented and communicated regulatory or equipment limitation per Requirement R3.
R2	N/A	N/A	N/A	The Generator Owner with voltage protective relaying activated to trip a generating unit, failed to set its voltage protective relaying so that it does not trip as a result of a voltage excursion at the point of interconnection, caused by an event external to the plant per the criteria specified in Requirement R2 unless there is a documented and communicated regulatory or equipment limitation per Requirement R3.
R3	The Generator Owner documented the known non-protection system equipment limitation that prevented it from meeting the criteria in Requirement R1 or R2 and communicated the documented limitation to its Planning Coordinator and Transmission Planner more than 30 calendar days but less than or equal to 60 calendar days of identifying the limitation.	The Generator Owner documented the known non-protection system equipment limitation that prevented it from meeting the criteria in Requirement R1 or R2 and communicated the documented limitation to its Planning Coordinator and Transmission Planner more than 60 calendar days but less than or equal to 90 calendar days of identifying the limitation.	The Generator Owner documented the known non-protection system equipment limitation that prevented it from meeting the criteria in Requirement R1 or R2 and communicated the documented limitation to its Planning Coordinator and Transmission Planner more than 90 calendar days but less than or equal to 120 calendar days of identifying the limitation.	The Generator Owner failed to document any known non-protection system equipment limitation that prevented it from meeting the criteria in Requirement R1 or R2. OR The Generator Owner failed to communicate the documented limitation to its Planning Coordinator and Transmission Planner within 120 calendar days of identifying the limitation.

R #	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R4	The Generator Owner provided its generator protection trip settings more than 60 calendar days but less than or equal to 90 calendar days of any change to those trip settings. OR The Generator Owner provided trip settings more than 60 calendar days but less than or equal to 90 calendar days of a written request.	The Generator Owner provided its generator protection trip settings more than 90 calendar days but less than or equal to 120 calendar days of any change to those trip settings. OR The Generator Owner provided trip settings more than 90 calendar days but less than or equal to 120 calendar days of a written request.	The Generator Owner provided its generator protection trip settings more than 120 calendar days but less than or equal to 150 calendar days of any change to those trip settings. OR The Generator Owner provided trip settings more than 120 calendar days but less than or equal to 150 calendar days of a written request.	The Generator Owner failed to provide its generator protection trip settings within 150 calendar days of any change to those trip settings. OR The Generator Owner failed to provide trip settings within 150 calendar days of a written request.

E. Regional Variances

None

F. Associated Documents

None

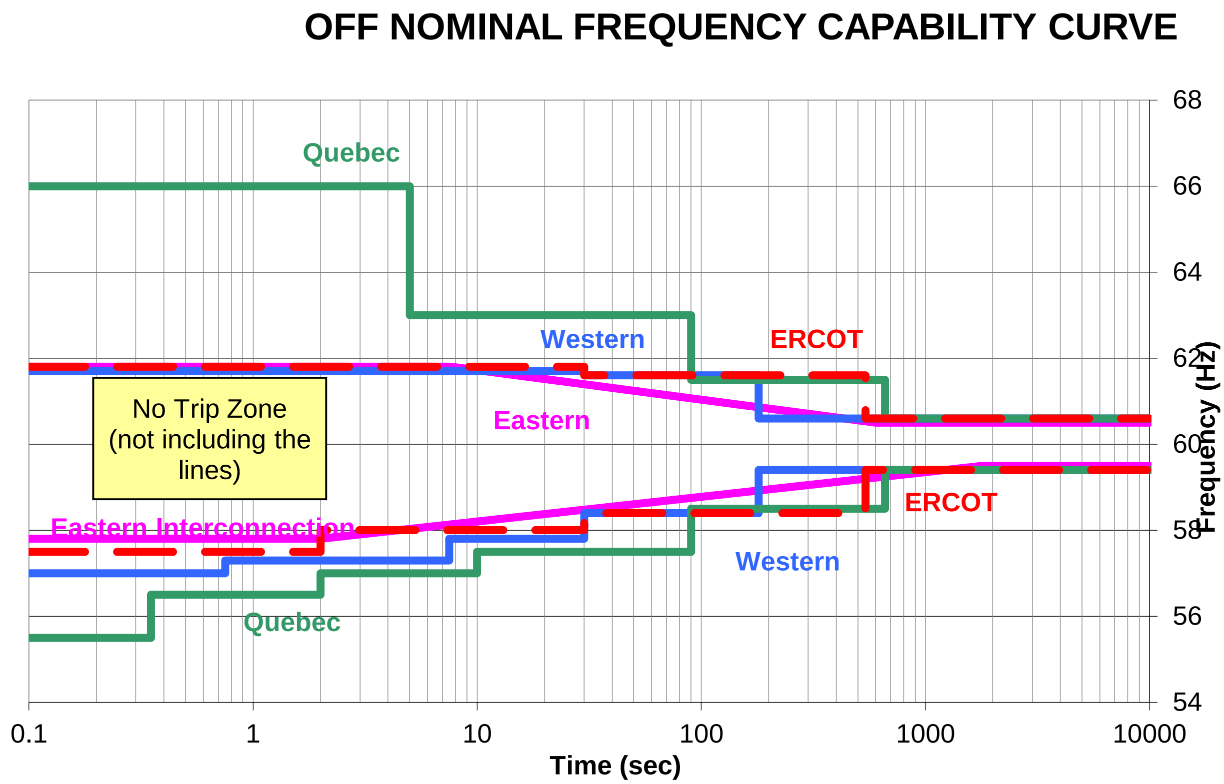
Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
1	May 9, 2013	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	
1	March 20, 2014	FERC Order issued approving PRC-024-1. (Order becomes effective on 7/1/16.)	
2	February 12, 2015	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Standard revised in Project 2014-01: Applicability revised to clarify application of requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
2	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving PRC-024-2	Modifications to adjust the applicability to owners of dispersed generation resources.

G. References

1. "The Technical Justification for the New WECC Voltage Ride-Through (VRT) Standard, A White Paper Developed by the Wind Generation Task Force (WGTF)," dated June 13, 2007, a guideline approved by WECC Technical Studies Subcommittee.

PRC-024 — Attachment 1



Curve Data Points:

Eastern Interconnection

High Frequency Duration		Low Frequency Duration	
Frequency (Hz)	**Time (Sec)**	**Frequency (Hz)**	**Time (sec)**
≥61.8	Instantaneous trip	≤57.8	Instantaneous trip
≥60.5	$10^{(90.935-1.45713*f)}$	≤59.5	$10^{(1.7373*f-100.116)}$
<60.5	Continuous operation	> 59.5	Continuous operation

Western Interconnection

High Frequency Duration		Low Frequency Duration	
Frequency (Hz)	Time (Sec)	Frequency (Hz)	Time (sec)
≥61.7	Instantaneous trip	≤57.0	Instantaneous trip
≥61.6	30	≤57.3	0.75
≥60.6	180	≤57.8	7.5
<60.6	Continuous operation	≤58.4	30
		≤59.4	180
		>59.4	Continuous operation

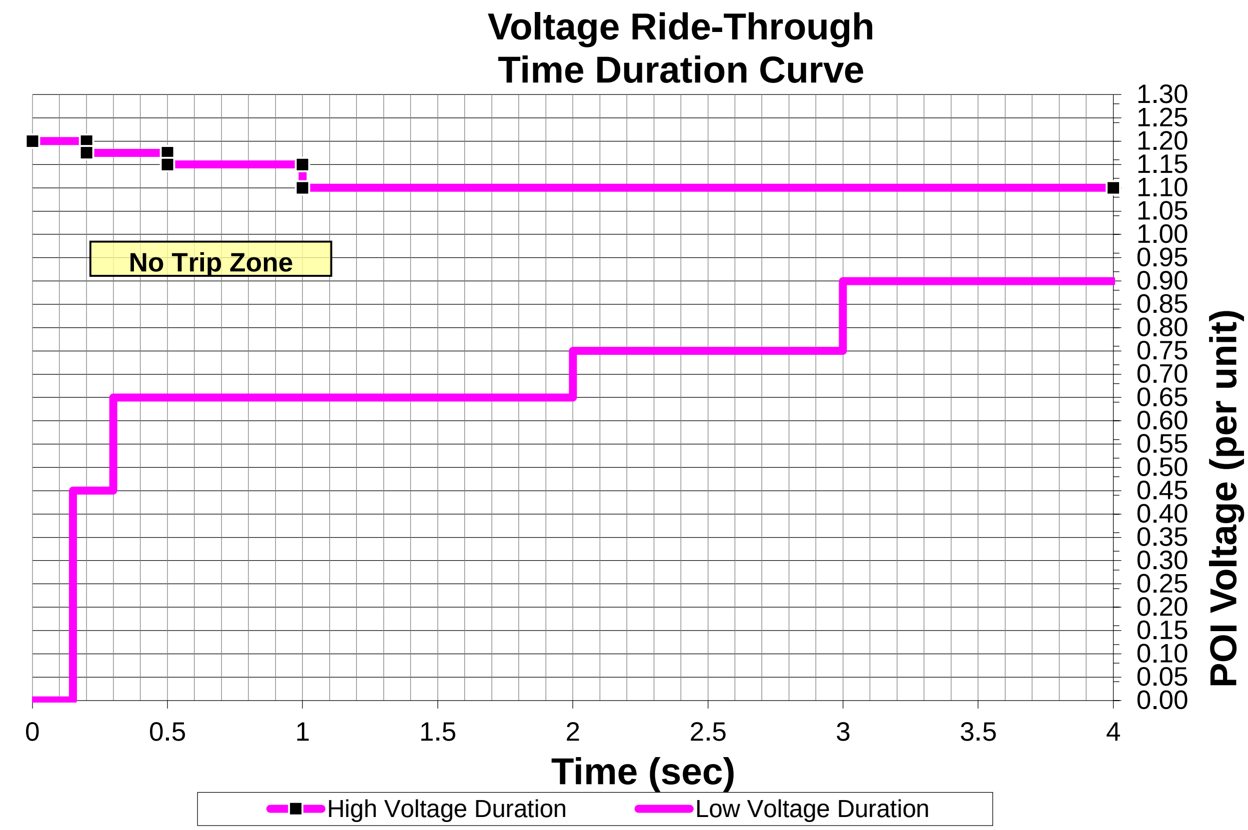
Quebec Interconnection

High Frequency Duration		Low Frequency Duration	
Frequency (Hz)	Time (Sec)	Frequency (Hz)	Time (Sec)
>66.0	Instantaneous trip	<55.5	Instantaneous trip
≥63.0	5	≤56.5	0.35
≥61.5	90	≤57.0	2
≥60.6	660	≤57.5	10
<60.6	Continuous operation	≤58.5	90
		≤59.4	660
		>59.4	Continuous operation

ERCOT Interconnection

High Frequency Duration		Low Frequency Duration	
Frequency (Hz)	Time (Sec)	Frequency (Hz)	Time (sec)
≥61.8	Instantaneous trip	≤57.5	Instantaneous trip
≥61.6	30	≤58.0	2
≥60.6	540	≤58.4	30
<60.6	Continuous operation	≤59.4	540
		>59.4	Continuous operation

PRC-024— Attachment 2



Ride Through Duration:

High Voltage Ride Through Duration		Low Voltage Ride Through Duration	
Voltage (pu)	**Time (sec)**	**Voltage (pu)**	**Time (sec)**
≥1.200	Instantaneous trip	<0.45	0.15
≥1.175	0.20	<0.65	0.30
≥1.15	0.50	<0.75	2.00
≥1.10	1.00	<0.90	3.00

Voltage Ride-Through Curve Clarifications

Curve Details:

1. The per unit voltage base for these curves is the nominal operating voltage specified by the Transmission Planner in the analysis of the reliability of the Interconnected Transmission Systems at the point of interconnection to the Bulk Electric System (BES).
2. The curves depicted were derived based on three-phase transmission system zone 1 faults with Normal Clearing not exceeding 9 cycles. The curves apply to voltage excursions regardless of the type of initiating event.
3. The envelope within the curves represents the cumulative voltage duration at the point of interconnection with the BES. For example, if the voltage first exceeds 1.15 pu at 0.3 seconds after a fault, does not exceed 1.2 pu voltage, and returns below 1.15 pu at 0.4 seconds, then the cumulative time the voltage is above 1.15 pu voltage is 0.1 seconds and is within the no trip zone of the curve.
4. The curves depicted assume system frequency is 60 Hertz. When evaluating Volts/Hertz protection, you may adjust the magnitude of the high voltage curve in proportion to deviations of frequency below 60 Hz.
5. Voltages in the curve assume minimum fundamental frequency phase-to-ground or phase-to-phase voltage for the low voltage duration curve and the greater of maximum RMS or crest phase-to-phase voltage for the high voltage duration curve.

Evaluating Protective Relay Settings:

1. Use either the following assumptions or loading conditions that are believed to be the most probable for the unit under study to evaluate voltage protection relay setting calculations on the static case for steady state initial conditions:
   a. All of the units connected to the same transformer are online and operating.
   b. All of the units are at full nameplate real-power output.
   c. Power factor is 0.95 lagging (i.e. supplying reactive power to the system) as measured at the generator terminals.
   d. The automatic voltage regulator is in automatic voltage control mode.
2. Evaluate voltage protection relay settings assuming that additional installed generating plant reactive support equipment (such as static VAr compensators, synchronous condensers, or capacitors) is available and operating normally.
3. Evaluate voltage protection relay settings accounting for the actual tap settings of transformers between the generator terminals and the point of interconnection.

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for Footnotes 4 and 6

The SDT has determined it is appropriate to require that protective relay settings applied on both the individual generating units and aggregating equipment (including any non-Bulk Electric System collection system equipment) are set respecting the “no-trip zone” referenced in the requirements to maintain reliability of the BES. If any of the protective relay settings applied on these elements of the facility were to be excluded from this standard, the potential would exist for portions of or the entire generating capacity of the dispersed power producing facility to be lost during a voltage or frequency excursion.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-024-2 — Generator Frequency and Voltage Protective Relay Settings

<u>United States</u>

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-024-2	All	07/01/2016	

Reliability Standard VAR-002-4

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Generator Operation for Maintaining Network Voltage Schedules**
2. **Number:** VAR-002-4
3. **Purpose:** To ensure generators provide reactive support and voltage control, within generating Facility capabilities, in order to protect equipment and maintain reliable operation of the Interconnection.
4. **Applicability:**
   - **4.1.** Generator Operator
   - **4.2.** Generator Owner
5. **Effective Dates**

   See Implementation Plan.

B. Requirements and Measures

R1. The Generator Operator shall operate each generator connected to the interconnected transmission system in the automatic voltage control mode (with its automatic voltage regulator (AVR) in service and controlling voltage) or in a different control mode as instructed by the Transmission Operator unless: 1) the generator is exempted by the Transmission Operator, or 2) the Generator Operator has notified the Transmission Operator of one of the following: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

- That the generator is being operated in start-up,[1] shutdown,[2] or testing mode pursuant to a Real-time communication or a procedure that was previously provided to the Transmission Operator; or
- That the generator is not being operated in automatic voltage control mode or in the control mode that was instructed by the Transmission Operator for a reason other than start-up, shutdown, or testing.

M1. The Generator Operator shall have evidence to show that it notified its associated Transmission Operator any time it failed to operate a generator in the automatic voltage control mode or in a different control mode as specified in Requirement R1. If a generator is being started up or shut down with the automatic voltage control off, or is being tested, and no notification of the AVR status is made to the Transmission Operator, the Generator Operator will have evidence that it notified the Transmission Operator of its procedure for placing the unit into automatic voltage control mode as required in Requirement R1. Such evidence may include, but is not limited to, dated evidence of transmittal of the procedure such as an electronic message or a transmittal letter with the procedure included or attached. If a generator is exempted, the Generator Operator shall also have evidence that the generator is exempted from being in automatic voltage control mode (with its AVR in service and controlling voltage).

R2. Unless exempted by the Transmission Operator, each Generator Operator shall maintain the generator voltage or Reactive Power schedule[3] (within each generating Facility's capabilities[4]) provided by the Transmission Operator, or otherwise shall meet the conditions of notification for deviations from the voltage or Reactive Power schedule provided by the Transmission Operator. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

2.1. When a generator's AVR is out of service or the generator does not have an AVR, the Generator Operator shall use an alternative method to control the generator reactive output to meet the voltage or Reactive Power schedule provided by the Transmission Operator.

2.2. When instructed to modify voltage, the Generator Operator shall comply or provide an explanation of why the schedule cannot be met.

2.3. Generator Operators that do not monitor the voltage at the location specified in their voltage schedule shall have a methodology for converting the scheduled voltage specified by the Transmission Operator to the voltage point being monitored by the Generator Operator.

M2. In order to identify when a generator is deviating from its schedule, the Generator Operator will monitor voltage based on existing equipment at its Facility. The Generator Operator shall have evidence to show that the generator maintained the voltage or Reactive Power schedule provided by the Transmission Operator, or shall have evidence of meeting the conditions of notification for deviations from the voltage or Reactive Power schedule provided by the Transmission Operator. Evidence may include, but is not limited to, operator logs, SCADA data, phone logs, and any other notifications that would alert the Transmission Operator or otherwise demonstrate that the Generator Operator complied with the Transmission Operator's instructions for addressing deviations from the voltage or Reactive Power schedule.

For Part 2.1, when a generator's AVR is out of service or the generator does not have an AVR, a Generator Operator shall have evidence to show an alternative method was used to control the generator reactive output to meet the voltage or Reactive Power schedule provided by the Transmission Operator.

---

[1] Start-up is deemed to have ended when the generator is ramped up to its minimum continuously sustainable load and the generator is prepared for continuous operation.
[2] Shutdown is deemed to begin when the generator is ramped down to its minimum continuously sustainable load and the generator is prepared to go offline.
[3] The voltage or Reactive Power schedule is a target value with a tolerance band or a voltage or Reactive Power range communicated by the Transmission Operator to the Generator Operator.
[4] Generating Facility capability may be established by test or other means, and may not be sufficient at times to pull the system voltage within the schedule tolerance band. Also, when a generator is operating in manual control, reactive power capability may change based on stability considerations.

For Part 2.2, the Generator Operator shall have evidence that it complied with the Transmission Operator's instructions to modify its voltage or provided an explanation to the Transmission Operator of why the Generator Operator was unable to comply with the instruction. Evidence may include, but is not limited to, operator logs, SCADA data, and phone logs.

For Part 2.3, for Generator Operators that do not monitor the voltage at the location specified on the voltage schedule, the Generator Operator shall demonstrate the methodology for converting the scheduled voltage specified by the Transmission Operator to the voltage point being monitored by the Generator Operator.

R3. Each Generator Operator shall notify its associated Transmission Operator of a status change on the AVR, power system stabilizer, or alternative voltage controlling device within 30 minutes of the change. If the status has been restored within 30 minutes of such change, then the Generator Operator is not required to notify the Transmission Operator of the status change *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

M3. The Generator Operator shall have evidence it notified its associated Transmission Operator within 30 minutes of any status change identified in Requirement R3. If the status has been restored within the first 30 minutes, no notification is necessary.

R4. Each Generator Operator shall notify its associated Transmission Operator within 30 minutes of becoming aware of a change in reactive capability due to factors other than a status change described in Requirement R3. If the capability has been restored within 30 minutes of the Generator Operator becoming aware of such change, then the Generator Operator is not required to notify the Transmission Operator of the change in reactive capability. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

- Reporting of status or capability changes as stated in Requirement R4 is not applicable to the individual generating units of dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition.

M4. The Generator Operator shall have evidence it notified its associated Transmission Operator within 30 minutes of becoming aware of a change in reactive capability in accordance with Requirement R4. If the capability has been restored within the first 30 minutes, no notification is necessary.

R5. The Generator Owner shall provide the following to its associated Transmission Operator and Transmission Planner within 30 calendar days of a request. *[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

5.1. For generator step-up and auxiliary transformers[5] with primary voltages equal to or greater than the generator terminal voltage:

5.1.1. Tap settings.

5.1.2. Available fixed tap ranges.

5.1.3. Impedance data.

M5. The Generator Owner shall have evidence it provided its associated Transmission Operator and Transmission Planner with information on its step-up and auxiliary transformers as required in Requirement R5, Part 5.1.1 through Part 5.1.3 within 30 calendar days.

R6. After consultation with the Transmission Operator regarding necessary step-up transformer tap changes, the Generator Owner shall ensure that transformer tap positions are changed according to the specifications provided by the Transmission Operator, unless such action would violate safety, an equipment rating, a regulatory requirement, or a statutory requirement. *[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*

6.1. If the Generator Owner cannot comply with the Transmission Operator's specifications, the Generator Owner shall notify the Transmission Operator and shall provide the technical justification.

M6. The Generator Owner shall have evidence that its step-up transformer taps were modified per the Transmission Operator's documentation in accordance with Requirement R6. The Generator Owner shall have evidence that it notified its associated Transmission Operator when it could not comply with the Transmission Operator's step-up transformer tap specifications in accordance with Requirement R6, Part 6.1.

[5] For dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition, this requirement applies only to those transformers that have at least one winding at a voltage of 100 kV or above.

C. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process:

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority:

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, “Compliance Enforcement Authority” refers to NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Evidence Retention:

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Generator Owner shall keep its latest version of documentation on its step-up and auxiliary transformers. The Generator Operator shall maintain all other evidence for the current and previous calendar year.

The Compliance Monitor shall retain any audit data for three years.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes:

“Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes” refers to the identification of the processes that will be used to evaluate data or information for the purpose of assessing performance or outcomes with the associated reliability standard.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information:

None.

Table of Compliance Elements

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	**Real-time Operations**	**Medium**	N/A	N/A	N/A	Unless exempted, the Generator Operator did not operate each generator connected to the interconnected transmission system in the automatic voltage control mode or in a different control mode as instructed by the Transmission Operator, and failed to provide the required notifications to Transmission Operator as identified in Requirement R1.
R2	**Real-time Operations**	**Medium**	N/A	N/A	The Generator Operator did not have a conversion methodology when it monitors voltage at a location different from the schedule provided by the Transmission Operator.	The Generator Operator did not maintain the voltage or Reactive Power schedule as instructed by the Transmission Operator and did not make the necessary notifications required by the Transmission Operator. OR The Generator Operator did not have an operating AVR, and the responsible entity did not use an alternative method for controlling voltage. OR The Generator Operator did not modify voltage when directed, and the

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
						responsible entity did not provide any explanation.
R3	**Real-time Operations**	**Medium**	N/A	N/A	N/A	The Generator Operator did not make the required notification within 30 minutes of the status change.
R4	**Real-time Operations**	**Medium**	N/A	N/A	N/A	The Generator Operator did not make the required notification within 30 minutes of becoming aware of the capability change.
R5	**Real-time Operations**	**Lower**	N/A	N/A	The Generator Owner failed to provide its associated Transmission Operator and Transmission Planner one of the types of data specified in Requirement R5 Parts 5.1.1, 5.1.2, and 5.1.3.	The Generator Owner failed to provide to its associated Transmission Operator and Transmission Planner two or more of the types of data specified in Requirement R5 Parts 5.1.1, 5.1.2, and 5.1.3.
R6	**Real-time Operations**	**Lower**	N/A	N/A	N/A	The Generator Owner did not ensure the tap changes were made according the Transmission Operator's specifications.

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
						OR The Generator Owner failed to perform the tap changes, and the Generator Owner did not provide technical justification for why it could not comply with the Transmission Operator specifications.

D. Regional Variances

None.

E. Interpretations

None.

F. Associated Documents

None.

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
1	5/1/2006	Added "(R2)" to the end of levels on non-compliance 2.1.2, 2.2.2, 2.3.2, and 2.4.3.	July 5, 2006
1a	12/19/2007	Added Appendix 1 – Interpretation of R1 and R2 approved by BOT on August 1, 2007	Revised
1a	1/16/2007	In Section A.2., Added "a" to end of standard number. Section F: added "1."; and added date.	Errata
1.1a	10/29/2008	BOT adopted errata changes; updated version number to "1.1a"	Errata
1.1b	3/3/2009	Added Appendix 2 – Interpretation of VAR-002-1.1a approved by BOT on February 10, 2009	Revised
2b	4/16/2013	Revised R1 to address an Interpretation Request. Also added previously approved VRFs, Time Horizons and VSLs. Revised R2 to address consistency issue with VAR-001-2, R4. FERC Order issued approving VAR-002-2b.	Revised
3	5/5/2014	Revised under Project 2013-04 to address outstanding Order 693 directives.	Revised
3	5/7/2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
3	8/1/2014	Approved by FERC in docket RD14-11-000	
4	8/27/2014	Revised under Project 2014-01 to clarify applicability of Requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources.	Revised

4	11/13/2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
4	5/29/2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving VAR-002-4	

Guidelines and Technical Basis

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for R1:

This requirement has been maintained due to the importance of running a unit with its automatic voltage regulator (AVR) in service and in either voltage controlling mode or the mode instructed by the TOP. However, the requirement has been modified to allow for testing, and the measure has been updated to include some of the evidence that can be used for compliance purposes.

Rationale for R2:

Requirement R2 details how a Generator Operator (GOP) operates its generator(s) to provide voltage support and when the GOP is expected to notify the Transmission Operator (TOP). In an effort to remove prescriptive notification requirements for the entire continent, the VAR-002-3 standard drafting team (SDT) opted to allow each TOP to determine the notification requirements for each of its respective GOPs based on system requirements. Additionally, a new Part 2.3 has been added to detail that each GOP may monitor voltage by using its existing facility equipment.

Conversion Methodology: There are many ways to convert the voltage schedule from one voltage level to another. Some entities may choose to develop voltage regulation curves for their transformers; others may choose to do a straight ratio conversion; others may choose an entirely different methodology. All of these methods have technical challenges, but the studies performed by the TOP, which consider N-1 and credible N-2 contingencies, should compensate for the error introduced by these methodologies, and the TOP possesses the authority to direct the GOP to modify its output if its performance is not satisfactory. During a significant system event, such as a voltage collapse, even a generation unit in automatic voltage control that controls based on the low-side of the generator step-up transformer should see the event on the low-side of the generator step-up transformer and respond accordingly.

Voltage Schedule Tolerances: The bandwidth that accompanies the voltage target in a voltage schedule should reflect the anticipated fluctuation in voltage at the GOP's Facility during normal operations and be based on the TOP's assessment of N-1 and credible N-2 system contingencies. The voltage schedule's bandwidth should not be confused with the control dead-band that is programmed into a GOP's AVR control system, which should be adjusting the AVR prior to reaching either end of the voltage schedule's bandwidth.

Rationale for R3:

This requirement has been modified to limit the notifications required when an AVR goes out of service and quickly comes back in service. Notifications of this type of status change provide little to no benefit to reliability. Thirty (30) minutes have been built into the requirement to allow a GOP time to resolve an issue before having to notify the TOP of a status change. The requirement has also been amended to remove the sub-requirement to provide an estimate for the expected duration of the status change.

Rationale for R4:

This requirement has been bifurcated from the prior version VAR-002-2b Requirement R3. This requirement allows GOPs to report reactive capability changes after they are made aware of the change. The current standard requires notification as soon as the change occurs, but many GOPs are not aware of a reactive capability change until it has taken place.

Rationale for Exclusion in R4:

VAR-002 addresses control and management of reactive resources and provides voltage control where it has an impact on the BES. For dispersed power producing resources as identified in Inclusion I4, Requirement R4 should not apply at the individual generator level due to the unique characteristics and small scale of individual dispersed power producing resources. In addition, other standards such as proposed TOP-003 require the Generator Operator to provide Real-time data as directed by the TOP.

Rationale for R5:

This requirement and corresponding measure have been maintained due to the importance of having accurate tap settings. If the tap setting is not properly set, then the VARs available from that unit can be affected. The prior version of VAR-002-2b, Requirement R4.1.4 (the +/- voltage range with step-change in % for load-tap changing transformers) has been removed. The percentage information was not needed because the tap settings, ranges and impedance are required. Those inputs can be used to calculate the step-change percentage if needed.

Rationale for Exclusion in R5:

The Transmission Operator and Transmission Planner only need to review tap settings, available fixed tap ranges, impedance data and the +/- voltage range with step-change in % for load-tap changing transformers on main generator step-up unit transformers which connect dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition to their transmission system. The dispersed power producing resources individual generator transformers are not intended, designed or installed to improve voltage performance at the point of interconnection. In addition, the dispersed power producing resources individual generator transformers have traditionally been excluded from Requirement R4 and R5 of VAR- 002-2b (similar requirements are R5 and R6 for VAR-002-3), as they are not used to improve voltage performance at the point of interconnection.

Rationale for R6:

This requirement and corresponding measure have been maintained due to the importance of having accurate tap settings. If the tap setting is not properly set, then the VARs available from that unit can be affected.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard VAR-002-4 — Generator Operation for Maintaining Network Voltage Schedules

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
VAR-002-4	All	05/29/2015	

Exhibit A (3): Updated *NERC Glossary of Terms*

NORTH AMERICAN ELECTRIC RELIABILITY CORPORATION

Glossary of Terms Used in NERC Reliability Standards

Updated May 19, 2015

Introduction:

This Glossary lists each term that was defined for use in one or more of NERC's continent-wide or Regional Reliability Standards and adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees from February 8, 2005 through May 19, 2015.

This reference is divided into two sections, and each section is organized in alphabetical order. The first section identifies all terms that have been adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees for use in continent-wide standards; the second section identifies all terms that have been adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees for use in regional standards. (WECC, NPCC and RF are the only Regions that have definitions approved by the NERC Board of Trustees. If other Regions develop definitions for approved Regional Standards using a NERC-approved standards development process, those definitions will be added to the Regional Definitions section of this glossary.)

Most of the terms identified in this glossary were adopted as part of the development of NERC's initial set of reliability standards, called the "Version 0" standards. Subsequent to the development of Version 0 standards, new definitions have been developed and approved following NERC's Reliability Standards Development Process, and added to this glossary following board adoption, with the "FERC approved" date added following a final Order approving the definition.

Immediately under each term is a link to the archive for the development of that term.

- Definitions that have been adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees but have not been approved by FERC, or FERC has not approved but has directed be modified, are shaded in blue.
- Definitions that have been remanded or retired are shaded in orange.
- Definitions that have been approved by FERC are white.

Any comments regarding this glossary should be reported to the following: sarcomm@nerc.com with "Glossary Comment" in the subject line.

Continent-wide Definitions:

Regional Definitions:

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approval Date	FERC Approval Date	Definition
Adequacy [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The ability of the electric system to supply the aggregate electrical demand and energy requirements of the end-use customers at all times, taking into account scheduled and reasonably expected unscheduled outages of system elements.
Adjacent Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A Balancing Authority Area that is interconnected another Balancing Authority Area either directly or via a multi-party agreement or transmission tariff.
Adjacent Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	A Balancing Authority whose Balancing Authority Area is interconnected with another Balancing Authority Area either directly or via a multi-party agreement or transmission tariff.
Adverse Reliability Impact [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	The impact of an event that results in frequency-related instability; unplanned tripping of load or generation; or uncontrolled separation or cascading outages that affects a widespread area of the Interconnection.
Adverse Reliability Impact [Archive]		8/4/2011		The impact of an event that results in Bulk Electric System instability or Cascading.
After the Fact [Archive]	ATF	10/29/2008	12/17/2009	A time classification assigned to an RFI when the submittal time is greater than one hour after the start time of the RFI.
Agreement [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A contract or arrangement, either written or verbal and sometimes enforceable by law.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approval Date	FERC Approval Date	Definition
Alternative Interpersonal Communication [Archive]		11/7/2012	4/16/2015 (Becomes effective 10/1/2015)	Any Interpersonal Communication that is able to serve as a substitute for, and does not utilize the same infrastructure (medium) as, Interpersonal Communication used for day-to-day operation.
Altitude Correction Factor [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	A multiplier applied to specify distances, which adjusts the distances to account for the change in relative air density (RAD) due to altitude from the RAD used to determine the specified distance. Altitude correction factors apply to both minimum worker approach distances and to minimum vegetation clearance distances.
Ancillary Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Those services that are necessary to support the transmission of capacity and energy from resources to loads while maintaining reliable operation of the Transmission Service Provider's transmission system in accordance with good utility practice. (*From FERC order 888-A.*)
Anti-Aliasing Filter [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An analog filter installed at a metering point to remove the high frequency components of the signal over the AGC sample period.
Area Control Error [Archive]	ACE	2/8/2005	3/16/2007 (Becomes inactive 3/31/14)	The instantaneous difference between a Balancing Authority's net actual and scheduled interchange, taking into account the effects of Frequency Bias and correction for meter error.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approval Date	FERC Approval Date	Definition
Area Control Error [Archive]	ACE	12/19/2012	10/16/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2014)	The instantaneous difference between a Balancing Authority's net actual and scheduled interchange, taking into account the effects of Frequency Bias, correction for meter error, and Automatic Time Error Correction (ATEC), if operating in the ATEC mode. ATEC is only applicable to Balancing Authorities in the Western Interconnection.
Area Interchange Methodology [Archive]		08/22/2008	11/24/2009	The Area Interchange methodology is characterized by determination of incremental transfer capability via simulation, from which Total Transfer Capability (TTC) can be mathematically derived. Capacity Benefit Margin, Transmission Reliability Margin, and Existing Transmission Commitments are subtracted from the TTC, and Postbacks and counterflows are added, to derive Available Transfer Capability. Under the Area Interchange Methodology, TTC results are generally reported on an area to area basis.
Arranged Interchange [Archive]		5/2/2006	3/16/2007	The state where the Interchange Authority has received the Interchange information (initial or revised).
Arranged Interchange [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	The state where a Request for Interchange (initial or revised) has been submitted for approval.
Attaining Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	A Balancing Authority bringing generation or load into its effective control boundaries through a Dynamic Transfer from the Native Balancing Authority.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approval Date	FERC Approval Date	Definition
Automatic Generation Control [Archive]	AGC	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Equipment that automatically adjusts generation in a Balancing Authority Area from a central location to maintain the Balancing Authority's interchange schedule plus Frequency Bias. AGC may also accommodate automatic inadvertent payback and time error correction.
Available Flowgate Capability [Archive]	AFC	08/22/2008	11/24/2009	A measure of the flow capability remaining on a Flowgate for further commercial activity over and above already committed uses. It is defined as TFC less Existing Transmission Commitments (ETC), less a Capacity Benefit Margin, less a Transmission Reliability Margin, plus Postbacks, and plus counterflows.
Available Transfer Capability [Archive]	ATC	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A measure of the transfer capability remaining in the physical transmission network for further commercial activity over and above already committed uses. It is defined as Total Transfer Capability less existing transmission commitments (including retail customer service), less a Capacity Benefit Margin, less a Transmission Reliability Margin.
Available Transfer Capability [Archive]	ATC	08/22/2008	11/24/2009	A measure of the transfer capability remaining in the physical transmission network for further commercial activity over and above already committed uses. It is defined as Total Transfer Capability less Existing Transmission Commitments (including retail customer service), less a Capacity Benefit Margin, less a Transmission Reliability Margin, plus Postbacks, plus counterflows.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approval Date	FERC Approval Date	Definition
Available Transfer Capability Implementation Document [Archive]	ATCID	08/22/2008	11/24/2009	A document that describes the implementation of a methodology for calculating ATC or AFC, and provides information related to a Transmission Service Provider's calculation of ATC or AFC.
ATC Path [Archive]		08/22/2008	Not approved; Modification directed 11/24/09	Any combination of Point of Receipt and Point of Delivery for which ATC is calculated; and any Posted Path[1].

[1] See 18 CFR 37.6(b)(1)

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Balancing Authority [Archive]	BA	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The responsible entity that integrates resource plans ahead of time, maintains load-interchange-generation balance within a Balancing Authority Area, and supports Interconnection frequency in real time.
Balancing Authority Area [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The collection of generation, transmission, and loads within the metered boundaries of the Balancing Authority. The Balancing Authority maintains load-resource balance within this area.
Base Load [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The minimum amount of electric power delivered or required over a given period at a constant rate.
BES Cyber Asset [Archive]		11/26/2012	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	A Cyber Asset that if rendered unavailable, degraded, or misused would, within 15 minutes of its required operation, misoperation, or non-operation, adversely impact one or more Facilities, systems, or equipment, which, if destroyed, degraded, or otherwise rendered unavailable when needed, would affect the reliable operation of the Bulk Electric System. Redundancy of affected Facilities, systems, and equipment shall not be considered when determining adverse impact. Each BES Cyber Asset is included in one or more BES Cyber Systems. (A Cyber Asset is not a BES Cyber Asset if, for 30 consecutive calendar days or less, it is directly connected to a network within an ESP, a Cyber Asset within an ESP, or to a BES Cyber Asset, and it is used for data transfer, vulnerability assessment, maintenance, or troubleshooting purposes.)

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
BES Cyber Asset [Archive]	BCA	2/12/2015		A Cyber Asset that if rendered unavailable, degraded, or misused would, within 15 minutes of its required operation, misoperation, or non-operation, adversely impact one or more Facilities, systems, or equipment, which, if destroyed, degraded, or otherwise rendered unavailable when needed, would affect the reliable operation of the Bulk Electric System. Redundancy of affected Facilities, systems, and equipment shall not be considered when determining adverse impact. Each BES Cyber Asset is included in one or more BES Cyber Systems.
BES Cyber System [Archive]		11/26/2012	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	One or more BES Cyber Assets logically grouped by a responsible entity to perform one or more reliability tasks for a functional entity.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
BES Cyber System Information [Archive]		11/26/2012	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	Information about the BES Cyber System that could be used to gain unauthorized access or pose a security threat to the BES Cyber System. BES Cyber System Information does not include individual pieces of information that by themselves do not pose a threat or could not be used to allow unauthorized access to BES Cyber Systems, such as, but not limited to, device names, individual IP addresses without context, ESP names, or policy statements. Examples of BES Cyber System Information may include, but are not limited to, security procedures or security information about BES Cyber Systems, Physical Access Control Systems, and Electronic Access Control or Monitoring Systems that is not publicly available and could be used to allow unauthorized access or unauthorized distribution; collections of network addresses; and network topology of the BES Cyber System.
Blackstart Capability Plan [Archive]		2/8/2005 Will be retired when EOP-005-2 becomes enforceable on (7/1/13)	3/16/2007	A documented procedure for a generating unit or station to go from a shutdown condition to an operating condition delivering electric power without assistance from the electric system. This procedure is only a portion of an overall system restoration plan.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Blackstart Resource [Archive]		8/5/2009	3/17/2011	A generating unit(s) and its associated set of equipment which has the ability to be started without support from the System or is designed to remain energized without connection to the remainder of the System, with the ability to energize a bus, meeting the Transmission Operator's restoration plan needs for real and reactive power capability, frequency and voltage control, and that has been included in the Transmission Operator's restoration plan.
Block Dispatch [Archive]		08/22/2008	11/24/2009	A set of dispatch rules such that given a specific amount of load to serve, an approximate generation dispatch can be determined. To accomplish this, the capacity of a given generator is segmented into loadable "blocks," each of which is grouped and ordered relative to other blocks (based on characteristics including, but not limited to, efficiency, run of river or fuel supply considerations, and/or "must-run" status).
Bulk Electric System [Archive]	BES	2/8/2005	3/16/2007 (Becomes inactive on 6/30/2014)	As defined by the Regional Reliability Organization, the electrical generation resources, transmission lines, interconnections with neighboring systems, and associated equipment, generally operated at voltages of 100 kV or higher. Radial transmission facilities serving only load with one transmission source are generally not included in this definition.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Bulk Electric System[2] [Archive]	BES	01/18/2012	6/14/2013 (Replaced by BES definition FERC approved 3/20/2014)	Unless modified by the lists shown below, all Transmission Elements operated at 100 kV or higher and Real Power and Reactive Power resources connected at 100 kV or higher. This does not include facilities used in the local distribution of electric energy. **Inclusions:** • **I1** - Transformers with the primary terminal and at least one secondary terminal operated at 100 kV or higher unless excluded under Exclusion E1 or E3. • **I2** - Generating resource(s) with gross individual nameplate rating greater than 20 MVA or gross plant/facility aggregate nameplate rating greater than 75 MVA including the generator terminals through the high-side of the step-up transformer(s) connected at a voltage of 100 kV or above. • **I3** - Blackstart Resources identified in the Transmission Operator's restoration plan. • **I4** - Dispersed power producing resources with aggregate capacity greater than 75 MVA (gross aggregate nameplate rating) utilizing a system designed primarily for aggregating capacity, connected at a common point at a voltage of 100 kV or above.

[2] FERC issued an order on April 18, 2013 approving the revised definition with an effective date of July 1, 2013. On June 14, 2013, FERC granted NERC's request to extend the effective date of the revised definition of the Bulk Electric System to July 1, 2014.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Bulk Electric System **(Continued)**	BES			**I5** –Static or dynamic devices (excluding generators) dedicated to supplying or absorbing Reactive Power that are connected at 100 kV or higher, or through a dedicated transformer with a high-side voltage of 100 kV or higher, or through a transformer that is designated in Inclusion I1. **Exclusions:** • **E1** - Radial systems: A group of contiguous transmission Elements that emanates from a single point of connection of 100 kV or higher and: a) Only serves Load. Or, b) Only includes generation resources, not identified in Inclusion I3, with an aggregate capacity less than or equal to 75 MVA (gross nameplate rating). Or, c) Where the radial system serves Load and includes generation resources, not identified in Inclusion I3, with an aggregate capacity of non-retail generation less than or equal to 75 MVA (gross nameplate rating). Note – A normally open switching device between radial systems, as depicted on prints or one-line diagrams for example, does not affect this exclusion.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Bulk Electric System **(Continued)**	BES			**E2** - A generating unit or multiple generating units on the customer's side of the retail meter that serve all or part of the retail Load with electric energy if: (i) the net capacity provided to the BES does not exceed 75 MVA, and (ii) standby, back-up, and maintenance power services are provided to the generating unit or multiple generating units or to the retail Load by a Balancing Authority, or provided pursuant to a binding obligation with a Generator Owner or Generator Operator, or under terms approved by the applicable regulatory authority. **E3** - Local networks (LN): A group of contiguous transmission Elements operated at or above 100 kV but less than 300 kV that distribute power to Load rather than transfer bulk power across the interconnected system. LN's emanate from multiple points of connection at 100 kV or higher to improve the level of service to retail customer Load and not to accommodate bulk power transfer across the interconnected system. The LN is characterized by all of the following:

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Bulk Electric System **(Continued)**	BES			a) Limits on connected generation: The LN and its underlying Elements do not include generation resources identified in Inclusion I3 and do not have an aggregate capacity of non-retail generation greater than 75 MVA (gross nameplate rating); b) Power flows only into the LN and the LN does not transfer energy originating outside the LN for delivery through the LN; and c) Not part of a Flowgate or transfer path: The LN does not contain a monitored Facility of a permanent Flowgate in the Eastern Interconnection, a major transfer path within the Western Interconnection, or a comparable monitored Facility in the ERCOT or Quebec Interconnections, and is not a monitored Facility included in an Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit (IROL). • **E4** – Reactive Power devices owned and operated by the retail customer solely for its own use. Note - Elements may be included or excluded on a case-by-case basis through the Rules of Procedure exception process.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Bulk Electric System [Archive]	BES	11/21/2013	3/20/14 (Becomes effective 7/1/2014) (Please see the Imple-mentation Plan for Phase 2 Compliance obligations.)	Unless modified by the lists shown below, all Transmission Elements operated at 100 kV or higher and Real Power and Reactive Power resources connected at 100 kV or higher. This does not include facilities used in the local distribution of electric energy. **Inclusions:** • **I1** - Transformers with the primary terminal and at least one secondary terminal operated at 100 kV or higher unless excluded by application of Exclusion E1 or E3. • **I2** – Generating resource(s) including the generator terminals through the high-side of the step-up transformer(s) connected at a voltage of 100 kV or above with: a) Gross individual nameplate rating greater than 20 MVA. Or, b) Gross plant/facility aggregate nameplate rating greater than 75 MVA. • **I3** - Blackstart Resources identified in the Transmission Operator's restoration plan. • **I4** - Dispersed power producing resources that aggregate to a total capacity greater than 75 MVA (gross nameplate rating), and that are connected through a system designed primarily for delivering such capacity to a common point of connection at a voltage of 100 kV or above. Thus, the facilities designated as BES are:

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Bulk Electric System **(Continued)**	BES			a) The individual resources, and b) The system designed primarily for delivering capacity from the point where those resources aggregate to greater than 75 MVA to a common point of connection at a voltage of 100 kV or above. • **I5** –Static or dynamic devices (excluding generators) dedicated to supplying or absorbing Reactive Power that are connected at 100 kV or higher, or through a dedicated transformer with a high-side voltage of 100 kV or higher, or through a transformer that is designated in Inclusion I1 unless excluded by application of Exclusion E4. **Exclusions:** • **E1** - Radial systems: A group of contiguous transmission Elements that emanates from a single point of connection of 100 kV or higher and: a) Only serves Load. Or, b) Only includes generation resources, not identified in Inclusions I2, I3, or I4, with an aggregate capacity less than or equal to 75 MVA (gross nameplate rating). Or, c) Where the radial system serves Load and includes generation resources, not identified in Inclusions I2, I3 or I4, with an aggregate capacity of non-retail generation less than or equal to 75 MVA (gross nameplate rating).

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Bulk Electric System **(Continued)**	BES			Note 1 – A normally open switching device between radial systems, as depicted on prints or one-line diagrams for example, does not affect this exclusion. Note 2 – The presence of a contiguous loop, operated at a voltage level of 50 kV or less, between configurations being considered as radial systems, does not affect this exclusion. • **E2** - A generating unit or multiple generating units on the customer's side of the retail meter that serve all or part of the retail Load with electric energy if: (i) the net capacity provided to the BES does not exceed 75 MVA, and (ii) standby, back-up, and maintenance power services are provided to the generating unit or multiple generating units or to the retail Load by a Balancing Authority, or provided pursuant to a binding obligation with a Generator Owner or Generator Operator, or under terms approved by the applicable regulatory authority. • **E3** - Local networks (LN): A group of contiguous transmission Elements operated at less than 300 kV that distribute power to Load rather than transfer bulk power across the interconnected system. LN's emanate from multiple points of connection at 100 kV or higher to improve the level of service to retail customers and not to accommodate bulk power transfer across the interconnected system. The LN is characterized by all of the following: a) Limits on connected generation: The LN and its underlying Elements do not include generation resources identified in Inclusions I2, I3, or I4 and do not have an aggregate capacity of non-retail

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Bulk Electric System **(Continued)**	BES			generation greater than 75 MVA (gross nameplate rating); b) Real Power flows only into the LN and the LN does not transfer energy originating outside the LN for delivery through the LN; and c) Not part of a Flowgate or transfer path: The LN does not contain any part of a permanent Flowgate in the Eastern Interconnection, a major transfer path within the Western Interconnection, or a comparable monitored Facility in the ERCOT or Quebec Interconnections, and is not a monitored Facility included in an Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit (IROL). • **E4** – Reactive Power devices installed for the sole benefit of a retail customer(s). Note - Elements may be included or excluded on a case-by-case basis through the Rules of Procedure exception process.
Bulk-Power System [Archive]		5/9/2013	7/9/2013	A) facilities and control systems necessary for operating an interconnected electric energy transmission network (or any portion thereof); and (B) electric energy from generation facilities needed to maintain transmission system reliability. The term does not include facilities used in the local distribution of electric energy.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Burden [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Operation of the Bulk Electric System that violates or is expected to violate a System Operating Limit or Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit in the Interconnection, or that violates any other NERC, Regional Reliability Organization, or local operating reliability standards or criteria.
Business Practices [Archive]		8/22/2008	Not approved; Modification directed 11/24/2009	Those business rules contained in the Transmission Service Provider's applicable tariff, rules, or procedures; associated Regional Reliability Organization or regional entity business practices; or NAESB Business Practices.
Bus-tie Breaker [Archive]		8/4/2011	10/17/2013 (Becomes effective 1/1/2015)	A circuit breaker that is positioned to connect two individual substation bus configurations.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Capacity Benefit Margin [Archive]	CBM	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The amount of firm transmission transfer capability preserved by the transmission provider for Load-Serving Entities (LSEs), whose loads are located on that Transmission Service Provider's system, to enable access by the LSEs to generation from interconnected systems to meet generation reliability requirements. Preservation of CBM for an LSE allows that entity to reduce its installed generating capacity below that which may otherwise have been necessary without interconnections to meet its generation reliability requirements. The transmission transfer capability preserved as CBM is intended to be used by the LSE only in times of emergency generation deficiencies.
Capacity Benefit Margin Implementation Document [Archive]	CBMID	11/13/2008	11/24/2009	A document that describes the implementation of a Capacity Benefit Margin methodology.
Capacity Emergency [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A capacity emergency exists when a Balancing Authority Area's operating capacity, plus firm purchases from other systems, to the extent available or limited by transfer capability, is inadequate to meet its demand plus its regulating requirements.
Cascading [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The uncontrolled successive loss of system elements triggered by an incident at any location. Cascading results in widespread electric service interruption that cannot be restrained from sequentially spreading beyond an area predetermined by studies.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Cascading Outages [Archive]		11/1/2006 Withdrawn 2/12/2008	FERC Remanded 12/27/2007	~~The uncontrolled successive loss of Bulk Electric System Facilities triggered by an incident (or condition) at any location resulting in the interruption of electric service that cannot be restrained from spreading beyond a pre-determined area.~~
CIP Exceptional Circumstance [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	A situation that involves or threatens to involve one or more of the following, or similar, conditions that impact safety or BES reliability: a risk of injury or death; a natural disaster; civil unrest; an imminent or existing hardware, software, or equipment failure; a Cyber Security Incident requiring emergency assistance; a response by emergency services; the enactment of a mutual assistance agreement; or an impediment of large scale workforce availability.
CIP Senior Manager [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	A single senior management official with overall authority and responsibility for leading and managing implementation of and continuing adherence to the requirements within the NERC CIP Standards, CIP-002 through CIP-011.
Clock Hour [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The 60-minute period ending at :00. All surveys, measurements, and reports are based on Clock Hour periods unless specifically noted.
Cogeneration [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Production of electricity from steam, heat, or other forms of energy produced as a by-product of another process.
Compliance Monitor [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity that monitors, reviews, and ensures compliance of responsible entities with reliability standards.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Composite Confirmed Interchange [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	The energy profile (including non-default ramp) throughout a given time period, based on the aggregate of all Confirmed Interchange occurring in that time period.
Composite Protection System [Archive]		8/14/2014	5/13/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/2016)	The total complement of Protection System(s) that function collectively to protect an Element. Backup protection provided by a different Element's Protection System(s) is excluded.
Confirmed Interchange [Archive]		5/2/2006	3/16/2007	The state where the Interchange Authority has verified the Arranged Interchange.
Confirmed Interchange [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	The state where no party has denied and all required parties have approved the Arranged Interchange.
Congestion Management Report [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A report that the Interchange Distribution Calculator issues when a Reliability Coordinator initiates the Transmission Loading Relief procedure. This report identifies the transactions and native and network load curtailments that must be initiated to achieve the loading relief requested by the initiating Reliability Coordinator.
Consequential Load Loss [Archive]		8/4/2011	10/17/2013 (Becomes effective 1/1/2015)	All Load that is no longer served by the Transmission system as a result of Transmission Facilities being removed from service by a Protection System operation designed to isolate the fault.
Constrained Facility [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A transmission facility (line, transformer, breaker, etc.) that is approaching, is at, or is beyond its System Operating Limit or Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Contingency [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The unexpected failure or outage of a system component, such as a generator, transmission line, circuit breaker, switch or other electrical element.
Contingency Reserve [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The provision of capacity deployed by the Balancing Authority to meet the Disturbance Control Standard (DCS) and other NERC and Regional Reliability Organization contingency requirements.
Contract Path [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An agreed upon electrical path for the continuous flow of electrical power between the parties of an Interchange Transaction.
Control Center [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/13 (Becomes effective 4/1/16)	One or more facilities hosting operating personnel that monitor and control the Bulk Electric System (BES) in real-time to perform the reliability tasks, including their associated data centers, of: 1) a Reliability Coordinator, 2) a Balancing Authority, 3) a Transmission Operator for transmission Facilities at two or more locations, or 4) a Generator Operator for generation Facilities at two or more locations.
Control Performance Standard [Archive]	CPS	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The reliability standard that sets the limits of a Balancing Authority's Area Control Error over a specified time period.
Corrective Action Plan [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	A list of actions and an associated timetable for implementation to remedy a specific problem.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Cranking Path [Archive]		5/2/2006	3/16/2007	A portion of the electric system that can be isolated and then energized to deliver electric power from a generation source to enable the startup of one or more other generating units.
Critical Assets [Archive]		5/2/2006	1/18/2008 (Becomes inactive 3/31/2016)	Facilities, systems, and equipment which, if destroyed, degraded, or otherwise rendered unavailable, would affect the reliability or operability of the Bulk Electric System.
Critical Cyber Assets [Archive]		5/2/2006	1/18/2008 (Becomes inactive 3/31/2016)	Cyber Assets essential to the reliable operation of Critical Assets.
Curtailment [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A reduction in the scheduled capacity or energy delivery of an Interchange Transaction.
Curtailment Threshold [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The minimum Transfer Distribution Factor which, if exceeded, will subject an Interchange Transaction to curtailment to relieve a transmission facility constraint.
Cyber Assets [Archive]		5/2/2006	1/18/2008 (Becomes inactive 3/31/2016)	Programmable electronic devices and communication networks including hardware, software, and data.
Cyber Assets [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	Programmable electronic devices, including the hardware, software, and data in those devices.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Cyber Security Incident [Archive]		5/2/2006	1/18/2008 (Becomes inactive 3/31/2016)	Any malicious act or suspicious event that: • Compromises, or was an attempt to compromise, the Electronic Security Perimeter or Physical Security Perimeter of a Critical Cyber Asset, or, • Disrupts, or was an attempt to disrupt, the operation of a Critical Cyber Asset.
Cyber Security Incident [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	A malicious act or suspicious event that: • Compromises, or was an attempt to compromise, the Electronic Security Perimeter or Physical Security Perimeter or, • Disrupts, or was an attempt to disrupt, the operation of a BES Cyber System.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Delayed Fault Clearing [Archive]		11/1/2006	12/27/2007	Fault clearing consistent with correct operation of a breaker failure protection system and its associated breakers, or of a backup protection system with an intentional time delay.
Demand [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	1. The rate at which electric energy is delivered to or by a system or part of a system, generally expressed in kilowatts or megawatts, at a given instant or averaged over any designated interval of time. 2. The rate at which energy is being used by the customer.
Demand-Side Management [Archive]	DSM	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The term for all activities or programs undertaken by Load-Serving Entity or its customers to influence the amount or timing of electricity they use.
Demand-Side Management [Archive]	DSM	5/6/2014	2/19/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/16)	All activities or programs undertaken by any applicable entity to achieve a reduction in Demand.
Dial-up Connectivity [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	A data communication link that is established when the communication equipment dials a phone number and negotiates a connection with the equipment on the other end of the link.
Direct Control Load Management [Archive]	DCLM	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Demand-Side Management that is under the direct control of the system operator. DCLM may control the electric supply to individual appliances or equipment on customer premises. DCLM as defined here does not include Interruptible Demand.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Dispatch Order [Archive]		08/22/2008	11/24/2009	A set of dispatch rules such that given a specific amount of load to serve, an approximate generation dispatch can be determined. To accomplish this, each generator is ranked by priority.
Dispersed Load by Substations [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Substation load information configured to represent a system for power flow or system dynamics modeling purposes, or both.
Distribution Factor [Archive]	DF	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The portion of an Interchange Transaction, typically expressed in per unit that flows across a transmission facility (Flowgate).
Distribution Provider [Archive]	DP	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Provides and operates the "wires" between the transmission system and the end-use customer. For those end-use customers who are served at transmission voltages, the Transmission Owner also serves as the Distribution Provider. Thus, the Distribution Provider is not defined by a specific voltage, but rather as performing the Distribution function at any voltage.
Disturbance [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	1. An unplanned event that produces an abnormal system condition. 2. Any perturbation to the electric system. 3. The unexpected change in ACE that is caused by the sudden failure of generation or interruption of load.
Disturbance Control Standard [Archive]	DCS	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The reliability standard that sets the time limit following a Disturbance within which a Balancing Authority must return its Area Control Error to within a specified range.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Disturbance Monitoring Equipment [Archive]	DME	8/2/2006	3/16/2007	Devices capable of monitoring and recording system data pertaining to a Disturbance. Such devices include the following categories of recorders[3]: • Sequence of event recorders which record equipment response to the event • Fault recorders, which record actual waveform data replicating the system primary voltages and currents. This may include protective relays. • Dynamic Disturbance Recorders (DDRs), which record incidents that portray power system behavior during dynamic events such as low-frequency (0.1 Hz – 3 Hz) oscillations and abnormal frequency or voltage excursions
Dynamic Interchange Schedule or Dynamic Schedule [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A telemetered reading or value that is updated in real time and used as a schedule in the AGC/ACE equation and the integrated value of which is treated as a schedule for interchange accounting purposes. Commonly used for scheduling jointly owned generation to or from another Balancing Authority Area.
Dynamic Interchange Schedule or Dynamic Schedule [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	A time-varying energy transfer that is updated in Real-time and included in the Scheduled Net Interchange (NIS) term in the same manner as an Interchange Schedule in the affected Balancing Authorities' control ACE equations (or alternate control processes).

[3] Phasor Measurement Units and any other equipment that meets the functional requirements of DMEs may qualify as DMEs.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Dynamic Transfer [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The provision of the real-time monitoring, telemetering, computer software, hardware, communications, engineering, energy accounting (including inadvertent interchange), and administration required to electronically move all or a portion of the real energy services associated with a generator or load out of one Balancing Authority Area into another.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Economic Dispatch [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The allocation of demand to individual generating units on line to effect the most economical production of electricity.
Electronic Access Control or Monitoring Systems [Archive]	EACMS	11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	Cyber Assets that perform electronic access control or electronic access monitoring of the Electronic Security Perimeter(s) or BES Cyber Systems. This includes Intermediate Systems.
Electronic Access Point [Archive]	EAP	11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	A Cyber Asset interface on an Electronic Security Perimeter that allows routable communication between Cyber Assets outside an Electronic Security Perimeter and Cyber Assets inside an Electronic Security Perimeter.
Electrical Energy [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The generation or use of electric power by a device over a period of time, expressed in kilowatthours (kWh), megawatthours (MWh), or gigawatthours (GWh).
Electronic Security Perimeter [Archive]	ESP	5/2/2006	1/18/2008 (Becomes inactive 3/31/2016)	The logical border surrounding a network to which Critical Cyber Assets are connected and for which access is controlled.
Electronic Security Perimeter [Archive]	ESP	11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	The logical border surrounding a network to which BES Cyber Systems are connected using a routable protocol.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Element [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Any electrical device with terminals that may be connected to other electrical devices such as a generator, transformer, circuit breaker, bus section, or transmission line. An element may be comprised of one or more components.
Emergency or BES Emergency [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Any abnormal system condition that requires automatic or immediate manual action to prevent or limit the failure of transmission facilities or generation supply that could adversely affect the reliability of the Bulk Electric System.
Emergency Rating [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The rating as defined by the equipment owner that specifies the level of electrical loading or output, usually expressed in megawatts (MW) or Mvar or other appropriate units, that a system, facility, or element can support, produce, or withstand for a finite period. The rating assumes acceptable loss of equipment life or other physical or safety limitations for the equipment involved.
Emergency Request for Interchange [Archive]	Emergency RFI	10/29/2008	12/17/2009	Request for Interchange to be initiated for Emergency or Energy Emergency conditions.
Energy Emergency [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A condition when a Load-Serving Entity has exhausted all other options and can no longer provide its customers' expected energy requirements.
Energy Emergency [Archive]		11/13/2014		A condition when a Load-Serving Entity or Balancing Authority has exhausted all other resource options and can no longer meet its expected Load obligations.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Equipment Rating [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	The maximum and minimum voltage, current, frequency, real and reactive power flows on individual equipment under steady state, short-circuit and transient conditions, as permitted or assigned by the equipment owner.
External Routable Connectivity [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	The ability to access a BES Cyber System from a Cyber Asset that is outside of its associated Electronic Security Perimeter via a bi-directional routable protocol connection.
Existing Transmission Commitments [Archive]	ETC	08/22/2008	11/24/2009	Committed uses of a Transmission Service Provider's Transmission system considered when determining ATC or AFC.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Facility [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	A set of electrical equipment that operates as a single Bulk Electric System Element (e.g., a line, a generator, a shunt compensator, transformer, etc.)
Facility Rating [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The maximum or minimum voltage, current, frequency, or real or reactive power flow through a facility that does not violate the applicable equipment rating of any equipment comprising the facility.
Fault [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An event occurring on an electric system such as a short circuit, a broken wire, or an intermittent connection.
Fire Risk [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	The likelihood that a fire will ignite or spread in a particular geographic area.
Firm Demand [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	That portion of the Demand that a power supplier is obligated to provide except when system reliability is threatened or during emergency conditions.
Firm Transmission Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The highest quality (priority) service offered to customers under a filed rate schedule that anticipates no planned interruption.
Flashover [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	An electrical discharge through air around or over the surface of insulation, between objects of different potential, caused by placing a voltage across the air space that results in the ionization of the air space.
Flowgate [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A designated point on the transmission system through which the Interchange Distribution Calculator calculates the power flow from Interchange Transactions.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Flowgate [Archive]		08/22/2008	11/24/2009	1.) A portion of the Transmission system through which the Interchange Distribution Calculator calculates the power flow from Interchange Transactions. 2.) A mathematical construct, comprised of one or more monitored transmission Facilities and optionally one or more contingency Facilities, used to analyze the impact of power flows upon the Bulk Electric System.
Flowgate Methodology [Archive]		08/22/2008	11/24/2009	The Flowgate methodology is characterized by identification of key Facilities as Flowgates. Total Flowgate Capabilities are determined based on Facility Ratings and voltage and stability limits. The impacts of Existing Transmission Commitments (ETCs) are determined by simulation. The impacts of ETC, Capacity Benefit Margin (CBM) and Transmission Reliability Margin (TRM) are subtracted from the Total Flowgate Capability, and Postbacks and counterflows are added, to determine the Available Flowgate Capability (AFC) value for that Flowgate. AFCs can be used to determine Available Transfer Capability (ATC).
Forced Outage [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	1. The removal from service availability of a generating unit, transmission line, or other facility for emergency reasons. 2. The condition in which the equipment is unavailable due to unanticipated failure.
Frequency Bias [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A value, usually expressed in megawatts per 0.1 Hertz (MW/0.1 Hz), associated with a Balancing Authority Area that approximates the Balancing Authority Area's response to Interconnection frequency error.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Frequency Bias Setting [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007 (Becomes inactive 3/31/2015)	A value, usually expressed in MW/0.1 Hz, set into a Balancing Authority ACE algorithm that allows the Balancing Authority to contribute its frequency response to the Interconnection.
Frequency Bias Setting [Archive]		2/7/2013	1/16/2014 (Becomes effective 4/1/2015)	A number, either fixed or variable, usually expressed in MW/0.1 Hz, included in a Balancing Authority's Area Control Error equation to account for the Balancing Authority's inverse Frequency Response contribution to the Interconnection, and discourage response withdrawal through secondary control systems.
Frequency Deviation [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A change in Interconnection frequency.
Frequency Error [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The difference between the actual and scheduled frequency. (F_A – F_S)
Frequency Regulation [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The ability of a Balancing Authority to help the Interconnection maintain Scheduled Frequency. This assistance can include both turbine governor response and Automatic Generation Control.
Frequency Response [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	(Equipment) The ability of a system or elements of the system to react or respond to a change in system frequency. (System) The sum of the change in demand, plus the change in generation, divided by the change in frequency, expressed in megawatts per 0.1 Hertz (MW/0.1 Hz).

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Frequency Response Measure [Archive]	FRM	2/7/2013	1/16/2014 (Becomes effective 4/1/2015)	The median of all the Frequency Response observations reported annually by Balancing Authorities or Frequency Response Sharing Groups for frequency events specified by the ERO. This will be calculated as MW/0.1Hz.
Frequency Response Obligation [Archive]	FRO	2/7/2013	1/16/2014 (Becomes effective 4/1/2015)	The Balancing Authority's share of the required Frequency Response needed for the reliable operation of an Interconnection. This will be calculated as MW/0.1Hz.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Frequency Response Sharing Group [Archive]	FRSG	2/7/2013	1/16/2014 (Becomes effective 4/1/2015)	A group whose members consist of two or more Balancing Authorities that collectively maintain, allocate, and supply operating resources required to jointly meet the sum of the Frequency Response Obligations of its members.
Generator Operator [Archive]	GOP	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity that operates generating unit(s) and performs the functions of supplying energy and Interconnected Operations Services.
Generator Owner [Archive]	GO	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Entity that owns and maintains generating units.
Generator Shift Factor [Archive]	GSF	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A factor to be applied to a generator's expected change in output to determine the amount of flow contribution that change in output will impose on an identified transmission facility or Flowgate.
Generator-to-Load Distribution Factor [Archive]	GLDF	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The algebraic sum of a Generator Shift Factor and a Load Shift Factor to determine the total impact of an Interchange Transaction on an identified transmission facility or Flowgate.
Generation Capability Import Requirement [Archive]	GCIR	11/13/2008	11/24/2009	The amount of generation capability from external sources identified by a Load-Serving Entity (LSE) or Resource Planner (RP) to meet its generation reliability or resource adequacy requirements as an alternative to internal resources.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Host Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	1. A Balancing Authority that confirms and implements Interchange Transactions for a Purchasing Selling Entity that operates generation or serves customers directly within the Balancing Authority's metered boundaries. 2. The Balancing Authority within whose metered boundaries a jointly owned unit is physically located.
Hourly Value [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Data measured on a Clock Hour basis.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Implemented Interchange [Archive]		5/2/2006	3/16/2007	The state where the Balancing Authority enters the Confirmed Interchange into its Area Control Error equation.
Inadvertent Interchange [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The difference between the Balancing Authority's Net Actual Interchange and Net Scheduled Interchange. ($I_A - I_S$)
Independent Power Producer [Archive]	IPP	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Any entity that owns or operates an electricity generating facility that is not included in an electric utility's rate base. This term includes, but is not limited to, cogenerators and small power producers and all other nonutility electricity producers, such as exempt wholesale generators, who sell electricity.
Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. [Archive]	IEEE	2/7/2006	3/16/2007	

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Interactive Remote Access [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	User-initiated access by a person employing a remote access client or other remote access technology using a routable protocol. Remote access originates from a Cyber Asset that is not an Intermediate System and not located within any of the Responsible Entity's Electronic Security Perimeter(s) or at a defined Electronic Access Point (EAP). Remote access may be initiated from: 1) Cyber Assets used or owned by the Responsible Entity, 2) Cyber Assets used or owned by employees, and 3) Cyber Assets used or owned by vendors, contractors, or consultants. Interactive remote access does not include system-to-system process communications.
Interchange [Archive]		5/2/2006	3/16/2007	Energy transfers that cross Balancing Authority boundaries.
Interchange Authority [Archive]	IA	5/2/2006	3/16/2007	The responsible entity that authorizes implementation of valid and balanced Interchange Schedules between Balancing Authority Areas, and ensures communication of Interchange information for reliability assessment purposes.
Interchange Distribution Calculator [Archive]	IDC	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The mechanism used by Reliability Coordinators in the Eastern Interconnection to calculate the distribution of Interchange Transactions over specific Flowgates. It includes a database of all Interchange Transactions and a matrix of the Distribution Factors for the Eastern Interconnection.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Interchange Schedule [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An agreed-upon Interchange Transaction size (megawatts), start and end time, beginning and ending ramp times and rate, and type required for delivery and receipt of power and energy between the Source and Sink Balancing Authorities involved in the transaction.
Interchange Transaction [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An agreement to transfer energy from a seller to a buyer that crosses one or more Balancing Authority Area boundaries.
Interchange Transaction Tag or Tag [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The details of an Interchange Transaction required for its physical implementation.
Interconnected Operations Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A service (exclusive of basic energy and transmission services) that is required to support the reliable operation of interconnected Bulk Electric Systems.
Interconnection [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007 (Retires 6/30/2016)	When capitalized, any one of the three major electric system networks in North America: Eastern, Western, and ERCOT.
Interconnection [Archive]		8/15/2013	4/16/2015 (Effective 7/1/2016)	When capitalized, any one of the four major electric system networks in North America: Eastern, Western, ERCOT and Quebec.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit [Archive]	IROL	2/8/2005	3/16/2007 Retired 12/27/2007	The value (such as MW, MVar, Amperes, Frequency or Volts) derived from, or a subset of the System Operating Limits, which if exceeded, could expose a widespread area of the Bulk Electric System to instability, uncontrolled separation(s) or cascading outages.
Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit [Archive]	IROL	11/1/2006	12/27/2007	A System Operating Limit that, if violated, could lead to instability, uncontrolled separation, or Cascading outages[4] that adversely impact the reliability of the Bulk Electric System.
Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit T_v [Archive]	IROL T_v	11/1/2006	12/27/2007	The maximum time that an Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit can be violated before the risk to the interconnection or other Reliability Coordinator Area(s) becomes greater than acceptable. Each Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit's T_v shall be less than or equal to 30 minutes.
Intermediate Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A Balancing Authority Area that has connecting facilities in the Scheduling Path between the Sending Balancing Authority Area and Receiving Balancing Authority Area and operating agreements that establish the conditions for the use of such facilities.
Intermediate Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	A Balancing Authority on the scheduling path of an Interchange Transaction other than the Source Balancing Authority and Sink Balancing Authority.

[4] On September 13, 2012, FERC issued an Order approving NERC's request to modify the reference to "Cascading Outages" to "Cascading outages" within the definition of IROL due to the fact that the definition of "Cascading Outages" was previously remanded by FERC.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Intermediate System [Archive]		11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	A Cyber Asset or collection of Cyber Assets performing access control to restrict Interactive Remote Access to only authorized users. The Intermediate System must not be located inside the Electronic Security Perimeter.
Interpersonal Communication [Archive]		11/7/2012	4/16/2015 (Becomes effective 10/1/2015)	Any medium that allows two or more individuals to interact, consult, or exchange information.
Interruptible Load or Interruptible Demand [Archive]		11/1/2006	3/16/2007	Demand that the end-use customer makes available to its Load-Serving Entity via contract or agreement for curtailment.
Joint Control [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Automatic Generation Control of jointly owned units by two or more Balancing Authorities.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Limiting Element [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The element that is 1.)Either operating at its appropriate rating, or 2,) Would be following the limiting contingency. Thus, the Limiting Element establishes a system limit.
Load [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An end-use device or customer that receives power from the electric system.
Load Shift Factor [Archive]	LSF	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A factor to be applied to a load's expected change in demand to determine the amount of flow contribution that change in demand will impose on an identified transmission facility or monitored Flowgate.
Load-Serving Entity [Archive]	LSE	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Secures energy and transmission service (and related Interconnected Operations Services) to serve the electrical demand and energy requirements of its end-use customers.
Long-Term Transmission Planning Horizon [Archive]		8/4/2011	10/17/2013 (Becomes effective 1/1/2015)	Transmission planning period that covers years six through ten or beyond when required to accommodate any known longer lead time projects that may take longer than ten years to complete.
Low Impact BES Cyber System Electronic Access Point [Archive]	LEAP	2/12/2015		A Cyber Asset interface that controls Low Impact External Routable Connectivity. The Cyber Asset containing the LEAP may reside at a location external to the asset or assets containing low impact BES Cyber Systems.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Low Impact External Routable Connectivity [Archive]	LERC	2/12/2015		Direct user-initiated interactive access or a direct device-to-device connection to a low impact BES Cyber System(s) from a Cyber Asset outside the asset containing those low impact BES Cyber System(s) via a bi-directional routable protocol connection. Point-to-point communications between intelligent electronic devices that use routable communication protocols for time-sensitive protection or control functions between Transmission station or substation assets containing low impact BES Cyber Systems are excluded from this definition (examples of this communication include, but are not limited to, IEC 61850 GOOSE or vendor proprietary protocols).
Market Flow [Archive]		11/4/2010	4/21/2011	The total amount of power flowing across a specified Facility or set of Facilities due to a market dispatch of generation internal to the market to serve load internal to the market.
Minimum Vegetation Clearance Distance [Archive]	MVCD	11/3/2011	3/21/2013 (Becomes effective 7/1/14)	The calculated minimum distance stated in feet (meters) to prevent flash-over between conductors and vegetation, for various altitudes and operating voltages.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Misoperation [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	• Any failure of a Protection System element to operate within the specified time when a fault or abnormal condition occurs within a zone of protection. • Any operation for a fault not within a zone of protection (other than operation as backup protection for a fault in an adjacent zone that is not cleared within a specified time for the protection for that zone). • Any unintentional Protection System operation when no fault or other abnormal condition has occurred unrelated to on-site maintenance and testing activity.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Misoperation [Archive]		8/14/2014	5/13/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/2016)	The failure of a Composite Protection System to operate as intended for protection purposes. Any of the following is a Misoperation: **1. Failure to Trip – During Fault** – A failure of a Composite Protection System to operate for a Fault condition for which it is designed. The failure of a Protection System component is not a Misoperation as long as the performance of the Composite Protection System is correct. **2. Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault** – A failure of a Composite Protection System to operate for a non-Fault condition for which it is designed, such as a power swing, undervoltage, overexcitation, or loss of excitation. The failure of a Protection System component is not a Misoperation as long as the performance of the Composite Protection System is correct. **3. Slow Trip – During Fault** – A Composite Protection System operation that is slower than required for a Fault condition if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. (***continued below***)

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Continued… Misoperation [Archive]		8/14/2014	5/13/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/2016)	4. **Slow Trip – Other Than Fault** – A Composite Protection System operation that is slower than required for a non-Fault condition, such as a power swing, undervoltage, overexcitation, or loss of excitation, if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. 5. **Unnecessary Trip – During Fault** – An unnecessary Composite Protection System operation for a Fault condition on another Element. 6. **Unnecessary Trip – Other Than Fault** – An unnecessary Composite Protection System operation for a non-Fault condition. A Composite Protection System operation that is caused by personnel during on-site maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning activities is not a Misoperation.
Native Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	A Balancing Authority from which a portion of its physically interconnected generation and/or load is transferred from its effective control boundaries to the Attaining Balancing Authority through a Dynamic Transfer.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Native Load [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The end-use customers that the Load-Serving Entity is obligated to serve.
Near-Term Transmission Planning Horizon [Archive]		1/24/2011	11/17/2011	The transmission planning period that covers Year One through five.
Net Actual Interchange [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The algebraic sum of all metered interchange over all interconnections between two physically Adjacent Balancing Authority Areas.
Net Energy for Load [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Net Balancing Authority Area generation, plus energy received from other Balancing Authority Areas, less energy delivered to Balancing Authority Areas through interchange. It includes Balancing Authority Area losses but excludes energy required for storage at energy storage facilities.
Net Interchange Schedule [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The algebraic sum of all Interchange Schedules with each Adjacent Balancing Authority.
Net Scheduled Interchange [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The algebraic sum of all Interchange Schedules across a given path or between Balancing Authorities for a given period or instant in time.
Network Integration Transmission Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Service that allows an electric transmission customer to integrate, plan, economically dispatch and regulate its network reserves in a manner comparable to that in which the Transmission Owner serves Native Load customers.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Non-Consequential Load Loss [Archive]		8/4/2011	10/17/2013 (Becomes effective 1/1/15)	Non-Interruptible Load loss that does not include: (1) Consequential Load Loss, (2) the response of voltage sensitive Load, or (3) Load that is disconnected from the System by end-user equipment.
Non-Firm Transmission Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Transmission service that is reserved on an as-available basis and is subject to curtailment or interruption.
Non-Spinning Reserve [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	1. That generating reserve not connected to the system but capable of serving demand within a specified time. 2. Interruptible load that can be removed from the system in a specified time.
Normal Clearing [Archive]		11/1/2006	12/27/2007	A protection system operates as designed and the fault is cleared in the time normally expected with proper functioning of the installed protection systems.
Normal Rating [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The rating as defined by the equipment owner that specifies the level of electrical loading, usually expressed in megawatts (MW) or other appropriate units that a system, facility, or element can support or withstand through the daily demand cycles without loss of equipment life.
Nuclear Plant Generator Operator [Archive]		5/2/2007	10/16/2008	Any Generator Operator or Generator Owner that is a Nuclear Plant Licensee responsible for operation of a nuclear facility licensed to produce commercial power.
Nuclear Plant Off-site Power Supply (Off-site Power) [Archive]		5/2/2007	10/16/2008	The electric power supply provided from the electric system to the nuclear power plant distribution system as required per the nuclear power plant license.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Nuclear Plant Licensing Requirements [Archive]	NPLRs	5/2/2007	10/16/2008	Requirements included in the design basis of the nuclear plant and statutorily mandated for the operation of the plant, including nuclear power plant licensing requirements for: 1) Off-site power supply to enable safe shutdown of the plant during an electric system or plant event; and 2) Avoiding preventable challenges to nuclear safety as a result of an electric system disturbance, transient, or condition.
Nuclear Plant Interface Requirements [Archive]	NPIRs	5/2/2007	10/16/2008	The requirements based on NPLRs and Bulk Electric System requirements that have been mutually agreed to by the Nuclear Plant Generator Operator and the applicable Transmission Entities.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Off-Peak [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Those hours or other periods defined by NAESB business practices, contract, agreements, or guides as periods of lower electrical demand.
On-Peak [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Those hours or other periods defined by NAESB business practices, contract, agreements, or guides as periods of higher electrical demand.
Open Access Same Time Information Service [Archive]	OASIS	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An electronic posting system that the Transmission Service Provider maintains for transmission access data and that allows all transmission customers to view the data simultaneously.
Open Access Transmission Tariff [Archive]	OATT	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Electronic transmission tariff accepted by the U.S. Federal Energy Regulatory Commission requiring the Transmission Service Provider to furnish to all shippers with non-discriminating service comparable to that provided by Transmission Owners to themselves.
Operating Instruction [Archive]		5/6/2014	4/16/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/2016)	A command by operating personnel responsible for the Real-time operation of the interconnected Bulk Electric System to change or preserve the state, status, output, or input of an Element of the Bulk Electric System or Facility of the Bulk Electric System. (A discussion of general information and of potential options or alternatives to resolve Bulk Electric System operating concerns is not a command and is not considered an Operating Instruction.)

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Operating Plan [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	A document that identifies a group of activities that may be used to achieve some goal. An Operating Plan may contain Operating Procedures and Operating Processes. A company-specific system restoration plan that includes an Operating Procedure for black-starting units, Operating Processes for communicating restoration progress with other entities, etc., is an example of an Operating Plan.
Operating Procedure [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	A document that identifies specific steps or tasks that should be taken by one or more specific operating positions to achieve specific operating goal(s). The steps in an Operating Procedure should be followed in the order in which they are presented, and should be performed by the position(s) identified. A document that lists the specific steps for a system operator to take in removing a specific transmission line from service is an example of an Operating Procedure.
Operating Process [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	A document that identifies general steps for achieving a generic operating goal. An Operating Process includes steps with options that may be selected depending upon Real-time conditions. A guideline for controlling high voltage is an example of an Operating Process.
Operating Reserve [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	That capability above firm system demand required to provide for regulation, load forecasting error, equipment forced and scheduled outages and local area protection. It consists of spinning and non-spinning reserve.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Operating Reserve – Spinning [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The portion of Operating Reserve consisting of: • Generation synchronized to the system and fully available to serve load within the Disturbance Recovery Period following the contingency event; or • Load fully removable from the system within the Disturbance Recovery Period following the contingency event.
Operating Reserve – Supplemental [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The portion of Operating Reserve consisting of: • Generation (synchronized or capable of being synchronized to the system) that is fully available to serve load within the Disturbance Recovery Period following the contingency event; or • Load fully removable from the system within the Disturbance Recovery Period following the contingency event.
Operating Voltage [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	The voltage level by which an electrical system is designated and to which certain operating characteristics of the system are related; also, the effective (root-mean-square) potential difference between any two conductors or between a conductor and the ground. The actual voltage of the circuit may vary somewhat above or below this value.
Operational Planning Analysis [Archive]		10/17/2008	3/17/2011	An analysis of the expected system conditions for the next day's operation. (That analysis may be performed either a day ahead or as much as 12 months ahead.) Expected system conditions include things such as load forecast(s), generation output levels, and known system constraints (transmission facility outages, generator outages, equipment limitations, etc.).

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Operational Planning Analysis [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	An analysis of the expected system conditions for the next day's operation. (That analysis may be performed either a day ahead or as much as 12 months ahead.) Expected system conditions include things such as load forecast(s), generation output levels, Interchange, and known system constraints (transmission facility outages, generator outages, equipment limitations, etc.).
Operational Planning Analysis [Archive]		11/13/2014		An evaluation of projected system conditions to assess anticipated (pre-Contingency) and potential (post-Contingency) conditions for next-day operations. The evaluation shall reflect applicable inputs including, but not limited to, load forecasts; generation output levels; Interchange; known Protection System and Special Protection System status or degradation; Transmission outages; generator outages; Facility Ratings; and identified phase angle and equipment limitations. (Operational Planning Analysis may be provided through internal systems or through third-party services.)
Operations Support Personnel [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/19/2014 (effective 7/1/2016)	Individuals who perform current day or next day outage coordination or assessments, or who determine SOLs, IROLs, or operating nomograms,[1] in direct support of Real-time operations of the Bulk Electric System.
Outage Transfer Distribution Factor [Archive]	OTDF	8/22/2008	11/24/2009	In the post-contingency configuration of a system under study, the electric Power Transfer Distribution Factor (PTDF) with one or more system Facilities removed from service (outaged).

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Overlap Regulation Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A method of providing regulation service in which the Balancing Authority providing the regulation service incorporates another Balancing Authority's actual interchange, frequency response, and schedules into providing Balancing Authority's AGC/ACE equation.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Participation Factors [Archive]		8/22/2008	11/24/2009	A set of dispatch rules such that given a specific amount of load to serve, an approximate generation dispatch can be determined. To accomplish this, generators are assigned a percentage that they will contribute to serve load.
Peak Demand [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	1. The highest hourly integrated Net Energy For Load within a Balancing Authority Area occurring within a given period (e.g., day, month, season, or year). 2. The highest instantaneous demand within the Balancing Authority Area.
Performance-Reset Period [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	The time period that the entity being assessed must operate without any violations to reset the level of non compliance to zero.
Physical Access Control Systems [Archive]	PACS	11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/16)	Cyber Assets that control, alert, or log access to the Physical Security Perimeter(s), exclusive of locally mounted hardware or devices at the Physical Security Perimeter such as motion sensors, electronic lock control mechanisms, and badge readers.
Physical Security Perimeter [Archive]	PSP	5/2/2006	1/18/2008 (Becomes inactive 3/31/16)	The physical, completely enclosed (“six-wall”) border surrounding computer rooms, telecommunications rooms, operations centers, and other locations in which Critical Cyber Assets are housed and for which access is controlled.
Physical Security Perimeter [Archive]	PSP	11/26/12	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/16)	The physical border surrounding locations in which BES Cyber Assets, BES Cyber Systems, or Electronic Access Control or Monitoring Systems reside, and for which access is controlled.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Planning Assessment [Archive]		8/4/2011	10/17/2013 (Becomes effective 1/1/15)	Documented evaluation of future Transmission System performance and Corrective Action Plans to remedy identified deficiencies.
Planning Authority [Archive]	PA	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The responsible entity that coordinates and integrates transmission facility and service plans, resource plans, and protection systems.
Planning Coordinator [Archive]	PC	8/22/2008	11/24/2009	See Planning Authority.
Point of Delivery [Archive]	POD	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A location that the Transmission Service Provider specifies on its transmission system where an Interchange Transaction leaves or a Load-Serving Entity receives its energy.
Point of Receipt [Archive]	POR	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A location that the Transmission Service Provider specifies on its transmission system where an Interchange Transaction enters or a Generator delivers its output.
Point to Point Transmission Service [Archive]	PTP	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The reservation and transmission of capacity and energy on either a firm or non-firm basis from the Point(s) of Receipt to the Point(s) of Delivery.
Postback [Archive]		08/22/2008	Not approved; Modification directed 11/24/09	Positive adjustments to ATC or AFC as defined in Business Practices. Such Business Practices may include processing of redirects and unscheduled service.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Power Transfer Distribution Factor [Archive]	PTDF	08/22/2008	11/24/2009	In the pre-contingency configuration of a system under study, a measure of the responsiveness or change in electrical loadings on transmission system Facilities due to a change in electric power transfer from one area to another, expressed in percent (up to 100%) of the change in power transfer
Pro Forma Tariff [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Usually refers to the standard OATT and/or associated transmission rights mandated by the U.S. Federal Energy Regulatory Commission Order No. 888.
Protected Cyber Assets [Archive]	PCA	11/26/2012	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/16)	One or more Cyber Assets connected using a routable protocol within or on an Electronic Security Perimeter that is not part of the highest impact BES Cyber System within the same Electronic Security Perimeter. The impact rating of Protected Cyber Assets is equal to the highest rated BES Cyber System in the same ESP. A Cyber Asset is not a Protected Cyber Asset if, for 30 consecutive calendar days or less, it is connected either to a Cyber Asset within the ESP or to the network within the ESP, and it is used for data transfer, vulnerability assessment, maintenance, or troubleshooting purposes.
Protected Cyber Assets [Archive]	PCA	2/12/2015		One or more Cyber Assets connected using a routable protocol within or on an Electronic Security Perimeter that is not part of the highest impact BES Cyber System within the same Electronic Security Perimeter. The impact rating of Protected Cyber Assets is equal to the highest rated BES Cyber System in the same ESP.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Protection System [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/17/2007 retired 4/1/2013	Protective relays, associated communication systems, voltage and current sensing devices, station batteries and DC control circuitry.
Protection System [Archive] [Implementation Plan]		11/19/2010	2/3/2012 (Became effective on 4/1/13)	Protection System – • Protective relays which respond to electrical quantities, • Communications systems necessary for correct operation of protective functions • Voltage and current sensing devices providing inputs to protective relays, • Station dc supply associated with protective functions (including station batteries, battery chargers, and non-battery-based dc supply), and • Control circuitry associated with protective functions through the trip coil(s) of the circuit breakers or other interrupting devices.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Protection System Maintenance Program (PRC-005-2) [Archive]	PSMP	11/7/2012	12/19/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2015)	An ongoing program by which Protection System components are kept in working order and proper operation of malfunctioning components is restored. A maintenance program for a specific component includes one or more of the following activities: Verify — Determine that the component is functioning correctly. Monitor — Observe the routine in-service operation of the component. Test — Apply signals to a component to observe functional performance or output behavior, or to diagnose problems. Inspect — Examine for signs of component failure, reduced performance or degradation. Calibrate — Adjust the operating threshold or measurement accuracy of a measuring element to meet the intended performance requirement.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Protection System Maintenance Program (PRC-005-3) [Archive]	PSMP	11/7/2013	1/22/2015 (Becomes effective 4/1/2016)	An ongoing program by which Protection System and automatic reclosing components are kept in working order and proper operation of malfunctioning components is restored. A maintenance program for a specific component includes one or more of the following activities: Verify — Determine that the component is functioning correctly. Monitor — Observe the routine in-service operation of the component. Test — Apply signals to a component to observe functional performance or output behavior, or to diagnose problems. Inspect — Examine for signs of component failure, reduced performance or degradation. Calibrate — Adjust the operating threshold or measurement accuracy of a measuring element to meet the intended performance requirement.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Protection System Maintenance Program (PRC-005-4) [Archive]	PSMP	11/13/2014		An ongoing program by which Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying Components are kept in working order and proper operation of malfunctioning Components is restored. A maintenance program for a specific Component includes one or more of the following activities: • Verify — Determine that the Component is functioning correctly. • Monitor — Observe the routine in-service operation of the Component. • Test — Apply signals to a Component to observe functional performance or output behavior, or to diagnose problems. • Inspect — Examine for signs of Component failure, reduced performance or degradation. • Calibrate — Adjust the operating threshold or measurement accuracy of a measuring element to meet the intended performance requirement.
Pseudo-Tie [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A telemetered reading or value that is updated in real time and used as a "virtual" tie line flow in the AGC/ACE equation but for which no physical tie or energy metering actually exists. The integrated value is used as a metered MWh value for interchange accounting purposes.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Pseudo-Tie [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	A time-varying energy transfer that is updated in Real-time and included in the Actual Net Interchange term (NIA) in the same manner as a Tie Line in the affected Balancing Authorities' control ACE equations (or alternate control processes).
Purchasing-Selling Entity [Archive]	PSE	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity that purchases or sells, and takes title to, energy, capacity, and Interconnected Operations Services. Purchasing-Selling Entities may be affiliated or unaffiliated merchants and may or may not own generating facilities.
Ramp Rate or Ramp [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	(Schedule) The rate, expressed in megawatts per minute, at which the interchange schedule is attained during the ramp period. (Generator) The rate, expressed in megawatts per minute, that a generator changes its output.
Rated Electrical Operating Conditions [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	The specified or reasonably anticipated conditions under which the electrical system or an individual electrical circuit is intend/designed to operate
Rating [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The operational limits of a transmission system element under a set of specified conditions.
Rated System Path Methodology [Archive]		08/22/2008	11/24/2009	The Rated System Path Methodology is characterized by an initial Total Transfer Capability (TTC), determined via simulation. Capacity Benefit Margin, Transmission Reliability Margin, and Existing Transmission Commitments are subtracted from TTC, and Postbacks and counterflows are added as applicable, to derive Available Transfer Capability. Under the Rated System Path Methodology, TTC results are generally reported as specific transmission path capabilities.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Reactive Power [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The portion of electricity that establishes and sustains the electric and magnetic fields of alternating-current equipment. Reactive power must be supplied to most types of magnetic equipment, such as motors and transformers. It also must supply the reactive losses on transmission facilities. Reactive power is provided by generators, synchronous condensers, or electrostatic equipment such as capacitors and directly influences electric system voltage. It is usually expressed in kilovars (kvar) or megavars (Mvar).
Real Power [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The portion of electricity that supplies energy to the load.
Reallocation [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The total or partial curtailment of Transactions during TLR Level 3a or 5a to allow Transactions using higher priority to be implemented.
Real-time [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	Present time as opposed to future time. (From Interconnection Reliability Operating Limits standard.)
Real-time Assessment [Archive]		10/17/2008	3/17/2011	An examination of existing and expected system conditions, conducted by collecting and reviewing immediately available data

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Real-time Assessment [Archive]		11/13/2014	Revised definition	An evaluation of system conditions using Real-time data to assess existing (pre-Contingency) and potential (post-Contingency) operating conditions. The assessment shall reflect applicable inputs including, but not limited to: load, generation output levels, known Protection System and Special Protection System status or degradation, Transmission outages, generator outages, Interchange, Facility Ratings, and identified phase angle and equipment limitations. (Real-time Assessment may be provided through internal systems or through third-party services.)
Receiving Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The Balancing Authority importing the Interchange.
Regional Reliability Organization [Archive]	RRO	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	1. An entity that ensures that a defined area of the Bulk Electric System is reliable, adequate and secure. 2. A member of the North American Electric Reliability Council. The Regional Reliability Organization can serve as the Compliance Monitor.
Regional Reliability Plan [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The plan that specifies the Reliability Coordinators and Balancing Authorities within the Regional Reliability Organization, and explains how reliability coordination will be accomplished.
Regulating Reserve [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An amount of reserve responsive to Automatic Generation Control, which is sufficient to provide normal regulating margin.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Regulation Reserve Sharing Group [Archive]		8/15/2013	4/16/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/2016)	A group whose members consist of two or more Balancing Authorities that collectively maintain, allocate, and supply the Regulating Reserve required for all member Balancing Authorities to use in meeting applicable regulating standards.
Regulation Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The process whereby one Balancing Authority contracts to provide corrective response to all or a portion of the ACE of another Balancing Authority. The Balancing Authority providing the response assumes the obligation of meeting all applicable control criteria as specified by NERC for itself and the Balancing Authority for which it is providing the Regulation Service.
Reliability Adjustment Arranged Interchange [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	A request to modify a Confirmed Interchange or Implemented Interchange for reliability purposes.
Reliability Adjustment RFI [Archive]		10/29/2008	12/17/2009	Request to modify an Implemented Interchange Schedule for reliability purposes.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Reliability Coordinator [Archive]	RC	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity that is the highest level of authority who is responsible for the reliable operation of the Bulk Electric System, has the Wide Area view of the Bulk Electric System, and has the operating tools, processes and procedures, including the authority to prevent or mitigate emergency operating situations in both next-day analysis and real-time operations. The Reliability Coordinator has the purview that is broad enough to enable the calculation of Interconnection Reliability Operating Limits, which may be based on the operating parameters of transmission systems beyond any Transmission Operator's vision.
Reliability Coordinator Area [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The collection of generation, transmission, and loads within the boundaries of the Reliability Coordinator. Its boundary coincides with one or more Balancing Authority Areas.
Reliability Coordinator Information System [Archive]	RCIS	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The system that Reliability Coordinators use to post messages and share operating information in real time.
Reliability Directive [Archive]		8/16/2012		A communication initiated by a Reliability Coordinator, Transmission Operator, or Balancing Authority where action by the recipient is necessary to address an Emergency or Adverse Reliability Impact.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Reliability Standard [Archive]		5/9/2013	7/9/2013	A requirement, approved by the United States Federal Energy Regulatory Commission under this Section 215 of the Federal Power Act, or approved or recognized by an applicable governmental authority in other jurisdictions, to provide for reliable operation [Reliable Operation] of the bulk-power system [Bulk-Power System]. The term includes requirements for the operation of existing bulk-power system [Bulk-Power System] facilities, including cybersecurity protection, and the design of planned additions or modifications to such facilities to the extent necessary to provide for reliable operation [Reliable Operation] of the bulk-power system [Bulk-Power System], but the term does not include any requirement to enlarge such facilities or to construct new transmission capacity or generation capacity.
Reliable Operation [Archive]		5/9/2013	7/9/2013	Operating the elements of the bulk-power system [Bulk-Power System] within equipment and electric system thermal, voltage, and stability limits so that instability, uncontrolled separation, or cascading failures of such system will not occur as a result of a sudden disturbance, including a cybersecurity incident, or unanticipated failure of system elements.
Remedial Action Scheme [Archive]	RAS	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	See "Special Protection System"

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Remedial Action Scheme [Archive]	RAS	11/13/2014		A scheme designed to detect predetermined System conditions and automatically take corrective actions that may include, but are not limited to, adjusting or tripping generation (MW and Mvar), tripping load, or reconfiguring a System(s). RAS accomplish objectives such as: • Meet requirements identified in the NERC Reliability Standards; • Maintain Bulk Electric System (BES) stability; • Maintain acceptable BES voltages; • Maintain acceptable BES power flows; • Limit the impact of Cascading or extreme events. The following do not individually constitute a RAS: a. Protection Systems installed for the purpose of detecting Faults on BES Elements and isolating the faulted Elements b. Schemes for automatic underfrequency load shedding (UFLS) and automatic undervoltage load shedding (UVLS) comprised of only distributed relays c. Out-of-step tripping and power swing blocking d. Automatic reclosing schemes e. Schemes applied on an Element for non-Fault conditions, such as, but not limited to, generator loss-of-field, transformer top-oil temperature, overvoltage, or overload to protect the Element against damage by removing it from service

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Continued Remedial Action Scheme [Archive]				f. Controllers that switch or regulate one or more of the following: series or shunt reactive devices, flexible alternating current transmission system (FACTS) devices, phase-shifting transformers, variable-frequency transformers, or tap-changing transformers; and, that are located at and monitor quantities solely at the same station as the Element being switched or regulated g. FACTS controllers that remotely switch static shunt reactive devices located at other stations to regulate the output of a single FACTS device h. Schemes or controllers that remotely switch shunt reactors and shunt capacitors for voltage regulation that would otherwise be manually switched i. Schemes that automatically de-energize a line for a non-Fault operation when one end of the line is open j. Schemes that provide anti-islanding protection (e.g., protect load from effects of being isolated with generation that may not be capable of maintaining acceptable frequency and voltage) k. Automatic sequences that proceed when manually initiated solely by a System Operator l. Modulation of HVdc or FACTS via supplementary controls, such as angle damping or frequency damping applied to damp local or inter-area oscillations m. Sub-synchronous resonance (SSR) protection schemes that directly detect sub-synchronous quantities (e.g., currents or torsional oscillations)

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Continued Remedial Action Scheme [Archive]				n. Generator controls such as, but not limited to, automatic generation control (AGC), generation excitation [e.g. automatic voltage regulation (AVR) and power system stabilizers (PSS)], fast valving, and speed governing
Removable Media [Archive]		2/12/2015		Storage media that (i) are not Cyber Assets, (ii) are capable of transferring executable code, (iii) can be used to store, copy, move, or access data, and (iv) are directly connected for 30 consecutive calendar days or less to a BES Cyber Asset, a network within an ESP, or a Protected Cyber Asset. Examples include, but are not limited to, floppy disks, compact disks, USB flash drives, external hard drives, and other flash memory cards/drives that contain nonvolatile memory.
Reportable Cyber Security Incident [Archive]		11/26/2012	11/22/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/16)	A Cyber Security Incident that has compromised or disrupted one or more reliability tasks of a functional entity.
Reportable Disturbance [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Any event that causes an ACE change greater than or equal to 80% of a Balancing Authority's or reserve sharing group's most severe contingency. The definition of a reportable disturbance is specified by each Regional Reliability Organization. This definition may not be retroactively adjusted in response to observed performance.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Reporting ACE [Archive]		8/15/2013	4/16/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/2016)	The scan rate values of a Balancing Authority's Area Control Error (ACE) measured in MW, which includes the difference between the Balancing Authority's Net Actual Interchange and its Net Scheduled Interchange, plus its Frequency Bias obligation, plus any known meter error. In the Western Interconnection, Reporting ACE includes Automatic Time Error Correction (ATEC). Reporting ACE is calculated as follows: Reporting ACE = $(NI_A - NI_S) - 10B\,(F_A - F_S) - I_{ME}$ Reporting ACE is calculated in the Western Interconnection as follows: Reporting ACE = $(NI_A - NI_S) - 10B\,(F_A - F_S) - I_{ME} + I_{ATEC}$ Where: **NI_A (Actual Net Interchange)** is the algebraic sum of actual megawatt transfers across all Tie Lines and includes Pseudo-Ties. Balancing Authorities directly connected via asynchronous ties to another Interconnection may include or exclude megawatt transfers on those Tie lines in their actual interchange, provided they are implemented in the same manner for Net Interchange Schedule. **NI_S (Scheduled Net Interchange)** is the algebraic sum of all scheduled megawatt transfers, including Dynamic Schedules, with adjacent Balancing Authorities, and taking into account the effects of schedule ramps. Balancing Authorities directly connected via asynchronous ties to another Interconnection may include or exclude megawatt transfers on those Tie Lines in their scheduled Interchange, provided they are implemented in the same manner for Net

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Reporting ACE **(Continued)**				Interchange Actual. **B (Frequency Bias Setting)** is the Frequency Bias Setting (in negative MW/0.1 Hz) for the Balancing Authority. **10** is the constant factor that converts the frequency bias setting units to MW/Hz. **F_A (Actual Frequency)** is the measured frequency in Hz. **F_S (Scheduled Frequency)** is 60.0 Hz, except during a time correction. **I_{ME} (Interchange Meter Error)** is the meter error correction factor and represents the difference between the integrated hourly average of the net interchange actual (NIA) and the cumulative hourly net Interchange energy measurement (in megawatt-hours). **I_{ATEC} (Automatic Time Error Correction)** is the addition of a component to the ACE equation for the Western Interconnection that modifies the control point for the purpose of continuously paying back Primary Inadvertent Interchange to correct accumulated time error. Automatic Time Error Correction is only applicable in the Western Interconnection. $I_{ATEC} = \frac{PII_{accum}^{on/off\ peak}}{(1-Y)*H}$ when operating in Automatic Time Error Correction control mode. **I_{ATEC}** shall be zero when operating in any other AGC mode. • Y = B / BS. • H = Number of hours used to payback Primary Inadvertent Interchange energy. The value of H is set to 3. • BS = Frequency Bias for the Interconnection (MW / 0.1 Hz).

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Reporting ACE **(Continued)**				• Primary Inadvertent Interchange (PII_{hourly}) is (1-Y) * (II_{actual} - B * ΔTE/6) • II_{actual} is the hourly Inadvertent Interchange for the last hour. • ΔTE is the hourly change in system Time Error as distributed by the Interconnection Time Monitor. Where: $\Delta TE = TE_{end\ hour} - TE_{begin\ hour} - TD_{adj} - (t)*(TE_{offset})$ • TD_{adj} is the Reliability Coordinator adjustment for differences with Interconnection Time Monitor control center clocks. • t is the number of minutes of Manual Time Error Correction that occurred during the hour. • TE_{offset} is 0.000 or +0.020 or -0.020. • PII_{accum} is the Balancing Authority's accumulated PII_{hourly} in MWh. An On-Peak and Off-Peak accumulation accounting is required. Where: $PII_{accum}^{on/off\ peak}$ = last period's $PII_{accum}^{on/off\ peak}$ + PII_{hourly} All NERC Interconnections with multiple Balancing Authorities operate using the principles of Tie-line Bias (TLB) Control and require the use of an ACE equation similar to the Reporting ACE defined above. Any modification(s) to this specified Reporting ACE equation that is(are) implemented for all BAs on an Interconnection and is(are) consistent with the following four principles will provide a valid alternative Reporting ACE equation

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Reporting ACE **(Continued)**				consistent with the measures included in this standard. 1. All portions of the Interconnection are included in one area or another so that the sum of all area generation, loads and losses is the same as total system generation, load and losses. 2. The algebraic sum of all area Net Interchange Schedules and all Net Interchange actual values is equal to zero at all times. 3. The use of a common Scheduled Frequency FS for all areas at all times. 4. The absence of metering or computational errors. (The inclusion and use of the IME term to account for known metering or computational errors.)
Request for Interchange [Archive]	RFI	5/2/2006	3/16/2007	A collection of data as defined in the NAESB RFI Datasheet, to be submitted to the Interchange Authority for the purpose of implementing bilateral Interchange between a Source and Sink Balancing Authority.
Request for Interchange [Archive]	RFI	2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	A collection of data as defined in the NAESB Business Practice Standards submitted for the purpose of implementing bilateral Interchange between Balancing Authorities or an energy transfer within a single Balancing Authority.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Reserve Sharing Group [Archive]	RSG	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A group whose members consist of two or more Balancing Authorities that collectively maintain, allocate, and supply operating reserves required for each Balancing Authority's use in recovering from contingencies within the group. Scheduling energy from an Adjacent Balancing Authority to aid recovery need not constitute reserve sharing provided the transaction is ramped in over a period the supplying party could reasonably be expected to load generation in (e.g., ten minutes). If the transaction is ramped in quicker (e.g., between zero and ten minutes) then, for the purposes of Disturbance Control Performance, the Areas become a Reserve Sharing Group.
Reserve Sharing Group Reporting ACE [Archive]		8/15/2013	4/16/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/2016)	At any given time of measurement for the applicable Reserve Sharing Group, the algebraic sum of the Reporting ACEs (or equivalent as calculated at such time of measurement) of the Balancing Authorities participating in the Reserve Sharing Group at the time of measurement.
Resource Planner [Archive]	RP	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity that develops a long-term (generally one year and beyond) plan for the resource adequacy of specific loads (customer demand and energy requirements) within a Planning Authority Area.
Response Rate [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The Ramp Rate that a generating unit can achieve under normal operating conditions expressed in megawatts per minute (MW/Min).
Right-of-Way [Archive]	ROW	2/7/2006	3/16/2007	A corridor of land on which electric lines may be located. The Transmission Owner may own the land in fee, own an easement, or have certain franchise, prescription, or license rights to construct and maintain lines.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Right-of-Way [Archive]	ROW	11/3/2011	3/21/2013 (Becomes inactive 6/30/2014)	The corridor of land under a transmission line(s) needed to operate the line(s). The width of the corridor is established by engineering or construction standards as documented in either construction documents, pre-2007 vegetation maintenance records, or by the blowout standard in effect when the line was built. The ROW width in no case exceeds the Transmission Owner's legal rights but may be less based on the aforementioned criteria.
Right-of-Way [Archive]	ROW	5/9/12	3/21/2013 (Becomes effective 7/1/2014)	The corridor of land under a transmission line(s) needed to operate the line(s). The width of the corridor is established by engineering or construction standards as documented in either construction documents, pre-2007 vegetation maintenance records, or by the blowout standard in effect when the line was built. The ROW width in no case exceeds the applicable Transmission Owner's or applicable Generator Owner's legal rights but may be less based on the aforementioned criteria.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Scenario [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	Possible event.
Schedule [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	(Verb) To set up a plan or arrangement for an Interchange Transaction. (Noun) An Interchange Schedule.
Scheduled Frequency [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	60.0 Hertz, except during a time correction.
Scheduling Entity [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An entity responsible for approving and implementing Interchange Schedules.
Scheduling Path [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The Transmission Service arrangements reserved by the Purchasing-Selling Entity for a Transaction.
Sending Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The Balancing Authority exporting the Interchange.
Sink Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The Balancing Authority in which the load (sink) is located for an Interchange Transaction. (This will also be a Receiving Balancing Authority for the resulting Interchange Schedule.)
Sink Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	The Balancing Authority in which the load (sink) is located for an Interchange Transaction and any resulting Interchange Schedule.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Source Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The Balancing Authority in which the generation (source) is located for an Interchange Transaction. (This will also be a Sending Balancing Authority for the resulting Interchange Schedule.)
Source Balancing Authority [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/30/2014 (Becomes effective 10/1/2014)	The Balancing Authority in which the generation (source) is located for an Interchange Transaction and for any resulting Interchange Schedule.
Special Protection System (Remedial Action Scheme) [Archive]	SPS	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An automatic protection system designed to detect abnormal or predetermined system conditions, and take corrective actions other than and/or in addition to the isolation of faulted components to maintain system reliability. Such action may include changes in demand, generation (MW and Mvar), or system configuration to maintain system stability, acceptable voltage, or power flows. An SPS does not include (a) underfrequency or undervoltage load shedding or (b) fault conditions that must be isolated or (c) out-of-step relaying (not designed as an integral part of an SPS). Also called Remedial Action Scheme.
Spinning Reserve [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Unloaded generation that is synchronized and ready to serve additional demand.
Stability [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The ability of an electric system to maintain a state of equilibrium during normal and abnormal conditions or disturbances.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Stability Limit [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The maximum power flow possible through some particular point in the system while maintaining stability in the entire system or the part of the system to which the stability limit refers.
Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition [Archive]	SCADA	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A system of remote control and telemetry used to monitor and control the transmission system.
Supplemental Regulation Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A method of providing regulation service in which the Balancing Authority providing the regulation service receives a signal representing all or a portion of the other Balancing Authority's ACE.
Surge [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A transient variation of current, voltage, or power flow in an electric circuit or across an electric system.
Sustained Outage [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	The deenergized condition of a transmission line resulting from a fault or disturbance following an unsuccessful automatic reclosing sequence and/or unsuccessful manual reclosing procedure.
System [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A combination of generation, transmission, and distribution components.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
System Operating Limit [Archive]	SOL	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The value (such as MW, MVar, Amperes, Frequency or Volts) that satisfies the most limiting of the prescribed operating criteria for a specified system configuration to ensure operation within acceptable reliability criteria. System Operating Limits are based upon certain operating criteria. These include, but are not limited to: • Facility Ratings (Applicable pre- and post-Contingency equipment or facility ratings) • Transient Stability Ratings (Applicable pre- and post-Contingency Stability Limits) • Voltage Stability Ratings (Applicable pre- and post-Contingency Voltage Stability) • System Voltage Limits (Applicable pre- and post-Contingency Voltage Limits)
System Operator [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An individual at a control center (Balancing Authority, Transmission Operator, Generator Operator, Reliability Coordinator) whose responsibility it is to monitor and control that electric system in real time.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
System Operator [Archive]		2/6/2014	6/19/2014 (effective 7/1/2016)	An individual at a Control Center of a Balancing Authority, Transmission Operator, or Reliability Coordinator, who operates or directs the operation of the Bulk Electric System (BES) in Real-time.
Telemetering [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The process by which measurable electrical quantities from substations and generating stations are instantaneously transmitted to the control center, and by which operating commands from the control center are transmitted to the substations and generating stations.
Thermal Rating [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The maximum amount of electrical current that a transmission line or electrical facility can conduct over a specified time period before it sustains permanent damage by overheating or before it sags to the point that it violates public safety requirements.
Tie Line [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A circuit connecting two Balancing Authority Areas.
Tie Line Bias [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A mode of Automatic Generation Control that allows the Balancing Authority to 1.) maintain its Interchange Schedule and 2.) respond to Interconnection frequency error.
Time Error [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The difference between the Interconnection time measured at the Balancing Authority(ies) and the time specified by the National Institute of Standards and Technology. Time error is caused by the accumulation of Frequency Error over a given period.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Time Error Correction [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An offset to the Interconnection's scheduled frequency to return the Interconnection's Time Error to a predetermined value.
TLR (Transmission Loading Relief)[5] Log [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Report required to be filed after every TLR Level 2 or higher in a specified format. The NERC IDC prepares the report for review by the issuing Reliability Coordinator. After approval by the issuing Reliability Coordinator, the report is electronically filed in a public area of the NERC Web site.
Total Flowgate Capability [Archive]	TFC	08/22/2008	11/24/2009	The maximum flow capability on a Flowgate, is not to exceed its thermal rating, or in the case of a flowgate used to represent a specific operating constraint (such as a voltage or stability limit), is not to exceed the associated System Operating Limit.
Total Internal Demand [Archive]		5/6/2014	2/19/2015 (Becomes effective 7/1/2016)	The Demand of a metered system, which includes the Firm Demand, plus any controllable and dispatchable DSM Load and the Load due to the energy losses incurred within the boundary of the metered system.
Total Transfer Capability [Archive]	TTC	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The amount of electric power that can be moved or transferred reliably from one area to another area of the interconnected transmission systems by way of all transmission lines (or paths) between those areas under specified system conditions.
Transaction [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	See Interchange Transaction.

[5] NERC added the spelled out term for TLR Log for clarification purposes.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Transfer Capability [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The measure of the ability of interconnected electric systems to move or transfer power *in a reliable manner* from one area to another over all transmission lines (or paths) between those areas under specified system conditions. The units of transfer capability are in terms of electric power, generally expressed in megawatts (MW). The transfer capability from "Area A" to "Area B" is *not g*enerally equal to the transfer capability from "Area B" to "Area A."
Transfer Distribution Factor [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	See Distribution Factor.
Transient Cyber Asset [Archive]		2/12/2015		A Cyber Asset that (i) is capable of transmitting or transferring executable code, (ii) is not included in a BES Cyber System, (iii) is not a Protected Cyber Asset (PCA), and (iv) is directly connected (e.g., using Ethernet, serial, Universal Serial Bus, or wireless, including near field or Bluetooth communication) for 30 consecutive calendar days or less to a BES Cyber Asset, a network within an ESP, or a PCA. Examples include, but are not limited to, Cyber Assets used for data transfer, vulnerability assessment, maintenance, or troubleshooting purposes.
Transmission [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	An interconnected group of lines and associated equipment for the movement or transfer of electric energy between points of supply and points at which it is transformed for delivery to customers or is delivered to other electric systems.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Transmission Constraint [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	A limitation on one or more transmission elements that may be reached during normal or contingency system operations.
Transmission Customer [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	1. Any eligible customer (or its designated agent) that can or does execute a transmission service agreement or can or does receive transmission service. 2. Any of the following responsible entities: Generator Owner, Load-Serving Entity, or Purchasing-Selling Entity.
Transmission Line [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	A system of structures, wires, insulators and associated hardware that carry electric energy from one point to another in an electric power system. Lines are operated at relatively high voltages varying from 69 kV up to 765 kV, and are capable of transmitting large quantities of electricity over long distances.
Transmission Operator [Archive]	TOP	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity responsible for the reliability of its "local" transmission system, and that operates or directs the operations of the transmission facilities.
Transmission Operator Area [Archive]		08/22/2008	11/24/2009	The collection of Transmission assets over which the Transmission Operator is responsible for operating.
Transmission Owner [Archive]	TO	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity that owns and maintains transmission facilities.
Transmission Planner [Archive]	TP	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity that develops a long-term (generally one year and beyond) plan for the reliability (adequacy) of the interconnected bulk electric transmission systems within its portion of the Planning Authority Area.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Transmission Reliability Margin [Archive]	TRM	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The amount of transmission transfer capability necessary to provide reasonable assurance that the interconnected transmission network will be secure. TRM accounts for the inherent uncertainty in system conditions and the need for operating flexibility to ensure reliable system operation as system conditions change.
Transmission Reliability Margin Implementation Document [Archive]	TRMID	08/22/2008	11/24/2009	A document that describes the implementation of a Transmission Reliability Margin methodology, and provides information related to a Transmission Operator's calculation of TRM.
Transmission Service [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	Services provided to the Transmission Customer by the Transmission Service Provider to move energy from a Point of Receipt to a Point of Delivery.
Transmission Service Provider [Archive]	TSP	2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entity that administers the transmission tariff and provides Transmission Service to Transmission Customers under applicable transmission service agreements.
Undervoltage Load Shedding Program [Archive]	UVLS Program	11/13/2014		An automatic load shedding program, consisting of distributed relays and controls, used to mitigate undervoltage conditions impacting the Bulk Electric System (BES), leading to voltage instability, voltage collapse, or Cascading. Centrally controlled undervoltage-based load shedding is not included.
Vegetation [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	All plant material, growing or not, living or dead.
Vegetation Inspection [Archive]		2/7/2006	3/16/2007	The systematic examination of a transmission corridor to document vegetation conditions.

Continent-wide Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Vegetation Inspection [Archive]		11/3/2011	3/21/2013 (Becomes inactive 6/30/2014)	The systematic examination of vegetation conditions on a Right-of-Way and those vegetation conditions under the Transmission Owner's control that are likely to pose a hazard to the line(s) prior to the next planned maintenance or inspection. This may be combined with a general line inspection.
Vegetation Inspection [Archive]		5/9/12	3/21/2013 (Becomes effective 7/1/2014)	The systematic examination of vegetation conditions on a Right-of-Way and those vegetation conditions under the applicable Transmission Owner's or applicable Generator Owner's control that are likely to pose a hazard to the line(s) prior to the next planned maintenance or inspection. This may be combined with a general line inspection.
Wide Area [Archive]		2/8/2005	3/16/2007	The entire Reliability Coordinator Area as well as the critical flow and status information from adjacent Reliability Coordinator Areas as determined by detailed system studies to allow the calculation of Interconnected Reliability Operating Limits.
Year One [Archive]		1/24/2011	11/17/2011	The first twelve month period that a Planning Coordinator or a Transmission Planner is responsible for assessing. For an assessment started in a given calendar year, Year One includes the forecasted peak Load period for one of the following two calendar years. For example, if a Planning Assessment was started in 2011, then Year One includes the forecasted peak Load period for either 2012 or 2013.

ERCOT Regional Definitions

The following terms were developed as regional definitions for the ERCOT region:

ERCOT Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Frequency Measurable Event [Archive]	FME	8/15/2013	1/16/2014 (Becomes effective 4/1/14)	An event that results in a Frequency Deviation, identified at the BA's sole discretion, and meeting one of the following conditions: i) a Frequency Deviation that has a pre-perturbation [the 16-second period of time before t(0)] average frequency to post-perturbation [the 32-second period of time starting 20 seconds after t(0)] average frequency absolute deviation greater than 100 mHz (the 100 mHz value may be adjusted by the BA to capture 30 to 40 events per year). Or ii) a cumulative change in generating unit/generating facility, DC tie and/or firm load pre-perturbation megawatt value to post-perturbation megawatt value absolute deviation greater than 550 MW (the 550 MW value may be adjusted by the BA to capture 30 to 40 events per year).
Governor [Archive]		8/15/2013	1/16/2014 (Becomes effective	The electronic, digital or mechanical device that implements Primary Frequency Response of generating units/generating facilities or other system elements.

ERCOT Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
			4/1/14)	
Primary Frequency Response [Archive]	PFR	8/15/2013	1/16/2014 (Becomes effective 4/1/14)	The immediate proportional increase or decrease in real power output provided by generating units/generating facilities and the natural real power dampening response provided by Load in response to system Frequency Deviations. This response is in the direction that stabilizes frequency.

NPCC Regional Definitions

The following definitions were developed for use in NPCC Regional Standards.

NPCC Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Current Zero Time [Archive]		11/04/2010	10/20/2011	The time of the final current zero on the last phase to interrupt.
Generating Plant [Archive]		11/04/2010	10/20/2011	One or more generators at a single physical location whereby any single contingency can affect all the generators at that location.

Reliability*First* Regional Definitions

The following definitions were developed for use in Reliability*First* Regional Standards.

RFC Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Resource Adequacy [Archive]		08/05/2009	03/17/2011	The ability of supply-side and demand-side resources to meet the aggregate electrical demand (including losses)
Net Internal Demand [Archive]		08/05/2009	03/17/2011	Total of all end-use customer demand and electric system losses within specified metered boundaries, less Direct Control Management and Interruptible Demand
Peak Period [Archive]		08/05/2009	03/17/2011	A period consisting of two (2) or more calendar months but less than seven (7) calendar months, which includes the period during which the responsible entity's annual peak demand is expected to occur
Wind Generating Station [Archive]		11/03/2011		A collection of wind turbines electrically connected together and injecting energy into the grid at one point, sometimes known as a "Wind Farm."
Year One [Archive]		08/05/2009	03/17/2011	The planning year that begins with the upcoming annual Peak Period

WECC Regional Definitions

The following definitions were developed for use in WECC Regional Standards.

WECC Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Area Control Error† [Archive]	ACE	3/12/2007	6/8/2007 (Becomes inactive 3/31/14)	Means the instantaneous difference between net actual and scheduled interchange, taking into account the effects of Frequency Bias including correction for meter error.
Automatic Generation Control‡ [Archive]	AGC	3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means equipment that automatically adjusts a Control Area's generation from a central location to maintain its interchange schedule plus Frequency Bias.
Automatic Time Error Correction [Archive]		3/26/2008	5/21/2009 (Becomes inactive 3/31/14)	A frequency control automatic action that a Balancing Authority uses to offset its frequency contribution to support the Interconnection's scheduled frequency.
Automatic Time Error Correction [Archive]		12/19/2012	10/16/2013 (Becomes effective 4/1/2014)	The addition of a component to the ACE equation that modifies the control point for the purpose of continuously paying back Primary Inadvertent Interchange to correct accumulated time error.
Average Generation‡ [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means the total MWh generated within the Balancing Authority Operator's Balancing Authority Area during the prior year divided by 8760 hours (8784 hours if the prior year had 366 days).
Business Day‡ [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means any day other than Saturday, Sunday, or a legal public holiday as designated in section 6103 of title 5, U.S. Code.

WECC Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Commercial Operation [Archive]		10/29/2008	4/21/2011	Achievement of this designation indicates that the Generator Operator or Transmission Operator of the synchronous generator or synchronous condenser has received all approvals necessary for operation after completion of initial start-up testing.
Contributing Schedule [Archive]		2/10/2009	3/17/2011	A Schedule not on the Qualified Transfer Path between a Source Balancing Authority and a Sink Balancing Authority that contributes unscheduled flow across the Qualified Transfer Path.
Dependability-Based Misoperation [Archive]		10/29/2008	4/21/2011	Is the absence of a Protection System or RAS operation when intended. Dependability is a component of reliability and is the measure of a device's certainty to operate when required.
Disturbance[†] [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means (i) any perturbation to the electric system, or (ii) the unexpected change in ACE that is caused by the sudden loss of generation or interruption of load.

WECC Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Extraordinary Contingency[†] [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Shall have the meaning set out in Excuse of Performance, section B.4.c. language in section B.4.c: *means any act of God, actions by a non-affiliated third party, labor disturbance, act of the public enemy, war, insurrection, riot, fire, storm or flood, earthquake, explosion, accident to or breakage, failure or malfunction of machinery or equipment, or any other cause beyond the Reliability Entity's reasonable control; provided that prudent industry standards (e.g. maintenance, design, operation) have been employed; and provided further that no act or cause shall be considered an Extraordinary Contingency if such act or cause results in any contingency contemplated in any WECC Reliability Standard (e.g., the "Most Severe Single Contingency" as defined in the WECC Reliability Criteria or any lesser contingency).*
Frequency Bias[†] [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means a value, usually given in megawatts per 0.1 Hertz, associated with a Control Area that relates the difference between scheduled and actual frequency to the amount of generation required to correct the difference.
Functionally Equivalent Protection System [Archive]	FEPS	10/29/2008	4/21/2011	A Protection System that provides performance as follows: • Each Protection System can detect the same faults within the zone of protection and provide the clearing times and coordination needed to comply with all Reliability Standards. • Each Protection System may have different components and operating characteristics.
Functionally Equivalent RAS [Archive]	FERAS	10/29/2008	4/21/2011	A Remedial Action Scheme ("RAS") that provides the same performance as follows: • Each RAS can detect the same conditions and provide

WECC Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
				mitigation to comply with all Reliability Standards. • Each RAS may have different components and operating characteristics.
Generating Unit Capability± [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means the MVA nameplate rating of a generator.
Non-spinning Reserve± [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means that Operating Reserve not connected to the system but capable of serving demand within a specified time, or interruptible load that can be removed from the system in a specified time.
Normal Path Rating± [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Is the maximum path rating in MW that has been demonstrated to WECC through study results or actual operation, whichever is greater. For a path with transfer capability limits that vary seasonally, it is the maximum of all the seasonal values.
Operating Reserve± [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means that capability above firm system demand required to provide for regulation, load-forecasting error, equipment forced and scheduled outages and local area protection. Operating Reserve consists of Spinning Reserve and Nonspinning Reserve.
Operating Transfer Capability Limit± [Archive]	OTC	3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means the maximum value of the most critical system operating parameter(s) which meets: (a) precontingency criteria as determined by equipment loading capability and acceptable voltage conditions, (b) transient criteria as determined by equipment loading capability and acceptable voltage conditions, (c) transient performance criteria, and (d) post-contingency loading and voltage criteria.

WECC Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Primary Inadvertent Interchange [Archive]		3/26/2008	5/21/2009	The component of area (n) inadvertent interchange caused by the regulating deficiencies of the area (n).
Qualified Controllable Device [Archive]		2/10/2009	3/17/2011	A controllable device installed in the Interconnection for controlling energy flow and the WECC Operating Committee has approved using the device for controlling the USF on the Qualified Transfer Paths.
Qualified Transfer Path [Archive]		2/10/2009	3/17/2011	A transfer path designated by the WECC Operating Committee as being qualified for WECC unscheduled flow mitigation.
Qualified Transfer Path Curtailment Event [Archive]		2/10/2009	3/17/2011	Each hour that a Transmission Operator calls for Step 4 or higher for one or more consecutive hours (See Attachment 1 IRO-006-WECC-1) during which the curtailment tool is functional.
Relief Requirement [Archive]		2/10/2009	3/17/2011 (Becomes inactive 6/30/2014)	The expected amount of the unscheduled flow reduction on the Qualified Transfer Path that would result by curtailing each Sink Balancing Authority’s Contributing Schedules by the percentages listed in the columns of WECC Unscheduled Flow Mitigation Summary of Actions Table in Attachment 1 WECC IRO-006-WECC-1.
Relief Requirement [Archive]		2/7/2013	6/13/2014 (Becomes effective 7/1/2014)	The expected amount of the unscheduled flow reduction on the Qualified Transfer Path that would result by curtailing each Sink Balancing Authority’s Contributing Schedules by the percentages determined in the WECC unscheduled flow mitigation guideline.
Secondary Inadvertent		3/26/2008	5/21/2009	The component of area (n) inadvertent interchange caused by

WECC Regional Term	Acronym	BOT Approved Date	FERC Approved Date	Definition
Interchange [Archive]				the regulating deficiencies of area (i).
Security-Based Misoperation [Archive]		10/29/2008	4/21/2011	A Misoperation caused by the incorrect operation of a Protection System or RAS. Security is a component of reliability and is the measure of a device's certainty not to operate falsely.
Spinning Reserve[†] [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means unloaded generation which is synchronized and ready to serve additional demand. It consists of Regulating reserve and Contingency reserve (as each are described in Sections B.a.i and ii).
Transfer Distribution Factor [Archive]	TDF	2/10/2009	3/17/2011	The percentage of USF that flows across a Qualified Transfer Path when an Interchange Transaction (Contributing Schedule) is implemented. [See the WECC Unscheduled Flow Mitigation Summary of Actions Table (Attachment 1 WECC IRO-006-WECC-1).]
WECC Table 2[†] [Archive]		3/12/2007	6/8/2007	Means the table maintained by the WECC identifying those transfer paths monitored by the WECC regional Reliability coordinators. As of the date set out therein, the transmission paths identified in Table 2 are as listed in Attachment A to this Standard.

Endnotes

[†] FERC approved the WECC Tier One Reliability Standards in the Order Approving Regional Reliability Standards for the Western Interconnection and Directing Modifications, 119 FERC ¶ 61,260 (June 8, 2007). In that Order, FERC directed WECC to address the inconsistencies between the regional definitions and the NERC Glossary in developing permanent replacement standards. The replacement standards designed to address the shortcomings were filed with FERC in 2009.

Exhibit B

Informational Summary of Each Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

BAL-001-2- To control Interconnection frequency within defined limits.

Applicability:

- Balancing Authority
  - A Balancing Authority receiving Overlap Regulation Service is not subject to Control Performance Standard 1 (CPS1) or Balancing Authority ACE Limit (BAAL) compliance evaluation.
  - A Balancing Authority that is a member of a Regulation Reserve Sharing Group is the Responsible Entity only in periods during which the Balancing Authority is not in active status under the applicable agreement or the governing rules for the Regulation Reserve Sharing Group.
- Regulation Reserve Sharing Group

Reliability Standard BAL-001-2 includes two requirements.

On April 2, 2014, NERC submitted a petition for approval of BAL-001-2 to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on April 16, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

COM-001-2- To establish Interpersonal Communication capabilities necessary to maintain reliability.

Applicability:

- Transmission Operator
- Balancing Authority
- Reliability Coordinator
- Distribution Provider
- Generator Operator

Reliability Standard COM-001-2 includes eleven requirements.

On May 14, 2014, NERC submitted a petition for approval of COM-001-2 to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on April 16, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

COM-002-4- To improve communications for the issuance of Operating Instructions with predefined communications protocols to reduce the possibility of miscommunication that could lead to action or inaction harmful to the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES).

Applicability:

- Balancing Authority
- Distribution Provider
- Reliability Coordinator
- Transmission Operator
- Generator Operator

Reliability Standard COM-002-4 includes seven requirements.

On May 14, 2014, NERC submitted a petition for approval of COM-002-4 to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on April 16, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

PRC-001-1.1(ii)- To ensure system protection is coordinated among operating entities.

Applicability:

- Balancing Authorities
- Transmission Operators
- Generator Operators

Reliability Standard PRC-001-1.1(ii) includes six requirements.

On March 13, 2015, NERC submitted a petition for approval of PRC-001-1.1(ii) to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on May 29, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

PRC-004-2.1(i)a- Ensure all transmission and generation Protection System Misoperations affecting the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES) are analyzed and mitigated.

Applicability:

- Transmission Owner
- Distribution Provider that owns a transmission Protection System
- Generator Owner

Reliability Standard PRC-004-2.1(i)a includes three requirements.

On February 6, 2015, NERC submitted a petition for approval of PRC-004-2.1(i)a to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on May 29, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

PRC-004-3- Identify and correct the causes of Misoperations of Protection Systems for Bulk Electric System (BES) Elements.

Applicability:

- Transmission Owner
- Generator Owner
- Distribution Provider
- Protection Systems for BES Elements, with the following exclusions:
  - Non-protective functions that are embedded within a Protection System
  - Protective functions intended to operate as a control function during switching
  - Special Protection Systems (SPS)
  - Remedial Action Schemes (RAS)
- Underfrequency load shedding (UFLS) that is intended to trip one or more BES Elements

Reliability Standard PRC-004-3 includes six requirements and an attached process flow chart.

On September 15, 2014, NERC submitted a petition for approval of PRC-004-3 to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on May 13, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

PRC-004-4- Identify and correct the causes of Misoperations of Protection Systems for Bulk Electric System (BES) Elements.

Applicability:

- Transmission Owner
- Generator Owner
- Distribution Provider
- Protection Systems for BES Elements, with the following exclusions:
    - Non-protective functions that are embedded within a Protection System
    - Protective functions intended to operate as a control function during switching
    - Special Protection Systems (SPS)
    - Remedial Action Schemes (RAS)
    - Protection Systems of individual dispersed power producing resources identified under Inclusion I4 of the BES definition where the Misoperations affected an aggregate nameplate rating of less than or equal to 75 MVA of BES Facilities.
- Underfrequency load shedding (UFLS) that is intended to trip one or more BES Elements

Reliability Standard PRC-004-4 includes six requirements and an attached process flow chart.

On February 6, 2015, NERC submitted a petition for approval of PRC-004-4 to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on May 29, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

PRC-005-2(i)- To document and implement programs for the maintenance of all Protection Systems affecting the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES) so that these Protection Systems are kept in working order.

Applicability:

- Transmission Owner
- Generator Owner
- Distribution Provider
- Protection Systems that are installed for the purpose of detecting Faults on BES Elements (lines, buses, transformers, etc.)
- Protection Systems used for underfrequency load-shedding systems installed per ERO underfrequency load-shedding requirements.
- Protection Systems used for undervoltage load-shedding systems installed to prevent system voltage collapse or voltage instability for BES reliability.
- Protection Systems installed as a Special Protection System (SPS) for BES reliability.
- Protection Systems for the following BES generator Facilities for generators not identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:
    - Protection Systems that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or auxiliary tripping relays.
    - Protection Systems for generator step-up transformers for generators that are part of the BES.
    - Protection Systems for station service or excitation transformers connected to the generator bus of generators which are part of the BES, that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or tripping auxiliary relays.
- Protection Systems for the following BES generator Facilities for dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:
    - Protection Systems for Facilities used in aggregating dispersed BES generation from the point where those resources aggregate to greater than 75 MVA to a common point of connection at 100 kV or above.

Reliability Standard PRC-005-2(i) includes five requirements and several associated tables.

On February 6, 2015, NERC submitted a petition for approval of PRC-005-2(i) to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on May 29, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

PRC-005-3(i)- To document and implement programs for the maintenance of all Protection Systems and Automatic Reclosing affecting the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES) so that they are kept in working order.

Applicability:

- Transmission Owner
- Generator Owner
- Distribution Provider
- Protection Systems that are installed for the purpose of detecting Faults on BES Elements (lines, buses, transformers, etc.)
- Protection Systems used for underfrequency load-shedding systems installed per ERO underfrequency load-shedding requirements.
- Protection Systems used for undervoltage load-shedding systems installed to prevent system voltage collapse or voltage instability for BES reliability.
- Protection Systems installed as a Special Protection System (SPS) for BES reliability.
- Protection Systems for the following BES generator Facilities for generators not identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:
    - Protection Systems that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or auxiliary tripping relays.
    - Protection Systems for generator step-up transformers for generators that are part of the BES.
    - Protection Systems for station service or excitation transformers connected to the generator bus of generators which are part of the BES, that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or tripping auxiliary relays.
- Protection Systems for the following BES generator Facilities for dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:
    - Protection Systems for Facilities used in aggregating dispersed BES generation from the point where those resources aggregate to greater than 75 MVA to a common point of connection at 100 kV or above.
- Automatic Reclosing[1], including:
    - Automatic Reclosing applied on the terminals of Elements connected to the BES bus located at generating plant substations where the total installed gross generating plant capacity is greater than the gross capacity of the largest BES generating unit within the Balancing Authority Area.
    - Automatic Reclosing applied on the terminals of all BES Elements at substations one bus away from generating plants specified in Section 4.2.7.1 [of Applicability Section of standard] when the substation is less than 10 circuit-miles from the generating plant substation.

---

[1] Automatic Reclosing addressed in Section 4.2.7.1 and 4.2.7.2 [of Applicability Section of standard] may be excluded if the equipment owner can demonstrate that a close-in three-phase fault present for twice the normal clearing time (capturing a minimum trip-close-trip time delay) does not result in a total loss of gross generation in the Interconnection exceeding the gross capacity of the largest BES generating unit within the Balancing Authority Area where the Automatic Reclosing is applied.

- Automatic Reclosing applied as an integral part of an SPS specified in Section 4.2.4 [of Applicability Section of standard].

Reliability Standard PRC-005-3(i) includes five requirements and several associated tables.

On February 6, 2015, NERC submitted a petition for approval of PRC-005-3(i) to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (“FERC”), and on May 29, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

PRC-019-2- To verify coordination of generating unit Facility or synchronous condenser voltage regulating controls, limit functions, equipment capabilities and Protection System settings.

Applicability:

- Generator Owner
- Transmission Owner that owns synchronous condenser(s)
- Individual generating unit greater than 20 MVA (gross nameplate rating) directly connected to the Bulk Electric System.
- Individual synchronous condenser greater than 20 MVA (gross nameplate rating) directly connected to the Bulk Electric System.
- Generating plant/ Facility consisting of one or more units that are connected to the Bulk Electric System at a common bus with total generation greater than 75 MVA (gross aggregate nameplate rating).
    - This includes individual generating units of the dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition where voltage regulating control for the facility is performed solely at the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resources.
- Any generator, regardless of size, that is a blackstart unit material to and designated as part of a Transmission Operator's restoration plan.

Reliability Standard PRC-019-2 includes two requirements and three associated diagrams.

On March 13, 2015, NERC submitted a petition for approval of PRC-019-2 to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on May 29, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

PRC-024-2- Ensure Generator Owners set their generator protective relays such that generating units remain connected during defined frequency and voltage excursions.

Applicability:

- Generator Owner

Reliability Standard PRC-024-2 includes four requirements and several associated tables and diagrams.

On March 13, 2015, NERC submitted a petition for approval of PRC-024-2 to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on May 29, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

EXHIBIT B: Informational Summary of Reliability Standard Applicable to Nova Scotia, Approved by FERC in Second Quarter 2015

VAR-002-4- To ensure generators provide reactive support and voltage control, within generating Facility capabilities, in order to protect equipment and maintain reliable operation of the Interconnection.

Applicability:

- Generator Operator
- Generator Owner

Reliability Standard VAR-002-4 includes six requirements.

On February 6, 2015, NERC submitted a petition for approval of VAR-002-4 to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC"), and on May 29, 2015, FERC approved the standard.

Exhibit C: List of Currently Effective NERC Reliability Standards

EXHIBIT C

Resource and Demand Balancing (BAL)	
BAL-001-1	Real Power Balancing Control Performance
BAL-001-TRE-1	Primary Frequency Response in the ERCOT Region
BAL-002-1	Disturbance Control Performance
BAL-002-WECC-2	Contingency Reserve
BAL-003-1	Frequency Response and Frequency Bias Setting
BAL-004-0	Time Error Correction
BAL-004-WECC-02	Automatic Time Error Correction (ATEC)
BAL-005-0.2b	Automatic Generation Control
BAL-006-2	Inadvertent Interchange
BAL-502-RFC-02	Planning Resource Adequacy Analysis, Assessment and Documentation
Communications (COM)	
COM-001-1.1	Telecommunications
COM-002-2	Communications and Coordination
Critical Infrastructure Protection (CIP)	
CIP-002-3	Cyber Security — Critical Cyber Asset Identification
CIP-003-3	Cyber Security — Security Management Controls
CIP-004-3a	Cyber Security — Personnel & Training
CIP-005-3a	Cyber Security — Electronic Security Perimeter(s)
CIP-006-3c	Cyber Security — Physical Security of Critical Cyber Assets
CIP-007-3a	Cyber Security — Systems Security Management
CIP-008-3	Cyber Security — Incident Reporting and Response Planning
CIP-009-3	Cyber Security — Recovery Plans for Critical Cyber Assets
Emergency Preparedness and Operations (EOP)	
EOP-001-2.1b	Emergency Operations Planning
EOP-002-3.1	Capacity and Energy Emergencies
EOP-003-2	Load Shedding Plans

EOP-004-2	Event Reporting
EOP-005-2	System Restoration from Blackstart Resources
EOP-006-2	System Restoration Coordination
EOP-008-1	Loss of Control Center Functionality
EOP-010-1	Geomagnetic Disturbance Operations
Facilities Design, Connections, and Maintenance (FAC)	
FAC-001-1	Facility Connection Requirements
FAC-002-1	Coordination of Plans For New Generation, Transmission, and End-User Facilities
FAC-003-3	Transmission Vegetation Management
FAC-008-3	Facility Ratings
FAC-010-2.1	System Operating Limits Methodology for the Planning Horizon
FAC-011-2	System Operating Limits Methodology for the Operations Horizon
FAC-013-2	Assessment of Transfer Capability for the Near-Term Transmission Planning Horizon
FAC-014-2	Establish and Communicate System Operating Limits
FAC-501-WECC-1	Transmission Maintenance
Interchange Scheduling and Coordination (INT)	
INT-004-3.1	Dynamic Transfers
INT-006-4	Evaluation of Interchange Transactions
INT-009-2.1	Implementation of Interchange
INT-010-2.1	Interchange Initiation and Modification for Reliability
INT-011-1.1	Intra-Balancing Authority Transaction Identification
Interconnection Reliability Operations and Coordination (IRO)	
IRO-001-1.1	Reliability Coordination — Responsibilities and Authorities
IRO-002-2	Reliability Coordination — Facilities
IRO-003-2	Reliability Coordination — Wide-Area View
IRO-004-2	Reliability Coordination — Operations Planning
IRO-005-3.1a	Reliability Coordination — Current Day Operations
IRO-006-5	Reliability Coordination — Transmission Loading Relief (TLR)

IRO-006-EAST-1	Transmission Loading Relief Procedure for the Eastern Interconnection
IRO-006-TRE-1	IROL and SOL Mitigation in the ERCOT Region
IRO-006-WECC-2	Qualified Transfer Path Unscheduled Flow (USF) Relief
IRO-008-1	Reliability Coordinator Operational Analyses and Real-time Assessments
IRO-009-1	Reliability Coordinator Actions to Operate Within IROLs
IRO-010-1a	Reliability Coordinator Data Specification and Collection
IRO-014-1	Procedures, Processes, or Plans to Support Coordination Between Reliability Coordinators
IRO-015-1	Notifications and Information Exchange Between Reliability Coordinators
IRO-016-1	Coordination of Real-time Activities Between Reliability Coordinators
Modeling, Data, and Analysis (MOD)	
MOD-001-1a	Available Transmission System Capability
MOD-004-1	Capacity Benefit Margin
MOD-008-1	Transmission Reliability Margin Calculation Methodology
MOD-010-0	Steady-State Data for Modeling and Simulation of the Interconnected Transmission System
MOD-012-0	Dynamics Data for Modeling and Simulation of the Interconnected Transmission System
MOD-016-1.1	Documentation of Data Reporting Requirements for Actual and Forecast Demands, Net Energy for Load, and Controllable Demand-Side Management
MOD-017-0.1	Aggregated Actual and Forecast Demands and Net Energy for Load
MOD-018-0	Treatment of Nonmember Demand Data and How Uncertainties are Addressed in the Forecasts of Demand and Net Energy for Load
MOD-019-0.1	Reporting of Interruptible Demands and Direct Control Load Management
MOD-020-0	Providing Interruptible Demands and Direct Control Load Management Data to System Operators and Reliability Coordinators
MOD-021-1	Documentation of the Accounting Methodology for the Effects of Demand-Side Management in Demand and Energy Forecasts
MOD-026-1	Verification of Models and Data for Generator Excitation Control System or Plant Volt/Var Control Functions

MOD-027-1	Verification of Models and Data for Turbine/Governor and Load Control or Active Power/Frequency Control Functions
MOD-028-2	Area Interchange Methodology
MOD-029-1a	Rated System Path Methodology
MOD-030-2	Flowgate Methodology
MOD-032-1	Data for Power System Modeling and Analysis
Nuclear (NUC)	
NUC-001-2.1	Nuclear Plant Interface Coordination
Personnel Performance, Training, and Qualifications (PER)	
PER-001-0.2	Operating Personnel Responsibility and Authority
PER-003-1	Operating Personnel Credentials
PER-004-2	Reliability Coordination — Staffing
PER-005-1	System Personnel Training
Protection and Control (PRC)	
PRC-001-1.1(ii)	System Protection Coordination
PRC-002-NPCC-01	Disturbance Monitoring
PRC-004-2.1(i)a	Analysis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection System Misoperations
PRC-004-WECC-1	Protection System and Remedial Action Scheme Misoperation
PRC-005-1.1b	Transmission and Generation Protection System Maintenance and Testing
PRC-005-2(i)	Protection System Maintenance
PRC-006-1	Automatic Underfrequency Load Shedding
PRC-006-NPCC-1	Automatic Underfrequency Load Shedding
PRC-006-SERC-01	Automatic Underfrequency Load Shedding Requirements
PRC-008-0	Implementation and Documentation of Underfrequency Load Shedding Equipment Maintenance Program
PRC-010-0	Technical Assessment of the Design and Effectiveness of Undervoltage Load Shedding Program
PRC-011-0	Undervoltage Load Shedding System Maintenance and Testing
PRC-015-0	Special Protection System Data and Documentation
PRC-016-0.1	Special Protection System Misoperations

PRC-017-0	Special Protection System Maintenance and Testing
PRC-018-1	Disturbance Monitoring Equipment Installation and Data Reporting
PRC-021-1	Under-Voltage Load Shedding Program Data
PRC-022-1	Under-Voltage Load Shedding Program Performance
PRC-023-2	Transmission Relay Loadability
PRC-023-3	Transmission Relay Loadability
PRC-025-1	Generator Relay Loadability
Transmission Operations (TOP)	
TOP-001-1a	Reliability Responsibilities and Authorities
TOP-002-2.1b	Normal Operations Planning
TOP-003-1	Planned Outage Coordination
TOP-004-2	Transmission Operations
TOP-005-2a	Operational Reliability Information
TOP-006-2	Monitoring System Conditions
TOP-007-0	Reporting System Operating Limit (SOL) and Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit (IROL) Violations
TOP-007-WECC-1a	System Operating Limits
TOP-008-1	Response to Transmission Limit Violations
Transmission Planning (TPL)	
TPL-001-0.1	System Performance Under Normal (No Contingency) Conditions (Category A)
TPL-001-4	Transmission System Planning Performance Requirements
TPL-002-0b	System Performance Following Loss of a Single Bulk Electric System Element (Category B)
TPL-003-0b	System Performance Following Loss of Two or More Bulk Electric System Elements (Category C)
TPL-004-0a	System Performance Following Extreme Events Resulting in the Loss of Two or More Bulk Electric System Elements (Category D)
Voltage and Reactive (VAR)	
VAR-001-4	Voltage and Reactive Control
VAR-002-4	Generator Operation for Maintaining Network Voltage Schedules

VAR-002-WECC-2	Automatic Voltage Regulators (AVR)
VAR-501-WECC-2	Power System Stabilizer (PSS)